

As you read this manual, you will find Information that is preceded by a symbol **NOTICE**. This information is intended to help you avoid damage to your vehicle, other property, or the environment.

Symbols   on labels attached to your vehicle are to remind you to read this owner's manual for proper and safe operation of your vehicle.

 is colour-coded to indicate "danger" (red), "warning" (orange), or "caution" (amber).

 **Safety Labels** P. 95

## A Few Words About Safety

---

Your safety, and the safety of others, is very important. And operating this vehicle safely is an important responsibility.

To help you make informed decisions about safety, we have provided operating procedures and other information on labels and in this manual. This information alerts you to potential hazards that could hurt you or others.

Of course, it is not practical or possible to warn you about all the hazards associated with operating or maintaining your vehicle. You must use your own good judgement.

You will find this important safety information in a variety of forms, including:

- **Safety Labels** - on the vehicle.
- **Safety Messages** - preceded by a safety alert symbol  and one of three signal words: **DANGER**, **WARNING**, or **CAUTION**. These signal words mean:

 **DANGER**

You WILL be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **WARNING**

You CAN be KILLED or SERIOUSLY HURT if you don't follow instructions.

 **CAUTION**

You CAN be HURT if you don't follow instructions.

- **Safety Headings** - such as Important Safety Precautions.
- **Safety Section** - such as Safe Driving.
- **Instructions** - how to use this vehicle correctly and safely.

This entire book is filled with important safety information - please read it carefully.

## **Event Data Recorders**

Your vehicle is equipped with several devices commonly referred to as Event Data Recorders. They record various types of real time vehicle data such as SRS airbag deployment and SRS system components failure.

This data belongs to the vehicle owner and may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

## **Service Diagnostic Recorders**

Your vehicle is equipped with service-related devices that record information about powertrain performance and driving conditions. The data can be used to help technicians diagnose, repair and maintain the vehicle. This data may not be accessed by anyone else except as legally required or with the permission of the vehicle owner.

However this data may be accessed by Honda, its authorised dealers and authorised repairers, employees, representatives and contractors only for the purpose of the technical diagnosis, research and development of the vehicle.

This owner's manual should be considered a permanent part of the vehicle and should remain with the vehicle when it is sold.

This owner's manual covers all models of your vehicle. You may find descriptions of equipment and features that are not on your particular model.

Images throughout this owner's manual represent features and equipment that are available on some, but not all, models. Your particular model may not have some of these features.

The information and specifications included in this publication were in effect at the time of approval for printing. Honda Motor Co., Ltd. reserves the right, however, to discontinue or change specifications or design at any time without notice and without incurring any obligation.

Although this manual is applicable to both right-hand and left-hand drive models, the images contained in this manual mainly refer to the left-hand drive models.

## ➤ Safe Driving P. 33

For Safe Driving P. 34      Seat Belts P. 38      Airbags P. 49

## ➤ Instrument Panel P. 97

Indicators P. 98      Gauges and Driver Information Interface P. 133

## ➤ Controls P. 145

Clock P. 146      Locking and Unlocking the Doors P. 147  
Windows P. 184      Sunroof\* P. 187  
Mirrors P. 208      Seats P. 211

## ➤ Features P. 259

Audio System P. 260      Audio System Basic Operation P. 266  
Customized Features P. 315

## ➤ Driving P. 351

Before Driving P. 352      Towing a Trailer P. 356  
Braking P. 436      Parking Your Vehicle P. 441  
Honda Smart Parking Assist System\* P. 464

## ➤ Maintenance P. 487

Before Performing Maintenance P. 488      Maintenance Schedule P. 491  
Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades P. 509  
Climate Control System Maintenance P. 523

## ➤ Handling the Unexpected P. 533

Tools P. 534      If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 535  
Overheating P. 551      Indicator, Coming On/Blinking P. 553  
If You Cannot Open the Tailgate P. 569

## ➤ Information P. 571

Specifications P. 572      Identification Numbers P. 575

# Contents

Child Safety P. 59	Exhaust Gas Hazard P. 94	Safety Labels P. 95
Sliding Doors P. 171	Security System P. 182	
Operating the Switches Around the Steering Wheel P. 189		
Interior Convenience Items P. 231	Climate Control System P. 245	
Audio Error Messages P. 309	General Information on the Audio System P. 311	
Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System P. 335		
When Driving P. 361	Honda Sensing* P. 393	
Multi-View Rear Camera* P. 452	Multi-View Camera* P. 454	
Refueling P. 483	Fuel Economy and CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions P. 486	
Maintenance Under the Bonnet P. 495	Replacing Light Bulbs P. 505	
Checking and Maintaining Tyres P. 513	Battery P. 519	Remote Transmitter Care P. 522
Cleaning P. 525	Accessories and Modifications P. 530	
Engine Does Not Start P. 544	If the Battery Is Dead P. 548	Shift Lever Does Not Move P. 550
Fuses P. 559	Emergency Towing P. 567	
Utility Compliance* P. 576	Devices that Emit Radio Waves* P. 577	

Quick Reference Guide P. 4

Safe Driving P. 33

Instrument Panel P. 97

Controls P. 145

Features P. 259

Driving P. 351

Maintenance P. 487

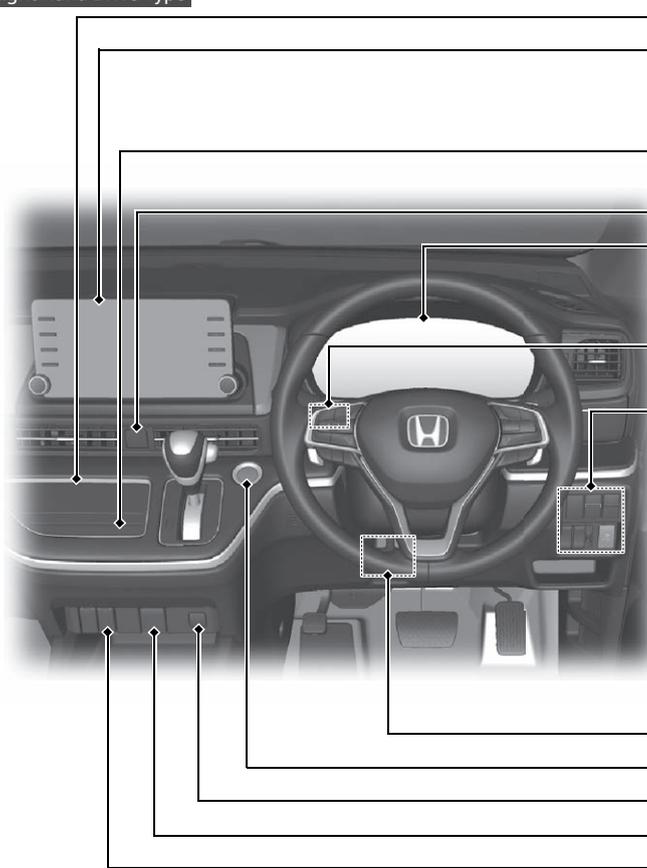
Handling the Unexpected P. 533

Information P. 571

Index P. 579

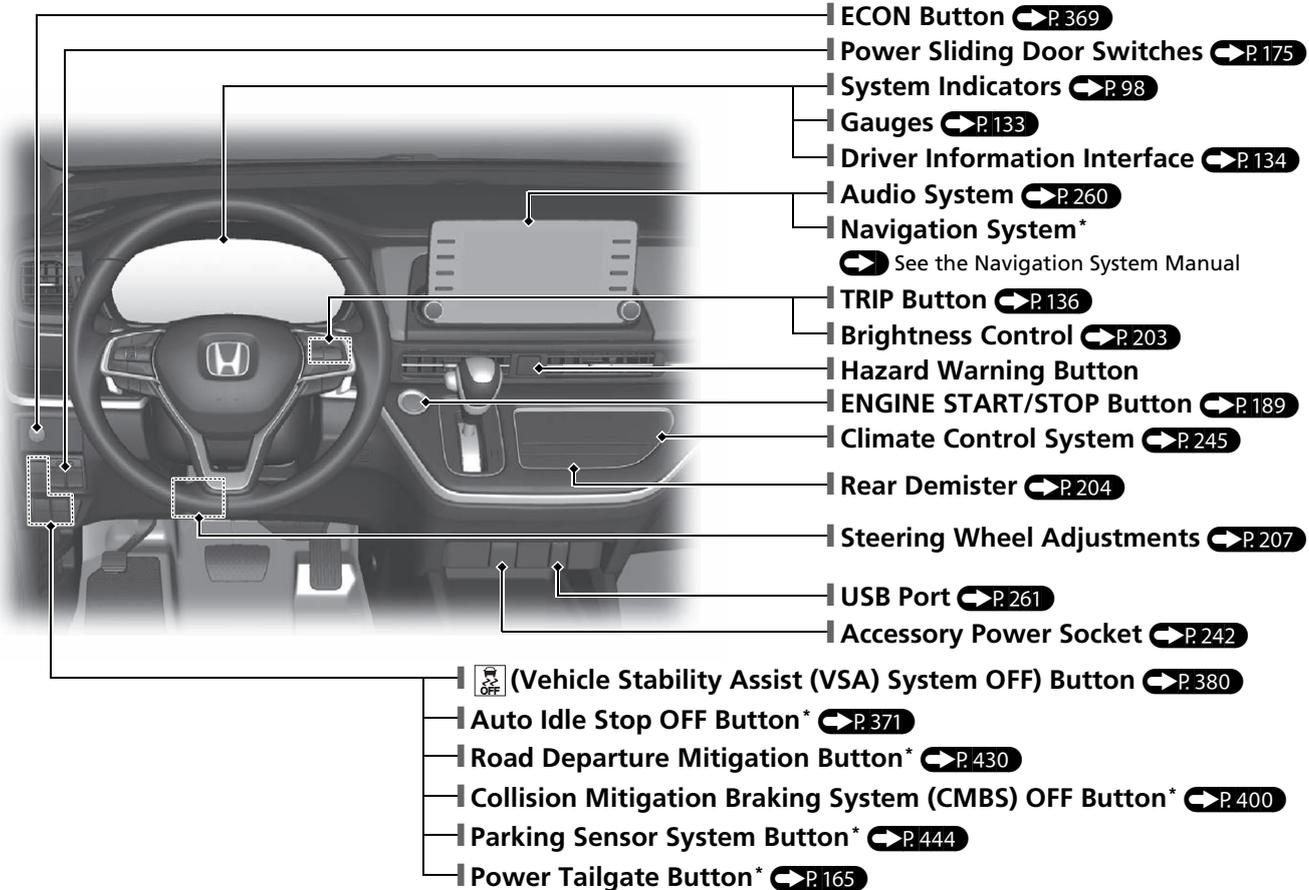
# Visual Index

Right-hand Drive Type



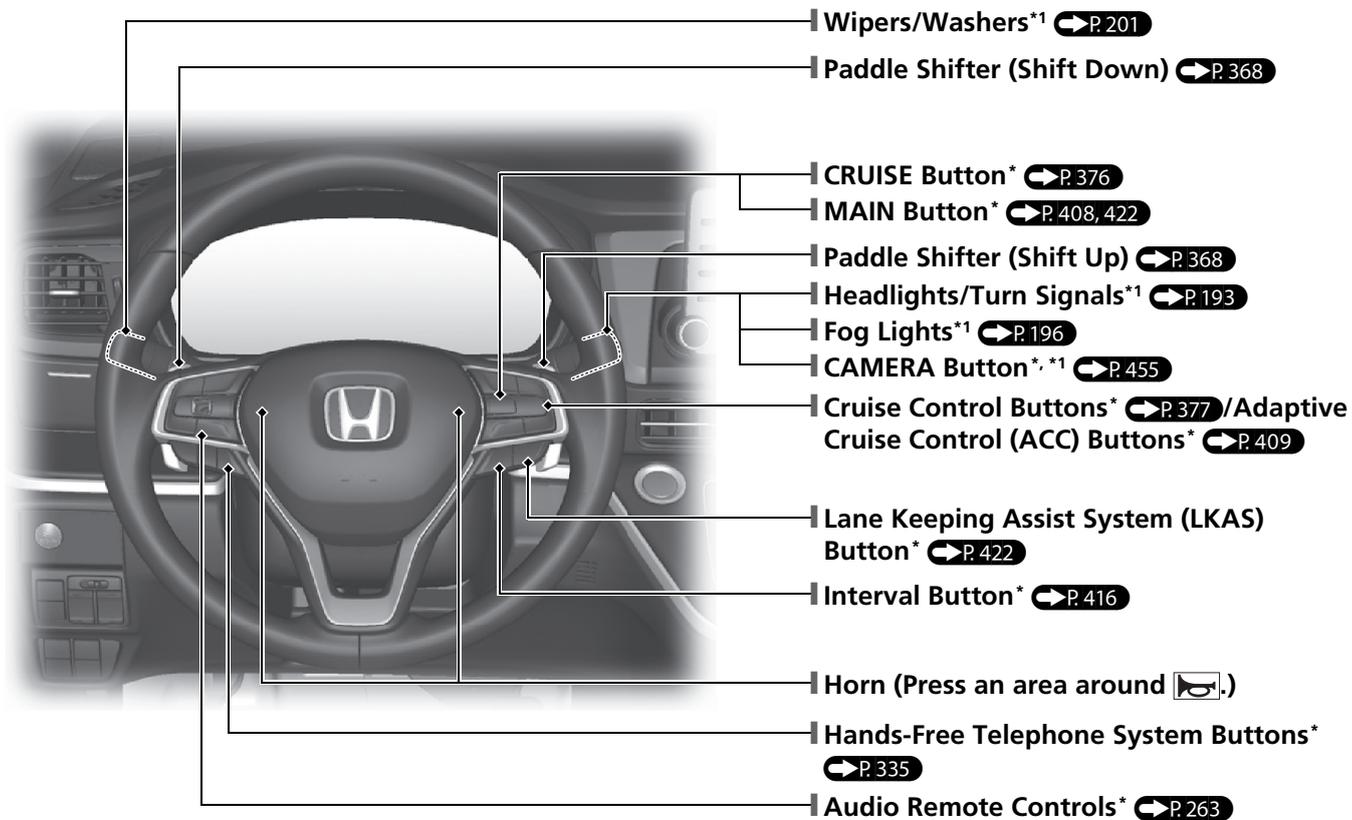
- Climate Control System ➔ P.245
- Audio System ➔ P.260
- Navigation System\*  
➔ See the Navigation System Manual
- Rear Demister ➔ P.204
- Heated Door Mirror Icon\* ➔ P.204
- Hazard Warning Button
- System Indicators ➔ P.98
- Gauges ➔ P.133
- Driver Information Interface ➔ P.134
- TRIP Button ➔ P.136
- Brightness Control ➔ P.203
- Power Sliding Door Switches ➔ P.175
- ECON Button ➔ P.369
-  (Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System OFF) Button ➔ P.380
- Road Departure Mitigation Button\* ➔ P.430
- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) OFF Button\* ➔ P.400
- Parking Sensor System Button\* ➔ P.444
- Power Tailgate Button\* ➔ P.165
- Steering Wheel Adjustments ➔ P.207
- ENGINE START/STOP Button ➔ P.189
- Auto Idle Stop OFF Button\* ➔ P.371
- Accessory Power Socket ➔ P.242
- USB Port ➔ P.261

## Left-hand Drive Type



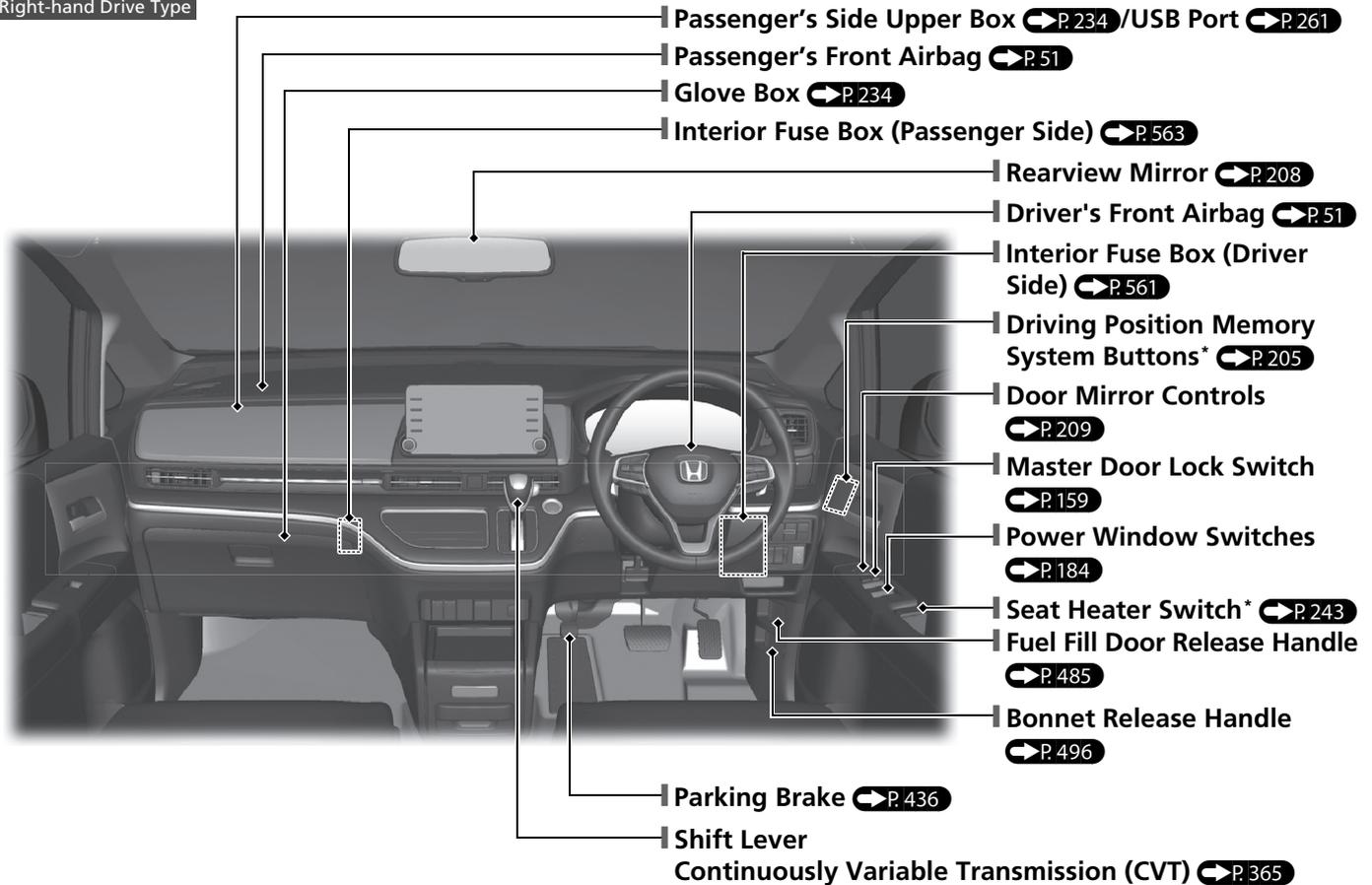
\* Not available on all models

# Visual Index



\*1: Left-hand drive models shown. For the right-hand drive models, these are located at the symmetrically opposite to the left-hand drive model.

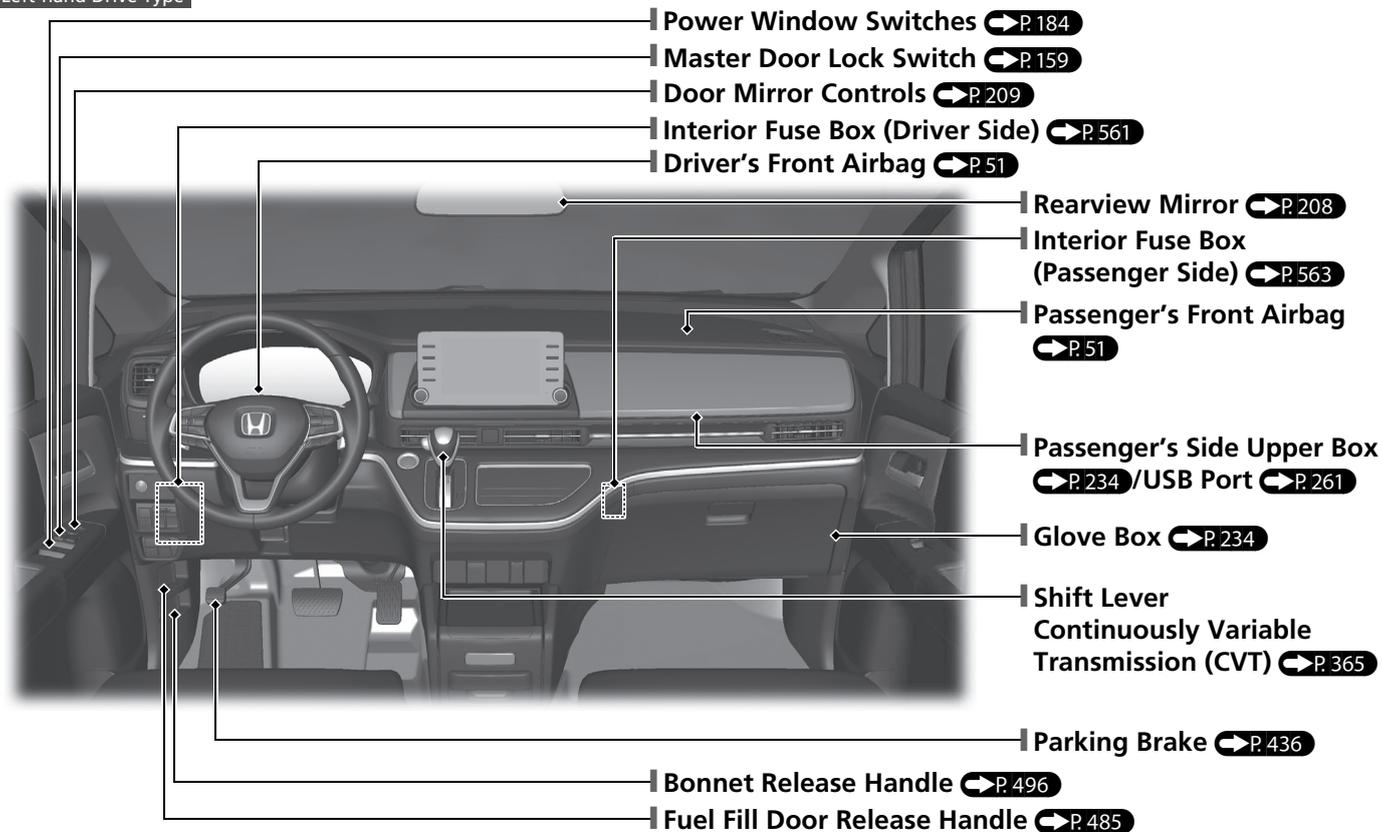
Right-hand Drive Type

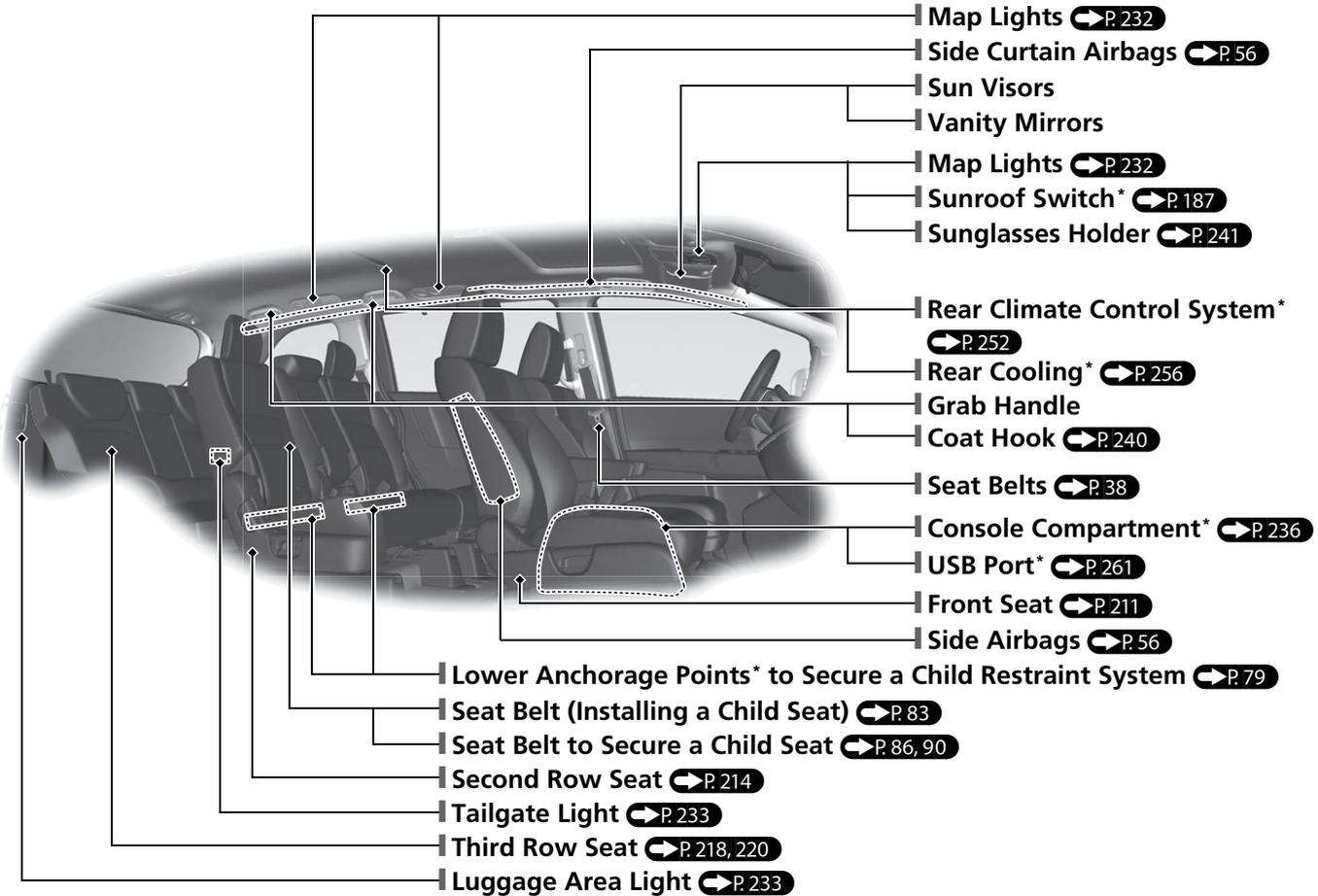


\* Not available on all models

# Visual Index

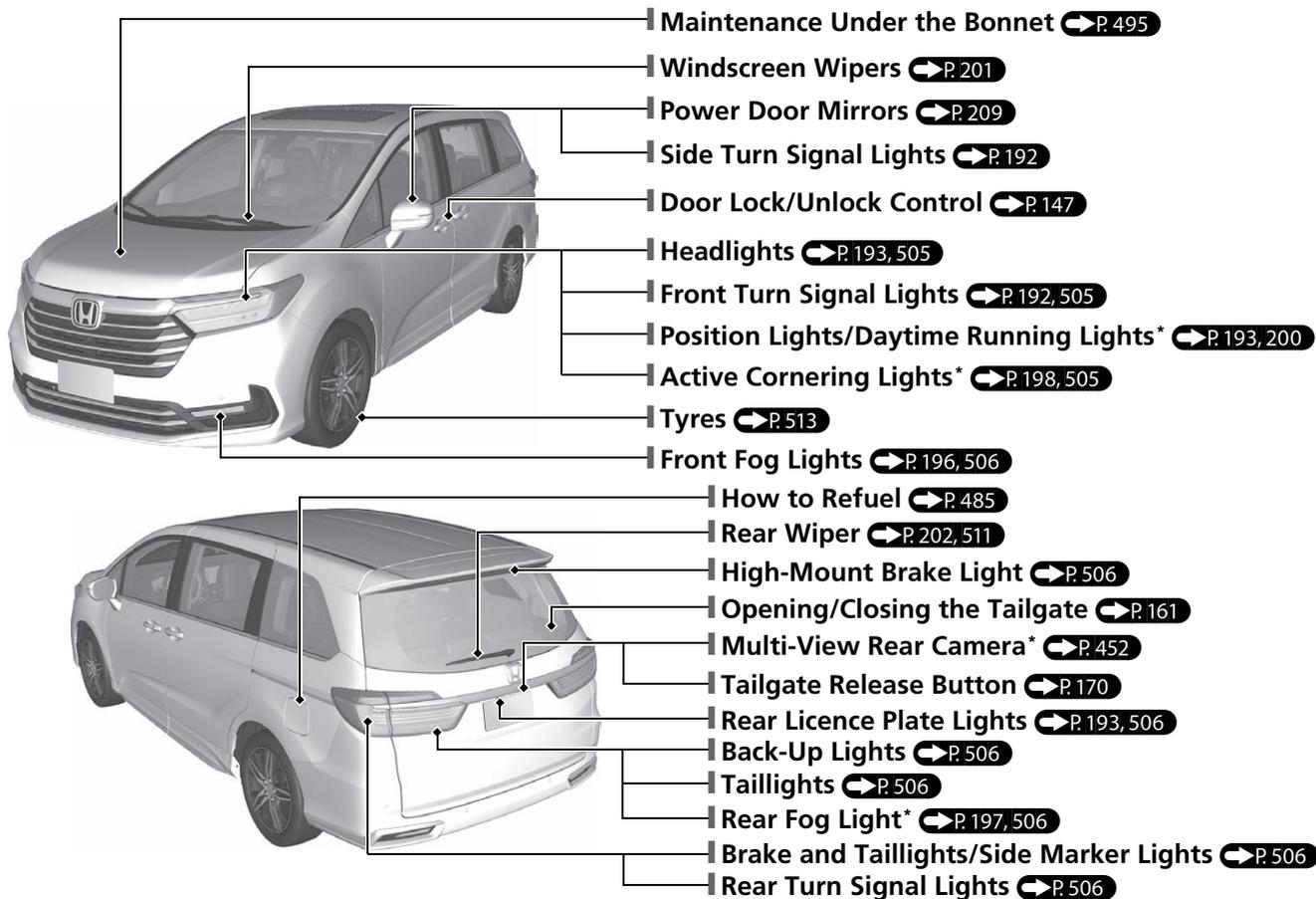
Left-hand Drive Type



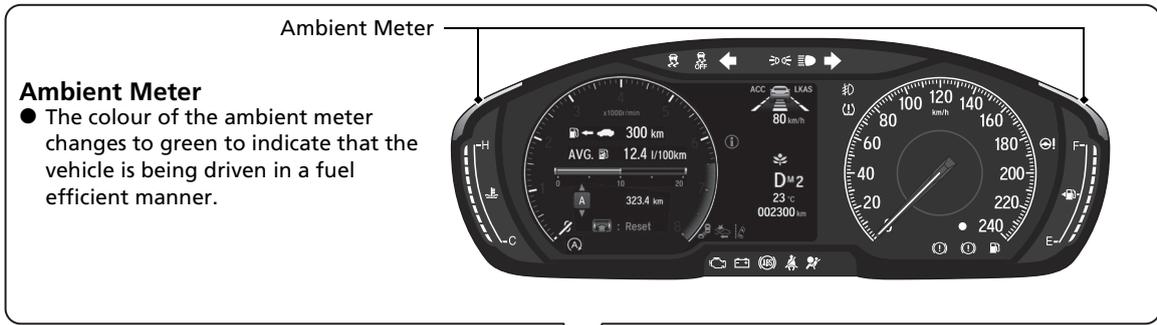


\* Not available on all models

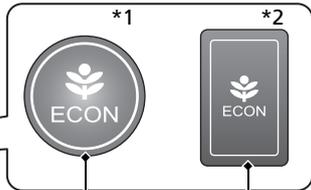
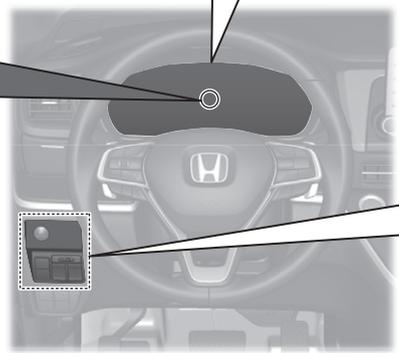
# Visual Index



# Eco Assist System



**ECON Mode Indicator** ➔ P.110  
Comes on when the ECON button is pressed.



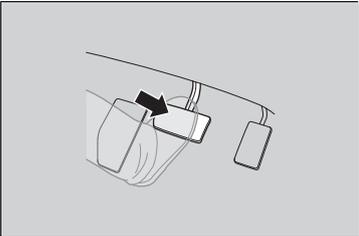
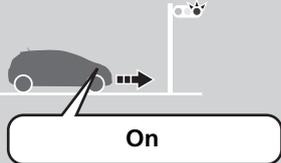
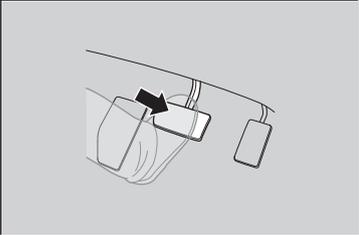
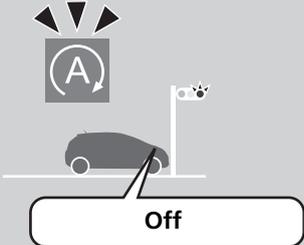
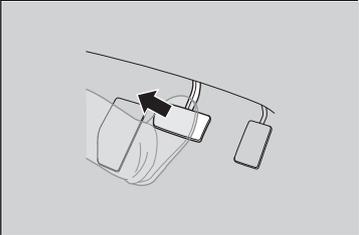
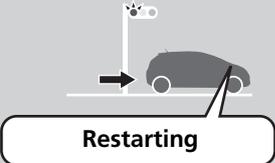
**ECON Button** ➔ P.369  
Helps to maximise fuel economy.

\*1: Left-hand drive type  
\*2: Right-hand drive type

\* Not available on all models

# Auto Idle Stop Function\*

To improve fuel economy, the engine stops and then restarts as detailed below. When Auto Idle Stop is on, the Auto Idle Stop indicator (green) comes on.  P.370

At	Continuously variable transmission	Engine status
<p>Deceleration</p> 	 <p>Stop the vehicle and depress the brake pedal.</p>	 <p>On</p>
<p>Stop</p> 	 <p>Keep the brake pedal depressed.</p>	 <p>Off</p>
<p>Start-up</p>	 <p>Release the brake pedal.</p>	 <p>Restarting</p>

# Safe Driving P.33

## Airbags P.49

- Your vehicle is fitted with airbags to help to protect you and your passengers during a moderate-to-severe collision.

## Child Safety P.59

- All children 12 and younger should be seated in the rear seat.
- Small children should be properly restrained in a front-facing child restraint system.
- Infants must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system on a rear seat.

## Exhaust Gas Hazard P.94

- Your vehicle emits dangerous exhaust gases that contain carbon monoxide. Do not run the engine in confined spaces where carbon monoxide gas can accumulate.

## Seat Belts P.38

- Fasten your seat belt and sit upright well back in the seat.
- Check that your passengers are wearing their seat belts correctly.

## Before Driving Checklist P.37

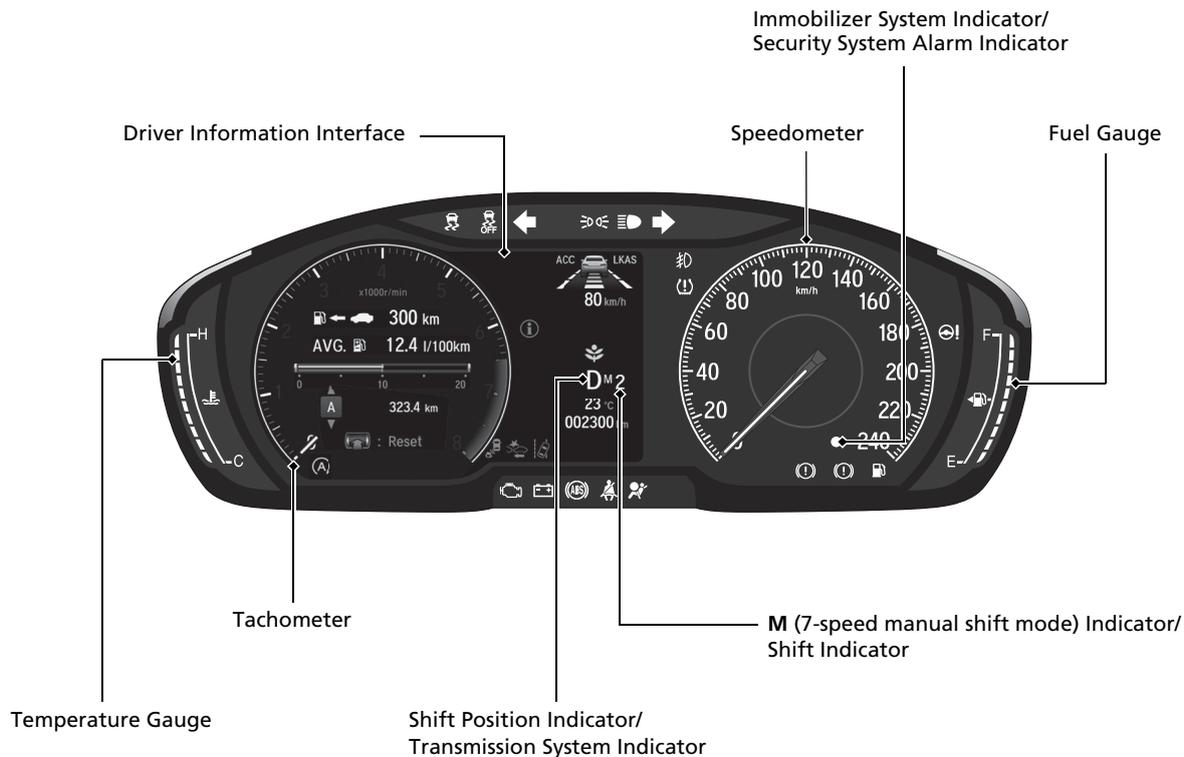
- Before driving, check that the front seats, head restraints, steering wheel, and mirrors have been properly adjusted.



Fasten your lap belt as low as possible.

# Instrument Panel P.97

Indicators  P.98 / Driver Information Interface  P.134 / Gauges  P.133

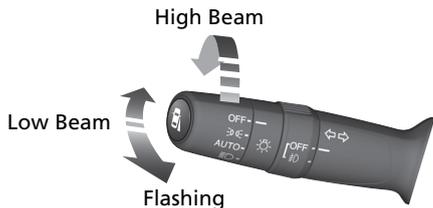




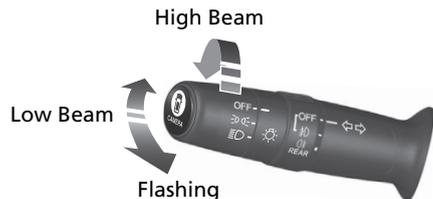
## Lights P.193

### Light Control Switches

Except Taiwanese models with automatic lighting control system



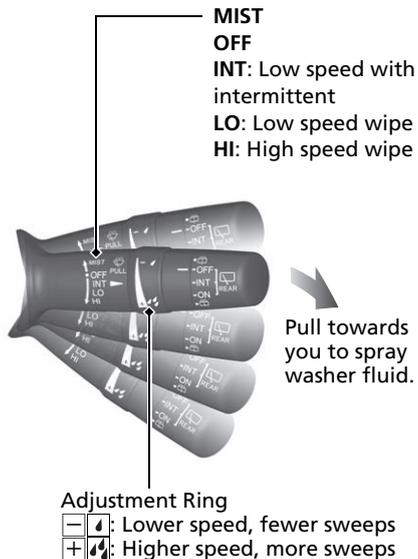
Models without automatic lighting control system and Taiwanese models



## Wipers and Washers

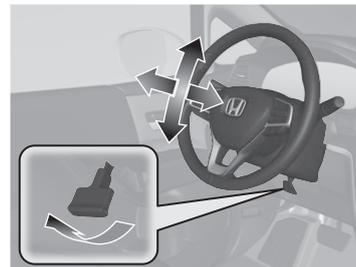
 P.201

### Wiper/Washer Control Lever



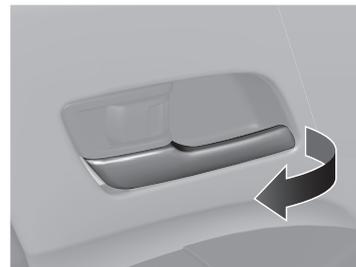
## Steering Wheel P.207

- To adjust, pull the adjustment lever towards you, adjust to the desired position, then lock the lever back in place.



## Unlocking the Driver's Door from the Inside

 P.158

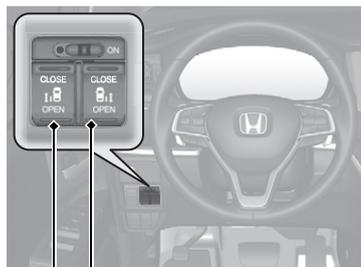


- Pull the driver's door inner handle to unlock and open it at the same time.

## Power Sliding Door P.173

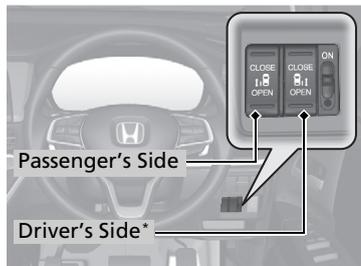
- When the main switch is on, the power sliding door opens and closes automatically when you press the power sliding door button on the remote transmitter, or the power sliding door switch on the dashboard, or use the door handle.

### Left hand drive type



Passenger's Side  
Driver's Side\*

### Right-hand drive type

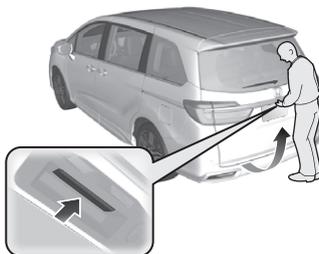


Passenger's Side  
Driver's Side\*

## Tailgate P.166

### Models without power tailgate

- Press the tailgate outer handle to unlock and open the tailgate when you carry the keyless remote.

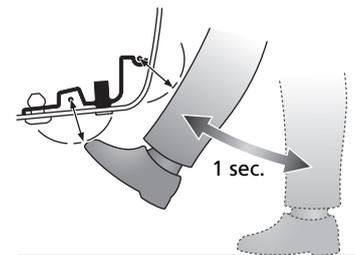
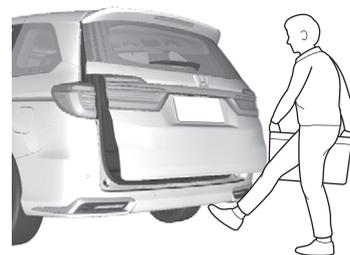


### Models with power tailgate

- Press the outer handle to unlock and open the tailgate when you have the keyless remote on you.
- Press the power tailgate button on the driver side control panel.
- Press the power tailgate button on the remote transmitter.

### Models with Hands Free Access

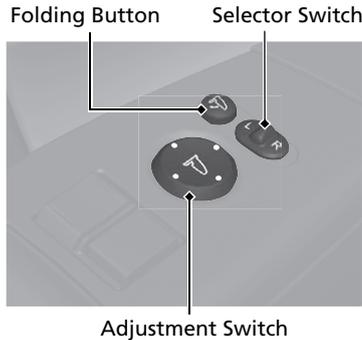
Use a forward and back kicking motion under the centre of the rear bumper to open or close the power tailgate while carrying the keyless remote.



## Power Door Mirrors

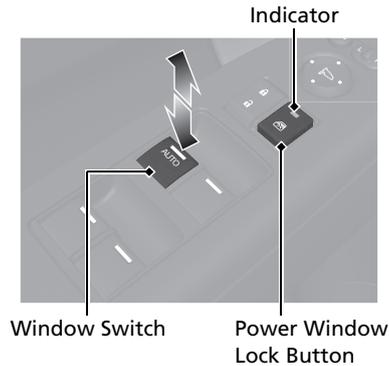
➔ P.209

- With the power mode in ON, move the selector switch to **L** or **R**.
- Push the appropriate edge of the adjustment switch to adjust the mirror.
- Press the folding button to fold in and out the door mirrors.



## Power Windows ➔ P.184

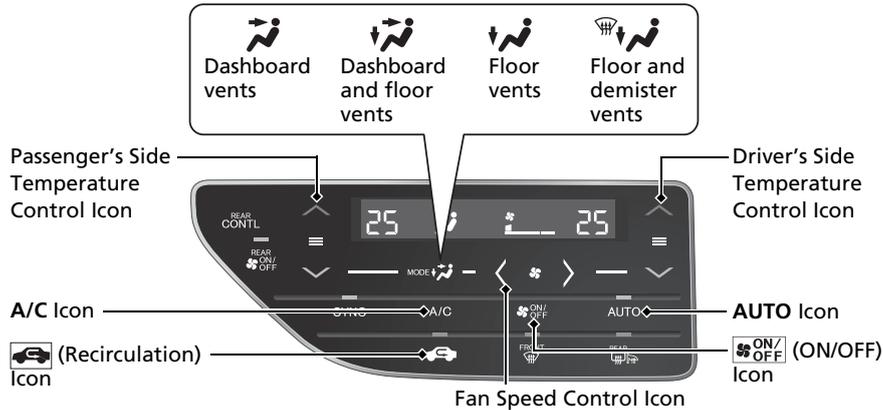
- With the power mode in ON, open and close the power windows.
- If the power window lock button is in the off position, each passenger's window can be opened and closed with its own switch.
- If the power window lock button is in the on position (indicator on), each passenger's window switch is disabled.



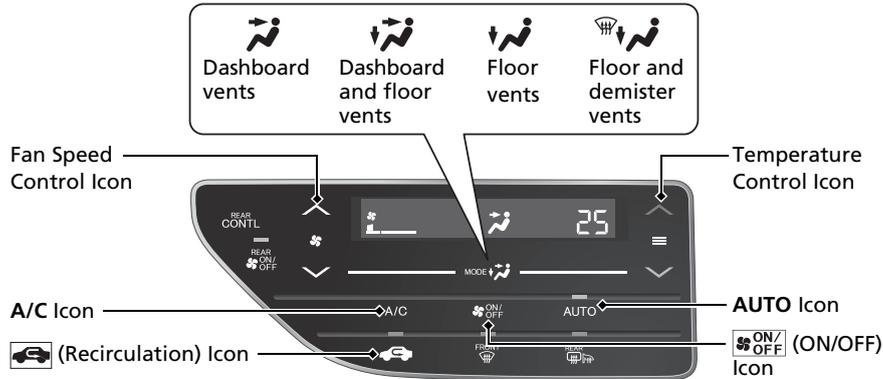
# Climate Control System P.245

- Select the **AUTO** icon to activate the climate control system.
- Select the icon to turn the system on or off.
- Select the icon to defrost the windscreen.

## Models with rear climate control system



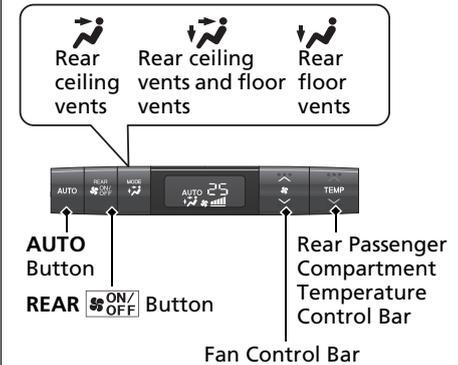
## Models with rear cooling



# Rear Climate Control\*

## Models without rear touch panel type

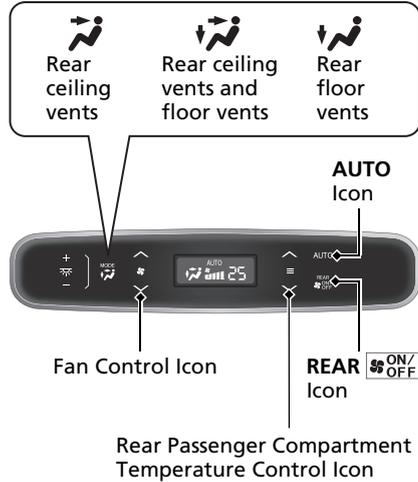
- Press the **AUTO** button to activate the rear climate control system.
- Press the **REAR** button to turn the system on or off.



\* Not available on all models

## Models with rear touch panel type

- Select the **AUTO** icon to activate the rear climate control system.
- Select the **REAR**  icon to turn the system on or off.



## Rear Cooling\*

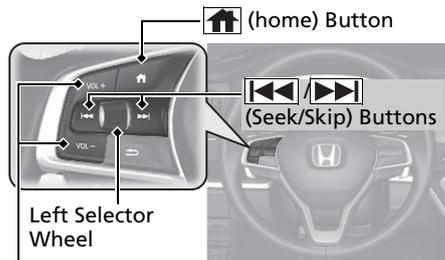
- Press the **REAR**  button to turn the system on or off.



# Features ➔ P. 259

## Audio Remote Controls

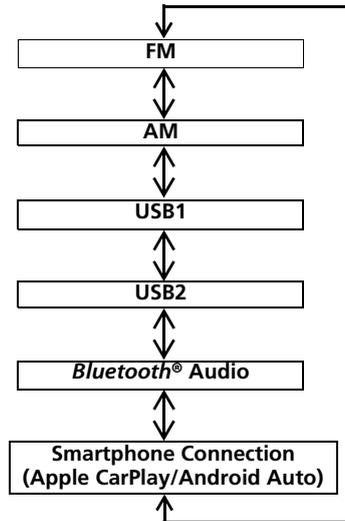
➔ P. 263



**VOL+**/**VOL-** (Volume) Buttons

- **VOL+**/**VOL-** (Volume) Buttons  
Press to adjust the volume up/down.
- Left Selector Wheel  
When selecting the audio mode  
Press the (home) button, then roll up or down to select **Audio** on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

**Roll up or down:** To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:



- / (Seek/Skip) Buttons  
Radio: Press / to change the preset station.  
iPod, USB device, *Bluetooth*® Audio or Smartphone Connection:  
Press / to skip to the beginning of the next song or return to the beginning of the current song.  
USB device:  
Press and hold / to change a folder.

# Audio System P. 266

For navigation system operation  See the Navigation System Manual



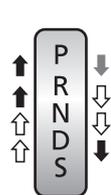
# Driving ➔ P. 351

## Continuously Variable Transmission

➔ P. 365

- Shift to **P** and depress the brake pedal when starting the engine.

### Shifting



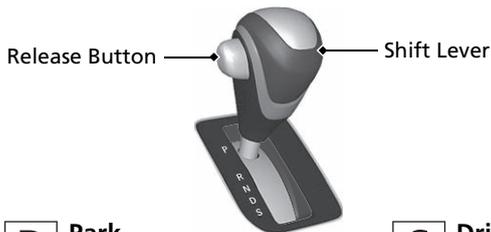
Depress the brake pedal and press the release button to move out of **P**.



Press the release button to move the shift lever.



Move the shift lever without pressing the release button.



**P** **Park**  
Turn off or start the engine.  
Transmission is locked.

**R** **Reverse**  
Used when reversing.

**N** **Neutral**  
Transmission is not locked.

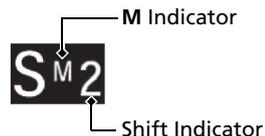
**D** **Drive**  
● Normal driving.  
● 7-speed mode can be used temporarily.

**S** **Drive (S)**  
● Better acceleration.  
● Increased engine braking.  
● Going up or down hills.  
● 7-speed manual shift mode can be used.

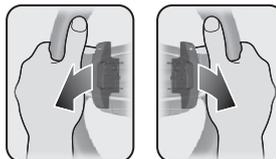
### 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode When the shift lever is in **S**

➔ P. 367

- Allows you to manually shift the transmission up or down without releasing your hands from the steering wheel.



Shift Down **-** Paddle Shifter    Shift Up **+** Paddle Shifter



- Pulling a paddle shifter changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode.
- The **M** indicator and the selected speed number are displayed in the shift indicator.

### When the shift lever is in **D**

- Pulling a paddle shifter temporarily changes the mode from continuously variable transmission to 7-speed manual shift mode. The selected speed number is displayed in the shift indicator.



## CMBS\* On and Off P.400

- When a possible frontal collision is likely unavoidable, the CMBS can help you to reduce the vehicle speed and the severity of the collision.
- The CMBS is turned on every time you start the engine.
- To turn the CMBS on or off, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

## VSA On and Off P.380

- The Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering and helps to maintain traction while accelerating on loose or slippery road surfaces.
- VSA comes on automatically every time you start the power system.
- To partially disable or fully restore VSA function, press and hold the button until you hear a beep.

## Cruise Control\* P.376

- Cruise control allows you to maintain a set speed without keeping your foot on the accelerator pedal.
- To use cruise control, press the **CRUISE** button, then press the **SET/-** button once you have achieved the desired speed (above 40 km/h).

### Oceanian models

## Deflation Warning System P.384

- The deflation warning system detects a change in tyre revolutions as a decrease in tyre pressure.

### Middle Eastern models

## Deflation Warning System P.387

- Detects a change in tyre conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tyre pressures.
- The deflation warning system is turned on automatically every time you start the engine.
- A initialisation procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

### Taiwanese models

## Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) P.390

- Detects a change in tyre conditions and overall dimensions due to decrease in tyre pressures.
- The TPMS is turned on automatically every time you start the engine.
- A initialisation procedure must be performed when certain conditions arise.

## Refueling P.483

**Fuel recommendation:** **Except Taiwanese, Hong Kong and Macau models**  
**Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher**

**Taiwanese, Hong Kong and Macau models**  
**Unleaded petrol, research octane number 92 or higher**

**Fuel tank capacity: 55 L**

- 1** Pull the fuel fill door release handle.



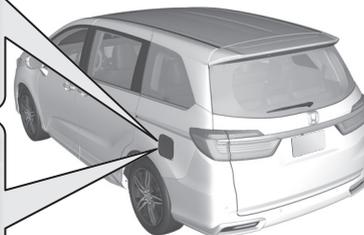
- 2** Turn the fuel fill cap slowly to remove the cap.



- 3** Place the cap in the holder on the fuel fill door.



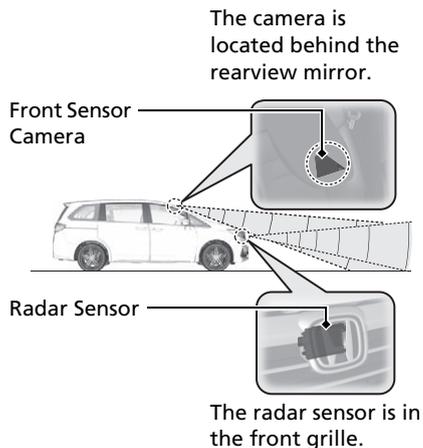
- 4** After refueling, screw the cap back on until it clicks at least once.



# Honda Sensing\*

➔ P.393

Honda Sensing is a driver support system which employs the use of two distinctly different kinds of sensors, a radar sensor located in the front grille and a front sensor camera mounted to the interior side of the windscreen, behind the rearview mirror.



## Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

➔ P.396

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of yours. The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimise collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

## Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

➔ P.407

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.

## Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

➔ P.420

Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

## Road Departure Mitigation System

➔ P.428

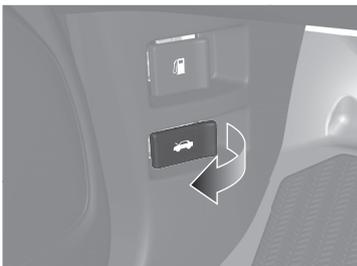
Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

# Maintenance ↔ P.487

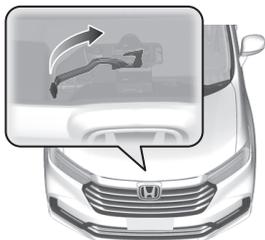
## Under the Bonnet ↔ P.495

- Check engine oil, engine coolant, and windscreen washer fluid. Add when necessary.
- Check brake fluid.
- Check the battery condition monthly.

- 1** Pull the bonnet release handle under the corner of the dashboard.



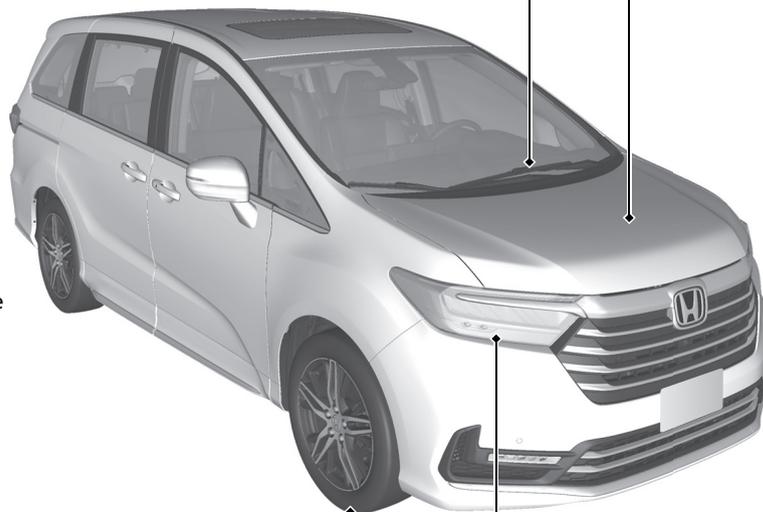
- 2** Locate the bonnet latch lever, pull it up, and then raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



- 3** When finished, close the bonnet and make sure it is firmly locked in place.

## Wiper Blades ↔ P.509

- Replace blades if they leave streaks across the windscreen or become noisy.



## Tyres ↔ P.513

- Inspect tyres and wheels regularly.
- Check tyre pressures regularly.
- Install winter tyres for winter driving.

## Lights ↔ P.505

- Inspect all lights regularly.

# Handling the Unexpected P.533

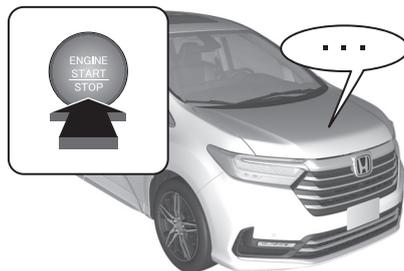
## Flat Tyre P.535

- Park in a safe location and replace the flat tyre with the compact spare tyre under the floor between the front seats and the second row seats.



## Engine Won't Start P.544

- If the battery is dead, jump start using a booster battery.



## Overheating P.551

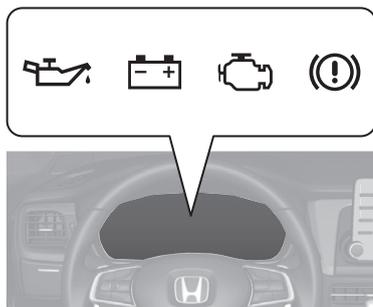
- Park in a safe location. If you do not see steam under the bonnet, open the bonnet, and let the engine cool down.



## Indicators Come On

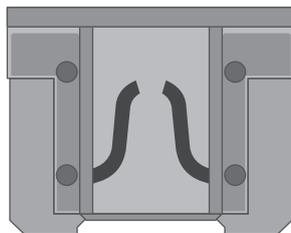
 P.553

- Identify the indicator and consult the owner's manual.



## Blown Fuse P.559

- Check for a blown fuse if an electrical device does not operate.



## Emergency Towing P.567

- Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.



# What to Do If

**Q** The power mode does not change from **VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)** to **ACCESSORY**.  
Why?

**A**

- The steering wheel may be locked.
- Move the steering wheel left and right after pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.



**Q** The power mode does not change from **ACCESSORY** to **VEHICLE OFF (LOCK)**.  
Why?

**A** The shift lever should be moved to **P**.



**Q** Why does the brake pedal pulsate slightly when applying the brakes?

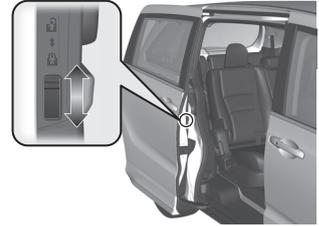
**A** This can occur when the ABS activates and does not indicate a problem. Apply firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. Never pump the brake pedal.

➤ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) ➔ P.438

---

**Q** The rear door cannot be opened from inside the vehicle. Why?

**A** Check if the childproof lock is in the lock position. If so, open the rear door with the outside door handle. To cancel this function, slide the lever up to the unlock position.



---

**Q** Why do the doors lock after I unlocked the doors?

**A** If you do not open the doors within 30 seconds, the doors are relocked automatically for security.

---

**Q** Why does the beeper sound when I open the driver's door?

**A** The beeper sounds when:

- The power mode is in ACCESSORY.
- The exterior lights are left on.
- The Auto Idle Stop\* is in operation.

---

**Q** Why does the beeper sound when I start driving?

**A** The beeper sounds when:

- Driver and/or front passenger are not wearing their seat belts.
- The parking brake is not fully released.

---

---

**Q**

Models with Deflation Warning System/Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

**I'm seeing an amber indicator of a tyre with an exclamation point. What is that?**

**A**

The Deflation Warning System\*/Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)\* needs attention. If you recently inflated or changed a tyre, you have to recalibrate the system.

➤ Deflation Warning System ➔ P. 384, 387

➤ Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) ➔ P. 390

---

**Q**

**Why do I hear a screeching sound when I apply the brake pedal?**

**A**

The brake pads may need to be replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

---

**Q**

Indonesian models

**Is it possible to use unleaded petrol with a Research Octane Number (RON) of 90 or higher on this vehicle?**

**A**

Your vehicle is designed to operate on unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher. If this octane grade is unavailable, regular unleaded petrol with a research octane of 90 or higher may be used temporarily. The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.



# Safe Driving

You can find many safety recommendations throughout this chapter, and throughout this manual.

## For Safe Driving

Important Safety Precautions.....	34
Your Vehicle's Safety Features.....	36
Safety Checklist .....	37

## Seat Belts

About Your Seat Belts.....	38
Fastening a Seat Belt.....	42
Seat Belt Inspection.....	46
Anchorage Points.....	47

## Airbags

Airbag System Components.....	49
Types of Airbags .....	51

Front Airbags (SRS) .....	51
Side Airbags.....	54
Side Curtain Airbags.....	56
Airbag System Indicators.....	57
Airbag Care .....	58

## Child Safety

Protecting Child Passengers .....	59
Safety of Infants and Small Children ....	63
Safety of Larger Children .....	91

## Exhaust Gas Hazard

Carbon Monoxide Gas.....	94
--------------------------	----

## Safety Labels

Label Locations .....	95
-----------------------	----

The following pages explain your vehicle's safety features and how to use them properly. The safety precautions below are ones that we consider to be among the most important.

## Important Safety Precautions

### ■ Always wear your seat belt

A seat belt is your best protection in all types of collisions. Airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. So even though your vehicle is equipped with airbags, make sure you and your passengers always wear your seat belts, and wear them properly.

### ■ Restrain all children

Children aged 12 and under should ride properly restrained in a back seat, not the front seat. Infants and small children should be restrained in a child restraint system. Larger children should use a booster seat and a lap/shoulder seat belt until they can use the belt properly without a booster seat.

### ■ Be aware of airbag hazards

While airbags can save lives, they can cause serious or fatal injuries to occupants who sit too close to them, or are not properly restrained. Infants, young children, and short adults are at the greatest risk. Be sure to follow all instructions and warnings in this manual.

### ■ Don't drink and drive

Alcohol and driving don't mix. Even one drink can reduce your ability to respond to changing conditions, and your reaction time gets worse with every additional drink. So don't drink and drive, and don't let your friends drink and drive, either.

### ▣ Important Safety Precautions

Some countries prohibit the use of mobile phones other than hands-free devices by the driver while driving.

**■ Pay appropriate attention to the task of driving safely**

Engaging in mobile phone conversation or other activities that keep you from paying close attention to the road, other vehicles, and pedestrians could lead to a crash. Remember, situations can change quickly, and only you can decide when it is safe to divert some attention away from driving.

**■ Control your speed**

Excessive speed is a major factor in crash injuries and deaths. Generally, the higher the speed, the greater the risk, but serious injuries can also occur at lower speeds. Never drive faster than is safe for current conditions, regardless of the maximum speed posted.

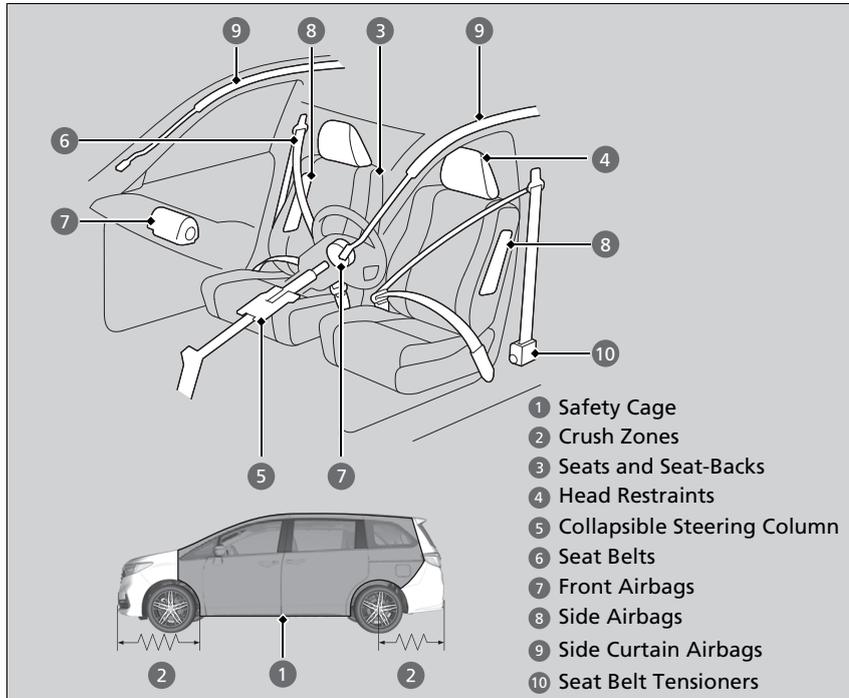
**■ Keep your vehicle in safe condition**

Having a tyre blowout or a mechanical failure can be extremely hazardous. To reduce the possibility of such problems, check your tyre pressures and condition frequently, and perform all regularly scheduled maintenance.

**■ Do not leave children unattended in the vehicle**

Children, pets and people needing assistance left unattended in the vehicle may be injured if they activate one or more of the vehicle controls. They may also cause the vehicle to move, resulting in a crash in which they and/or another person(s) can be injured or killed. Also, depending on the ambient temperature, the temperature of the interior may reach extreme levels, which can result in harm or death. Even if the climate control system is on, never leave them in the vehicle unattended as the climate control system can shut off at any time.

## Your Vehicle's Safety Features



The following checklist will help you take an active role in protecting yourself and your passengers.

### ► Your Vehicle's Safety Features

Your vehicle is equipped with many features that work together to help to protect you and your passengers during a crash.

Some features do not require any action on your part. These include a strong steel framework that forms a safety cage around the passenger compartment, front and rear crush zones, a collapsible steering column, and tensioners that tighten the front seat belts in a sufficient crash.

However, you and your passengers cannot take full advantage of these features unless you remain seated in the correct position and always wear your seat belts. In fact, some safety features can contribute to injuries if they are not used properly.

## Safety Checklist

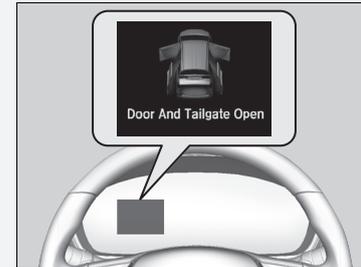
For the safety of you and your passengers, make a habit of checking these items each time before you drive.

- Adjust your seat to a position suitable for driving. Be sure the front seats are adjusted as far to the rear as possible while allowing the driver to control the vehicle. Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious or fatal injury in a crash.
  - **Seats** P. 211
- Adjust head restraints to the proper position. Head restraints are most effective when the centre of the head restraint aligns with the centre of your head. Taller persons should adjust their head restraint to the highest position.
  - **Adjusting the Front and Second Row Outer Head Restraint Positions** P. 224
- Always wear your seat belt, and make sure you wear it properly. Confirm that any passengers are properly belted as well.
  - **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 42
- Protect children by using seat belts or child restraint systems according to a child's age, height and weight.
  - **Child Safety** P. 59

### ➤ Safety Checklist

If the door and/or tailgate open message appears on the driver information interface, a door and/or the tailgate is not completely closed. Close all doors and the tailgate tightly until the message disappears.

➤ **Driver Information Interface** P. 134



## About Your Seat Belts

Seat belts are the single most effective safety device because they keep you connected to the vehicle so that you can take advantage of many built-in safety features. They also help to keep you from being thrown against the inside of the vehicle, against any passengers, or out of the vehicle. When worn properly, seat belts also keep your body properly positioned in a crash so that you can take full advantage of the additional protection provided by the airbags.

In addition, seat belts help to protect you in almost every type of crash, including:

- frontal impacts
- side impacts
- rear impacts
- rollovers

### About Your Seat Belts

#### **WARNING**

**Not wearing a seat belt properly increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash, even though your vehicle has airbags.**

**Be sure you and your passengers always wear seat belts and wear them properly.**

**WARNING:** Seat belts are designed to bear upon the bony structure of the body, and should be worn low across the front of the pelvis or the pelvis, chest and shoulders, as applicable; wearing the lap section of the belt across the abdominal area must be avoided.

**WARNING:** Seat belts should be adjusted as firmly as possible, consistent with comfort, to provide the protection for which they have been designed. A slack belt will greatly reduce the protection afforded to the wearer.

**WARNING:** Belts should not be worn with straps twisted.

**WARNING:** Each belt assembly must only be used by one occupant; it is dangerous to put a belt around a child being carried on the occupant's lap.

## ■ Lap/shoulder seat belts

All seven or eight seating positions are equipped with lap/shoulder seat belts with emergency locking retractors. In normal driving the retractor lets you move freely while keeping some tension on the belt. During a collision or sudden stop the retractor locks to restrain your body.

### Models without lockable retractor seat belts

The seat belt must be properly secured when using a front-facing child restraint system.

➤ **Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 83

### Models with lockable retractor seat belts

The second row seat belts also have a lockable retractor for use with child restraint systems.

➤ **Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt** P. 83

## ■ Proper use of seat belts

Follow these guidelines for proper use:

- All occupants should sit upright, well back in the seat, and remain in that position for the duration of the trip. Slouching and leaning reduce the effectiveness of the belt and can increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.
- Never place the shoulder part of a lap/shoulder seat belt under your arm or behind your back. This could cause very serious injuries in a crash.
- Two people should never use the same seat belt. If they do, they could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Do not put any accessories on the seat belts. Devices intended to improve comfort or reposition the shoulder part of a seat belt can reduce the protective capability and increase the chance of serious injury in a crash.

### ⓘ About Your Seat Belts

If you extend the seat belt too quickly, it will lock in place. If this happens, slightly retract the seat belt, then extend it slowly.

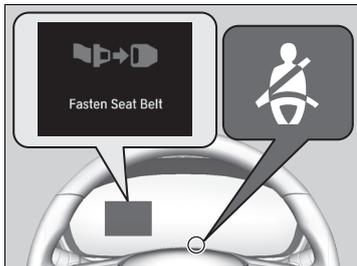
Seat belts cannot completely protect you in every crash. But in most cases, seat belts can reduce your risk of serious injury.

Most countries require you to wear seat belts. Take time to familiarise with the legal requirements of the countries in which you will drive.

### Models with lockable retractor seat belts

If a second row seat passenger moves around and extends the seat belt, the lockable retractor may activate. If this happens, release the retractor by unfastening the seat belt and allow the belt to retract completely. Then refasten the belt.

## ■ Seat Belt Reminder



The seat belt system includes an indicator on the instrument panel to remind the driver or a front passenger or both to fasten their seat belts.

If you set the power mode to ON and a seat belt is not fastened, a beeper will sound and the indicator will blink. After a few seconds, the beeper will stop and the indicator will come on and remain illuminated until the seat belt is fastened.

The beeper will periodically sound and the indicator will blink while the vehicle is moving until the seat belt is fastened.

## ▣ Seat Belt Reminder

The indicator will also come on if a front passenger does not fasten their seat belt within six seconds after the power mode is set to ON.

When no one is sitting in the front passenger's seat, the indicator will not come on and the beeper will not sound.

If the indicator comes on or the beeper sounds with no one sitting in the front passenger's seat. Check if:

- There is nothing heavy placed on the front passenger seat.
- The driver's seat belt is fastened.

If the indicator does not light when the passenger is seated and is not fastened, something may be interfering with the occupant detection sensor.

Check if:

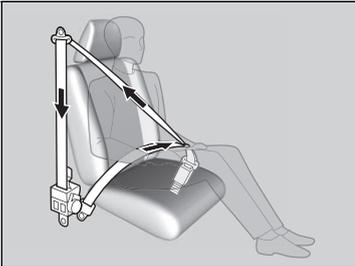
- A cushion is placed on the seat.
- The front passenger is not sitting properly.

If none of these conditions exist, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

The front seats are equipped with automatic seat belt tensioners to enhance safety.

The tensioners automatically tighten the front seat belts during a moderate-to-severe frontal collision, sometimes even if the collision is not severe enough to inflate the front airbags.



### Automatic Seat Belt Tensioners

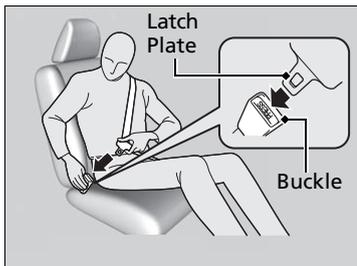
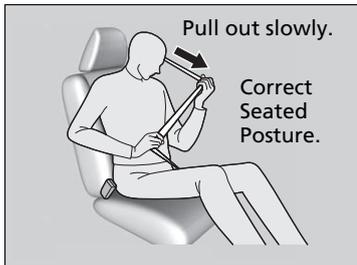
The seat belt tensioners can only operate once. If a tensioner is activated, the SRS indicator will come on. Have a dealer replace the tensioner and thoroughly inspect the seat belt system as it may not offer protection in a subsequent crash.

During a moderate-to-severe side impact, the tensioner on that side of the vehicle also activates.

## Fastening a Seat Belt

After adjusting a front seat to the proper position, and while sitting upright and well back in the seat:

➤ **Seats** P. 211



1. Pull the seat belt out slowly.

2. Insert the latch plate into the buckle, then tug on the belt to make sure the buckle is secure.

▶ Make sure that the belt is not twisted or caught on anything.

### Fastening a Seat Belt

No one should sit in a seat with an inoperative seat belt or one that does not appear to be working correctly. Using a seat belt that is not working properly may not protect the occupant in a crash. Have a dealer check the belt as soon as possible.

If the seat belt appears to be locked in a fully retracted position, firmly pull out on the shoulder belt once, then push it back in. Then smoothly pull it out of the retractor and fasten. If you are unable to release the seat belt from a fully retracted position, do not allow anyone to sit in the seat, and take your vehicle to a dealer for repair.

➤ **About Your Seat Belts** P. 38

➤ **Seat Belt Inspection** P. 46

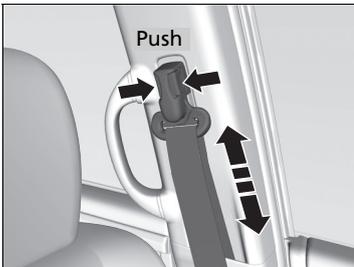
Never insert any foreign objects into the buckle or retractor mechanism.



3. Position the lap part of the belt as low as possible across your hips, then pull up on the shoulder part of the belt so the lap part fits snugly. This lets your strong pelvic bones take the force of a crash and reduces the chance of internal injuries.
4. If necessary, pull up on the belt again to remove any slack, then check that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder. This spreads the forces of a crash over the strongest bones in your upper body.

### ■ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage

The front seats have adjustable shoulder anchorages to accommodate taller and shorter occupants.



1. Move the anchorage up and down while holding the release buttons.
2. Position the anchorage so that the belt rests across the centre of your chest and over your shoulder.

### ⌘ Fastening a Seat Belt

## ⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioning the seat belts can cause serious injury or death in a crash.

Make sure all seat belts are properly positioned before driving.

To release the belt, push the red **PRESS** button and then guide the belt by hand until it has retracted completely.

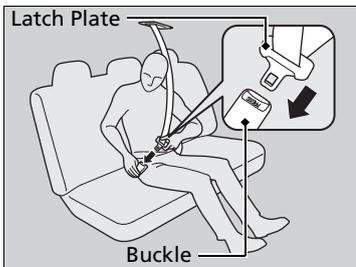
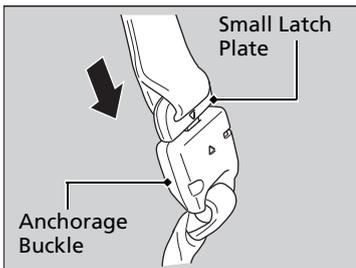
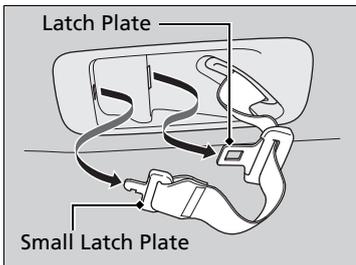
When exiting the vehicle, be sure the belt is properly stowed so that it will not get caught in the closing door.

### ⌘ Adjusting the Shoulder Anchorage

After an adjustment, make sure that the shoulder anchorage position is secure.

The shoulder anchorage height can be adjusted to four levels. If the belt contacts your neck, lower the height one level at a time.

## ■ Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage



1. Pull out the seat belt's small latch plate and the latch plate from each holding slot in the ceiling.

2. Line up the triangle marks on the small latch plate and anchorage buckle. Make sure the seat belt is not twisted. Attach the belt to the anchorage buckle.

3. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Properly fasten the seat belt the same way you fasten the lap/shoulder seat belt.

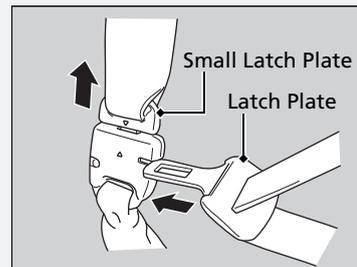
## ▶▶ Seat Belt with Detachable Anchorage

### ⚠ WARNING

Using the seat belt with the detachable anchorage unlatched increases the chance of serious injury or death in a crash.

Before using the seat belt, make sure the detachable anchorage is correctly latched.

To unlatch the detachable anchorage, insert the latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchorage buckle.



## Advice for Pregnant Women

If you are pregnant, the best way to protect yourself and your unborn child when driving or riding in a vehicle is to always wear a seat belt. When positioning the seat belt, wear the shoulder belt section across the chest, avoiding the abdomen, and keep the lap belt portion as low as possible across the hips.

Wear the shoulder belt across the chest avoiding the abdomen.



Wear the lap part of the belt as low as possible across the hips.

## Advice for Pregnant Women

Each time you have a checkup, ask your doctor if it is okay for you to drive.

To reduce the risk of injuries to both you and your unborn child that can be caused by an inflating front airbag:

- When driving, sit upright and adjust the seat as far back as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle.
- When sitting in the front passenger's seat, adjust the seat as far back as possible.

## Seat Belt Inspection

Regularly check the condition of your seat belts as follows:

- Pull each belt out fully, and look for frays, cuts, burns, and wear.
- Check that the latch plates and buckles work smoothly and the belts retract easily.
  - ▶ If a belt does not retract easily, cleaning the belt may correct the problem. Only use a mild soap and warm water. Do not use bleach or cleaning solvents. Make sure the belt is completely dry before allowing it to retract.

Any belt that is not in good condition or working properly will not provide proper protection and should be replaced as soon as possible.

A belt that has been worn during a crash may not provide the same level of protection in a subsequent crash. Have your seat belts inspected by a dealer after any collision.

### ▶▶ Seat Belt Inspection

#### **WARNING**

**Not checking or maintaining seat belts can result in serious injury or death if the seat belts do not work properly when needed.**

**Check your seat belts regularly and have any problem corrected as soon as possible.**

**WARNING:** No modifications or additions should be made by the user which will either prevent the seat belt adjusting devices from operating to remove slack, or prevent the seat belt assembly from being adjusted to remove slack.

**WARNING:** It is essential to replace the entire assembly after it has been worn in a severe impact even if damage to the assembly is not obvious.

**WARNING:** Care should be taken to avoid contamination of the webbing with polishes, oils and chemicals, and particularly battery acid. Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. The belt should be replaced if webbing becomes frayed, contaminated or damaged.

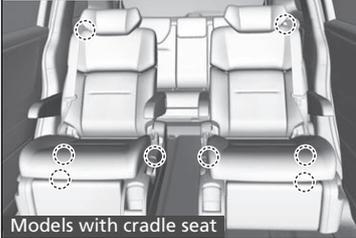
## Anchorage Points

Front Seat



When replacing the seat belts, use the anchorage points shown in the images. The front seat has a lap/shoulder belt.

Second Row Seat



Models with cradle seat

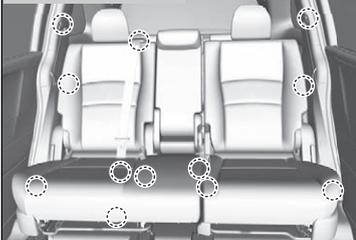
Models with captain seat

Models with cradle seat

Models with captain seat

The second row seat has two lap/shoulder belts.

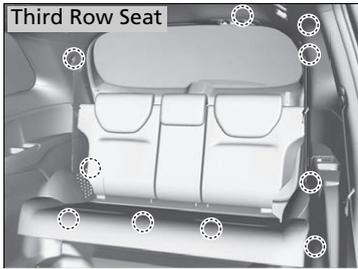
Second Row Seat



Models with bench seat

Models with bench seat

The second row seat has three lap/shoulder belts.



The third row seat has three lap/shoulder belts.

## Airbag System Components

The front, front side, and side curtain airbags are deployed according to the direction and severity of impact. The airbag system includes:

- Two SRS (Supplemental Restraint System) front airbags. The driver's airbag is stored in the centre of the steering wheel; the front passenger's airbag is stored in the dashboard. Both are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.
- Two side airbags, one for the driver and one for the front passenger. The airbags are stored in the outer edges of the seat-backs. Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.
- Two side curtain airbags, one for each side of the vehicle. The airbags are stored in the ceiling, above the side windows. The front and rear pillars are marked **SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAG**.
- An electronic control unit that, when the power mode is in ON, continually monitors information about the various impact sensors, seat and buckle sensors, airbag activators, seat belt tensioners, and other vehicle information. During a crash event the unit can record such information.
- Automatic front seat belt tensioners.
- Impact sensors that can detect a moderate-to-severe front or side impact.
- An indicator on the instrument panel that alerts you to a possible problem with your airbag system or seat belt tensioners.
- Safing Sensor

## ■ Important Facts About Your Airbags

Airbags can pose serious hazards. To do their job, airbags must inflate with tremendous force. So, while airbags help to save lives, they can cause burns, bruises, and other minor injuries, sometimes even fatal ones if occupants are not wearing their seat belts properly and sitting correctly.

**What you should do:** Always wear your seat belt properly, and sit upright and as far back from the steering wheel as possible while allowing full control of the vehicle. A front passenger should move their seat as far back from the dashboard as possible.

Remember, however, that no safety system can prevent all injuries or deaths that can occur in a severe crash, even when seat belts are properly worn and the airbags deploy.

**Do not place hard or sharp objects between yourself and a front airbag.**

Carrying hard or sharp objects on your lap, or driving with a pipe or other sharp object in your mouth, can result in injuries if your front airbag inflates.

**Do not attach or place objects on the front airbag covers.** Objects on the covers marked **SRS AIRBAG** could interfere with the proper operation of the airbags or be propelled inside the vehicle and hurt someone if the airbags inflate.

## ▣ Important Facts About Your Airbags

Do not attempt to deactivate your airbags. Together, airbags and seat belts provide the best protection.

When driving, keep hands and arms out of the deployment path of the front airbag by holding each side of the steering wheel. Do not cross an arm over the airbag cover.

## Types of Airbags

Your vehicle is equipped with three types of airbags:

- **Front airbags:** Airbags in front of the driver's and front passenger's seats.
- **Side airbags:** Airbags in the driver's and front passenger's seat-backs.
- **Side curtain airbags:** Airbags above the side windows.

Each is discussed in the following pages.

## Front Airbags (SRS)

The front SRS airbags inflate in a moderate-to-severe frontal collision to help to protect the head and chest of the driver and/or front passenger.

**SRS** (Supplemental Restraint System) indicates that the airbags are designed to supplement seat belts, not replace them. Seat belts are the occupant's primary restraint system.

### Housing Locations

The front airbags are housed in the centre of the steering wheel for the driver, and in the dashboard for the front passenger. Both airbags are marked **SRS AIRBAG**.

### Types of Airbags

The airbags can inflate whenever the power mode is in ON.

After an airbag inflates in a crash, you may see a small amount of smoke. This is from the combustion process of the inflator material and is not harmful. People with respiratory problems may experience some temporary discomfort. If this occurs, get out of the vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so.

### Front Airbags (SRS)

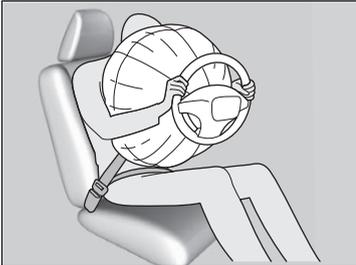
During a frontal crash severe enough to cause one or both front airbags to deploy, the airbags can inflate at different rates, depending on the severity of the crash, whether or not the seat belts are latched, and/or other factors. Frontal airbags are designed to supplement the seat belts to help to reduce the likelihood of head and chest injuries in frontal crashes.

## ■ Operation

Front airbags are designed to inflate during moderate-to-severe frontal collisions. When the vehicle decelerates suddenly, the sensors send information to the control unit which signals one or both front airbags to inflate.

A frontal collision can be either head-on or angled between two vehicles, or when a vehicle crashes into a stationary object, such as a concrete wall.

## ■ How the Front Airbags Work



While your seat belt restrains your torso, the front airbag provides supplemental protection for your head and chest. The front airbags deflate immediately so that they won't interfere with the driver's visibility or the ability to steer or operate other controls.

The total time for inflation and deflation is so fast that most occupants are not aware that the airbags deployed until they see them lying in front of them.

## ⊗ How the Front Airbags Work

Although the driver's and front passenger's airbags normally inflate within a split second of each other, it is possible for only one airbag to deploy. This can happen if the severity of a collision is at the margin, or threshold, that determines whether or not the airbags will deploy. In such cases, the seat belt will provide sufficient protection, and the supplemental protection offered by the airbag would be minimal.

### ■ When front airbags should not deploy

**Minor frontal crashes:** Front airbags were designed to supplement seat belts and help to save lives, not to prevent minor scrapes, or even broken bones that might occur during a less than moderate-to-severe frontal crash.

**Side impacts:** Front airbags can provide protection when a sudden deceleration causes a driver or front passenger to move towards the front of the vehicle. Side airbags and side curtain airbags have been specifically designed to help to reduce the severity of injuries that can occur during a moderate-to-severe side impact which can cause the driver or passenger to move towards the side of the vehicle.

**Rear impacts:** Head restraints and seat belts are your best protection during a rear impact. Front airbags cannot provide any significant protection and are not designed to deploy in such collisions.

**Rollovers:** Seat belts and side curtain airbags offer the best protection in a rollover. Because front airbags could provide little if any protection, they are not designed to deploy during a rollover.

### ■ When front airbags deploy with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden deceleration, a strong impact to the vehicle framework or suspension might cause one or more of the airbags to deploy. Examples include running into a curb, the edge of a hole, or other low fixed object that causes a sudden deceleration in the vehicle chassis. Since the impact is underneath the vehicle, damage may not be readily apparent.

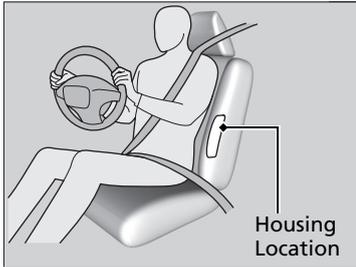
### ■ When front airbags may not deploy, even though exterior damage appears severe

Since crushable body parts absorb crash energy during an impact, the amount of visible damage does not always indicate proper airbag operation. In fact, some collisions can result in severe damage but no airbag deployment because the airbags would not have been needed or would not have provided protection even if they had deployed.

## Side Airbags

The side airbags help to protect the torso and pelvis of the driver or a front passenger during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

### ■ Housing Locations



The side airbags are housed in the outside edge of the driver's and passenger's seat-backs.

Both are marked **SIDE AIRBAG**.

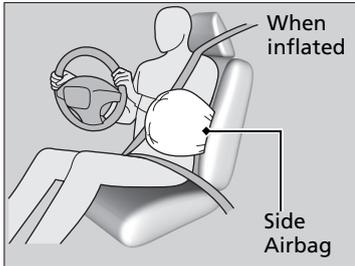
### ⚠ Side Airbags

Do not attach accessories on or near the side airbags. They can interfere with the proper operation of the airbags, or hurt someone if an airbag inflates.

Do not cover or replace the front seat-back covers without consulting a dealer. Improperly replacing or covering front seat-back covers can prevent your side airbags from properly deploying during a side impact.

Do not let the front passenger lean sideways with their head in the deployment path of the side airbag. An inflating side airbag can strike with strong force and seriously injure the passenger.

## ■ Operation



When the sensors detect a moderate-to-severe side impact, the control unit signals the side airbag on the impact side to immediately inflate.

### ■ When a side airbag deploys with little or no visible damage

Because the airbag system senses sudden acceleration, a strong impact to the side of the vehicle's framework can cause a side airbag to deploy. In such cases, there may be little or no damage, but the side impact sensors detected a severe enough impact to deploy the airbag.

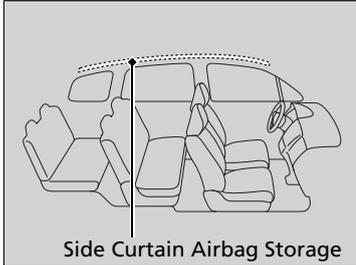
### ■ When a side airbag may not deploy, even though visible damage appears severe

It is possible for a side airbag not to deploy during an impact that results in apparently severe damage. This can occur when the point of impact was towards the far front or rear of the vehicle, or when the vehicle's crushable body parts absorbed most of the crash energy. In either case, the side airbag would not have been needed nor provided protection even if it had deployed.

## Side Curtain Airbags

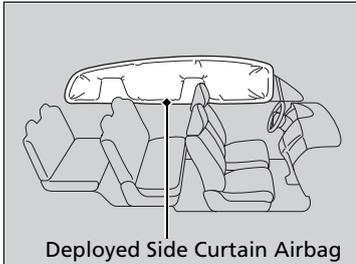
The side curtain airbags help to protect the heads of the driver and passengers in outer seating positions during a moderate-to-severe side impact.

### ■ Housing Locations



The side curtain airbags are located in the ceiling above the side windows on both sides of the vehicle.

### ■ Operation



The side curtain airbag is designed to deploy in a moderate-to-severe side impact.

### ■ When side curtain airbags deploy in a frontal collision

One or both side curtain airbags may also inflate in a moderate-to-severe angled frontal collision.

### ⓘ Side Curtain Airbags

The side curtain airbags are most effective when an occupant is wearing their seat belt properly and sitting upright, well back in their seat.

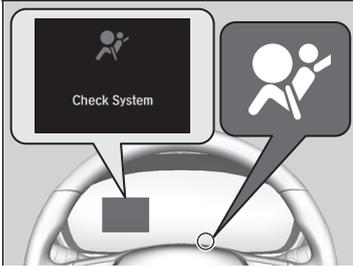
Do not attach any objects to the side windows or roof pillars as they can interfere with the proper operation of the side curtain airbags.

Do not put a coat hanger or hard objects on a coat hook. This could result in injuries if your side curtain airbag inflates.

## Airbag System Indicators

If a problem occurs in the airbag system, the SRS indicator will come on and a message appears on the driver information interface.

### ■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator



#### ■ When the power mode is set to ON

The indicator comes on for a few seconds, then goes off. This tells you the system is working properly.

If the indicator comes on at any other time, or does not come on at all, have the system checked by a dealer as soon as possible. If you don't, your airbags and seat belt tensioners may not work properly when they are needed.

#### ■ Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) Indicator

### ⚠ WARNING

Ignoring the SRS indicator can result in serious injury or death if the airbag systems or tensioners do not work properly.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible if the SRS indicator alerts you to a possible problem.

## Airbag Care

You do not need to, and should not, perform any maintenance on or replace any airbag system components yourself. However, you should have your vehicle inspected by a dealer in the following situations:

### ■ When the airbags have deployed

If an airbag has inflated, the control unit and other related parts must be replaced. Similarly, once an automatic seat belt tensioner has been activated, it must be replaced.

### ■ When the vehicle has been in a moderate-to-severe collision

Even if the airbags did not inflate, have your dealer inspect the following: front seat belt tensioners, and each seat belt that was worn during the crash.

#### ✎ Airbag Care

The removal of airbag components from the vehicle is prohibited.

In case of malfunction, or shutdown, or after the airbag inflation/seat belt tensioner operation, ask a qualified personnel for handling.

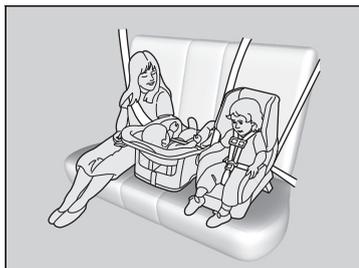
We recommend against the use of salvaged airbag system components, including the airbag, tensioners, sensors, and control unit.

## Protecting Child Passengers

Each year, many children are injured or killed in vehicle crashes because they are either unrestrained or not properly restrained. In fact, vehicle crashes are the number one cause of death of children aged 12 and under.

To reduce the number of child deaths and injuries, infants and children should be properly restrained when they ride in a vehicle.

**Children should sit properly restrained in a rear seat.** This is because:



- An inflating front airbag can injure or kill a child sitting in the front seat.
- A child in the front seat is more likely to interfere with the driver's ability to safely control the vehicle.
- Statistics show that children of all sizes and ages are safer when they are properly restrained in a rear seat.

\* Not available on all models

### Protecting Child Passengers

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Children who are unrestrained or improperly restrained can be seriously injured or killed in a crash.

Any child too small for a seat belt should be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system. A larger child should be properly restrained with a seat belt, using a booster seat if necessary.

In many countries, the law requires all children aged 12 and under, and whose height are shorter than 150 cm be properly restrained in a rear seat.

In many countries, it is required to use an officially approved and suitable child restraint system for transporting a child on any passenger seat. Check your local legal requirement.

We recommend that child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44\* or No. 129\*, or the regulations of the subject countries.

➔ **Selecting a Child Restraint System** P. 66

*Continued*

- Never hold a child on your lap because it is impossible to protect them in the event of a collision.
- Never put a seat belt over yourself and a child. During a crash, the belt would likely press deep into the child and cause serious or fatal injuries.
- Never let two children use the same seat belt. Both children could be very seriously injured in a crash.
- Any child who is too small to wear a seat belt must be properly restrained in an approved child restraint system that is properly secured to the vehicle using the seat belt or the child restraint anchorage system.

▶▶ Protecting Child Passengers

Models with lockable retractor

**⚠ WARNING**

Allowing a child to play with a seat belt or wrap one around their neck can result in serious injury or death.

Instruct children not to play with any seat belt and make sure any unused seat belt a child can reach is buckled, fully retracted, and locked.

Front Passenger's Sun Visor

Except Taiwanese models

**⚠ WARNING**



**NEVER** use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an **ACTIVE AIRBAG** in front of it, **DEATH** or **SERIOUS INJURY** to the **CHILD** can occur.

- Do not allow children to operate the doors, windows or seat adjustments.
- Do not leave children in the vehicle unattended, especially in hot weather when the inside of the vehicle can get hot enough to kill them. They could also activate vehicle controls causing it to move unexpectedly.

▶▶ Protecting Child Passengers

**Taiwanese models**



依規定前排座椅禁止乘載嬰兒、幼童及兒童

**Malaysian models**  
Front Passenger's Doorjamb

**⚠ WARNING**



**Extreme Hazard!**

**DO NOT use a rear-facing child restraint on a seat protected by an airbag in front of it!**

▶▶ Protecting Child Passengers

**WARNING:** Use the power window lock button to prevent children from opening the windows. Using this feature will prevent children from playing with the windows, which could expose them to hazards or distract the driver.

▶ **Opening/Closing the Power Windows**

P. 184

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

**Models with lockable retractor seat belts**

To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.

To remind you of the passenger's front airbag hazard and child safety, your vehicle has the warning labels on the passenger's side sun visor and door jamb\*. Please read and follow the instructions on this label.

▶ **Safety Labels** P. 95

## Safety of Infants and Small Children

### ■ Protecting Infants

An infant must be properly restrained in a rear-facing child restraint system until the infant reaches the child restraint system manufacturer's weight or height limit for the seat.



#### ■ Positioning a rear-facing child restraint system

Child restraint system must be placed and secured in a rear seating position.

- ▶ We recommend that you install the child restraint system directly behind the front passenger's seat, move the seat as far forward as needed, and leave it unoccupied.
- ▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

If there is, you may wish to get a smaller rear-facing child restraint system.

### ▣ Protecting Infants

#### ⚠ WARNING

Placing a rear-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

Always place a rear-facing child restraint system in the back seat, not the front.

As required by UN Regulation No. 94:

#### ⚠ WARNING



**NEVER** use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an **ACTIVE AIRBAG** in front of it, **DEATH** or **SERIOUS INJURY** to the **CHILD** can occur.

Many experts recommend use of a rear-facing child restraint system for a child up to two years old if the child's height and weight are appropriate for a rear-facing child restraint system.

When properly installed, a rear-facing child restraint system may prevent the driver or a front passenger from moving their seat all the way back, or from locking their seat-back in the desired position.

#### ☒ Protecting Infants

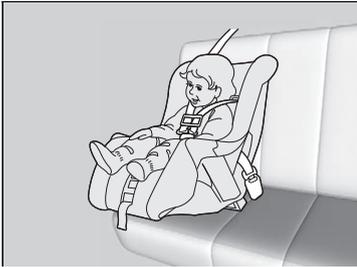
Rear-facing child restraint systems should never be installed in a front-facing position.

Always refer to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions before installation.

If the passenger's front airbag inflates, it can hit the rear-facing child restraint system with great force, which can dislodge or strike the system, and seriously injure the child.

## ■ Protecting Smaller Children

If a child has exceeded the weight and height limitations of a rear-facing child restraint system, the child should be properly restrained in a firmly secured front-facing child restraint system until they exceed the weight and height limitations for the front-facing child restraint system.



### ■ Front-facing child restraint system placement

We strongly recommend placing a front-facing child restraint system in a rear seating position.

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can be hazardous. A rear seat is the safest place for a child.

## ⚠ Protecting Smaller Children

### ⚠ WARNING

Placing a front-facing child restraint system in the front seat can result in serious injury or death if the front airbag inflates.

If you must place a front-facing child restraint system in front, move the vehicle seat as far back as possible, and properly restrain the child.

Educate yourself about the laws and regulations regarding child restraint system use where you are driving, and follow the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions.

## ■ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Some child restraint systems are lower anchorage compatible. Some have a rigid-type connector while others have a flexible-type connector. Both are equally easy to use. Some existing and previously owned child restraint systems can only be installed using the seat belt. Whichever type you choose, follow the child restraint system manufacturer's use and care instructions including recommended expiration dates as well as the instructions in this manual. Proper installation is key to maximising your child's safety.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.

In seating positions and vehicles not equipped with lower anchorages, install a child restraint system using the seat belt and a top tether for added security. This is because all child restraint systems must be secured with the seat belt when the lower anchorage system\* is not in use. In addition, the child restraint system manufacturer may advise that a seat belt be used to attach an ISOFIX\* restraint system once a child reaches a specified weight. Please read the child restraint system owner's manual for proper installation instructions.

### ■ Important consideration when selecting a child restraint system

Make sure the child restraint system meets the following three requirements:

- The child restraint system is the correct type and size for the child.
- The child restraint system is the correct type for the seating position.
- The child restraint system is compliant with safety standards. We recommend a child restraint system compliant with UN Regulation No. 44\* or No. 129\*, or the regulations of the subject countries. Look for the approval mark on the system and the manufacturer's statement of compliance on the box.

## ► Selecting a Child Restraint System

Installation of a lower anchorage\*-compatible child restraint system is simple.

Lower anchorage\*-compatible child restraint systems have been developed to simplify the installation process and reduce the likelihood of injuries caused by incorrect installation.

### Except Middle Eastern models

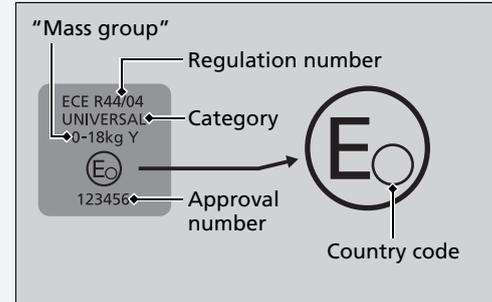
We recommend a rear-facing or a front-facing Honda genuine ISOFIX child restraint system for infants or small children, respectively. Ask your dealer.

### ■ Child Restraint Systems Standards

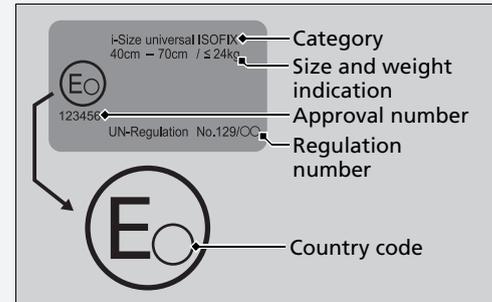
If a child restraint system (whether an i-Size\*/ISOFIX\* type or one that is fitted with a seat belt) meets the relevant UN Regulation, it will be affixed with an approval label as shown in the adjacent table. Before purchasing or using any child restraint system, make sure to check the approval label and ensure that it is compatible with your vehicle and the child, and that it complies with the relevant UN Regulation.

#### ▶▶ Selecting a Child Restraint System

Example of UN Regulation No. 44 approval label\*



Example of UN Regulation No. 129 approval label\*



\* Not available on all models

Continued

## ■ Lower Anchorage\*-Compatible Child Restraint Systems

The two outer second row seats in your vehicle are equipped with lower anchorages.

However, not all of the various types of child restraint systems are suitable for use in your vehicle. Before you purchase or use any lower anchorage-compatible (i-Size\*/ISOFIX\*) child restraint system, refer to the following tables to ensure that the restraint system is appropriate for the vehicle, the seating position, and the child's weight (mass group) and size.

## ▣ Lower Anchorage\*-Compatible Child Restraint Systems

Mass group is specified for some child restraint systems. Make sure to check the mass group as indicated in the manufacturer's instructions as well as on the package and labels of the child restraint system.

The particular child restraint systems listed in the table are genuine Honda products. They are available from your dealer.

For correct installation, refer to the instructions manual that came with the child restraint system.

Malaysian models

■ ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems

MASS Group	Size Class	Fixture	Seating positions						Recommended Child Restraint Systems*1
			Front seat	Middle seat		Rear seat			
			Passenger	L-side	R-side	L-side	R-side	Centre	
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	X	X	X	X	X	X	
	G	ISO/L2	X	X	X	X	X	X	
group 0 up to 10 kg	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	IL	X	X	X	Honda Baby Safe ISOFIX Honda ISOFIX Neo
group 0+ up to 13 kg	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	IL	X	X	X	Honda Baby Safe ISOFIX Honda ISOFIX Neo
	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	IL	X	X	X	Honda Baby Safe ISOFIX Honda ISOFIX Neo
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	IL	X	X	X	Honda Baby Safe ISOFIX Honda ISOFIX Neo
group I 9 to 18 kg	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	IL	X	X	X	
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	IL	X	X	X	
	B	ISO/F2	X	IUF	IUF	X	X	X	Honda Baby Safe ISOFIX Honda ISOFIX Neo
	B1	ISO/F2X	X	IUF	IUF	X	X	X	Honda Baby Safe ISOFIX Honda ISOFIX Neo
	A	ISO/F3	X	IUF	IUF	X	X	X	Honda Baby Safe ISOFIX Honda ISOFIX Neo
group II 15 to 25 kg			X	X	X	X	X	X	
group III 22 to 36 kg			X	X	X	X	X	X	

- IUF: Suitable for forward-facing ISOFIX child restraints system of universal category approved for use in this mass group.
- IL: Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems (CRS), including those listed in the corresponding box in the right column of the table. These ISOFIX CRS are those of the 'specific vehicle', 'restricted' or 'semi-universal' categories.
- X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.
- \* 1: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda's recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up-to-date information on our recommended CRSs. Other CRSs may also be suitable for use. Refer to the CRS manufacturer's list of recommended vehicles for the CRS in question.

**Malaysian models**

**■ i-Size Child Restraint Systems**

	Seating position					
	Front seat	Middle seat		Rear seat		
	Passenger	L-side	R-side	L-side	R-side	Centre
i-Size child restraint system	X	i-U	i-U	X	X	X

- i-U: Suitable for i-Size "universal" Child Restraint Systems forward- and rearward-facing.
- X: Seating position not suitable for i-Size "universal" Child Restraint Systems.

▶▶ Lower Anchorage\* -Compatible Child Restraint Systems

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

ISOFIX Size Class	Fixture (CRF)	Description
G	ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
F	ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
E	ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
D	ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
C	ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
B1	ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
B	ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
A	ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems

Taiwanese models

■ ISOFIX Child Restraint Systems

Models with cradle seat

Models with captain seat

MASS Group	Size Class	Fixture	Seating positions					
			Front seat	Middle seat		Rear seat		
			Passenger	L-side	R-side	L-side	R-side	Centre
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	X	X	X	X	X	X
	G	ISO/L2	X	X	X	X	X	X
group 0 up to 10 kg	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	IL	X	X	X
group 0+ up to 13 kg	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	IL	X	X	X
	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	IL	X	X	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	IL	X	X	X
group I 9 to 18 kg	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	IL	X	X	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	IL	X	X	X
	B	ISO/F2	X	IUF	IUF	X	X	X
	B1	ISO/F2X	X	IUF	IUF	X	X	X
	A	ISO/F3	X	IUF	IUF	X	X	X
group II 15 to 25 kg			X	X	X	X	X	X
group III 22 to 36 kg			X	X	X	X	X	X

\* Not available on all models

Continued

▶ Lower Anchorage \*-Compatible Child Restraint Systems

When purchasing a child restraint systems, make sure to check the ISOFIX size class or the fixture to ensure that the seat is compatible with your vehicle.

ISOFIX Size Class	Fixture (CRF)	Description
G	ISO/L2	Right lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
F	ISO/L1	Left lateral-facing (carrycot) infant seat
E	ISO/R1	Rearward-facing infant seat
D	ISO/R2	Reduced-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
C	ISO/R3	Full-size rearward-facing child restraint systems
B1	ISO/F2X	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
B	ISO/F2	Reduced-height forward-facing child restraint systems
A	ISO/F3	Full-height, forward-facing child restraint systems

- 
- IUF: Suitable for forward-facing ISOFIX child restraints system of universal category approved for use in this mass group.
  - IL: Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems (CRS). These ISOFIX CRS are those of the 'specific vehicle', 'restricted' or 'semi-universal' categories.
  - X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.
-

**Models with bench seat**

MASS Group	Size Class	Fixture	Seating positions						
			Front seat	Middle seat			Rear seat		
			Passenger	L-side	R-side	Centre	L-side	R-side	Centre
Carrycot	F	ISO/L1	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
	G	ISO/L2	X	X	X	X	X	X	X
group 0 up to 10 kg	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	IL	X	X	X	X
group 0+ up to 13 kg	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	IL	X	X	X	X
	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	IL	X	X	X	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	IL	X	X	X	X
group I 9 to 18 kg	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	IL	X	X	X	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	IL	X	X	X	X
	B	ISO/F2	X	IUF	IUF	X	X	X	X
	B1	ISO/F2X	X	IUF	IUF	X	X	X	X
	A	ISO/F3	X	IUF	IUF	X	X	X	X
group II 15 to 25 kg			X	X	X	X	X	X	X
group III 22 to 36 kg			X	X	X	X	X	X	X

IUF: Suitable for forward-facing ISOFIX child restraints system of universal category approved for use in this mass group.

IL: Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraint systems (CRS). These ISOFIX CRS are those of the 'specific vehicle', 'restricted' or 'semi-universal' categories.

X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

Continued

Taiwanese models

■ i-Size Child Restraint Systems

Models with cradle seat

Models with captain seat

	Seating position					
	Front seat	Middle seat		Rear seat		
	Passenger	L-side	R-side	L-side	R-side	Centre
i-Size child restraint system	X	i-U	i-U	X	X	X

i-U: Suitable for i-Size “universal” Child Restraint Systems forward- and rearward-facing.

X: Seating position not suitable for i-Size “universal” Child Restraint Systems.

Models with bench seat

	Seating position						
	Front seat	Middle seat			Rear seat		
	Passenger	L-side	R-side	Centre	L-side	R-side	Centre
i-Size child restraint system	X	i-U	i-U	X	X	X	X

i-U: Suitable for i-Size “universal” Child Restraint Systems forward- and rearward-facing.

X: Seating position not suitable for i-Size “universal” Child Restraint Systems.

## ■ Child Restraint Systems to be Installed with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

Not all of the various types of child restraint systems are suitable for use in your vehicle. Before you purchase or use a child restraint system, refer to the following table to ensure that the child restraint system is appropriate for the vehicle, the seating position, and the child's weight (mass group) and size.

### ☒ Child Restraint Systems to be Installed with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

Mass group is specified for some child restraint systems. Make sure to check the mass group as indicated in the manufacturer's instructions as well as on the package and labels of the child restraint system.

The particular child restraint systems listed in the table are genuine Honda products. They are available from your dealer.

For correct installation, refer to the instructions manual that came with the child restraint system.

Malaysian models

■ Child Restraint Systems installed with Seat Belt

MASS Group	Seating position						Recommended Child Restraint Systems* <sup>1</sup>
	Front seat	Middle seat		Rear seat			
	Passenger	L-side	R-side	L-Side	R-Side	Centre	
group 0 up to 10 kg	X	U	U	U	U	U* <sup>3</sup>	Honda Baby Safe
group 0+ up to 13 kg	X	U	U	U	U	U* <sup>3</sup>	Honda Baby Safe
group I 9 to 18 kg	UF* <sup>2</sup>	U	U	U	U	U* <sup>3</sup>	Honda ISOFIX (Belted)
group II 15 to 25 kg	UF* <sup>2</sup>	U	U	U	U	U* <sup>3</sup>	
group III 22 to 36 kg	UF* <sup>2</sup>	U	U	U	U	U* <sup>3</sup>	

U: Suitable for “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF: Suitable for forward-facing “universal” category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

\*1: The named Child Restraint Systems (CRS) reflect Honda’s recommendations at the date of publication. You should speak to an authorised dealer for up-to-date information on our recommended CRSs. Other CRSs may also be suitable for use. Refer to the CRS manufacturer’s list of recommended vehicles for the CRS in question.

\*2: Move the front seat to its slide rail rearmost and adjust the front seat-back angle to its most upright position.

\*3: Seat-back angle to the upright position (Front most lock position).

Taiwanese models

■ Child Restraint Systems installed with Seat Belt

Models with cradle seat

Models with captain seat

MASS Group	Seating position					
	Front seat	Middle seat		Rear seat		
	Passenger	L-side	R-side	L-Side	R-Side	Centre
group 0 up to 10 kg	X	U	U	U	U	U*1
group 0+ up to 13 kg	X	U	U	U	U	U*1
group I 9 to 18 kg	X	U	U	U	U	U*1
group II 15 to 25 kg	X	U	U	U	U	U*1
group III 22 to 36 kg	X	U	U	U	U	U*1

U: Suitable for "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

\*1: Seat-back angle to the upright position (Front most lock position).

Models with bench seat

MASS Group	Seating position						
	Front seat	Middle seat			Rear seat		
	Passenger	L-side	R-side	Centre	L-Side	R-Side	Centre
group 0 up to 10 kg	X	X	X	X	U	U	UF*1
group 0+ up to 13 kg	X	X	X	X	U	U	UF*1
group I 9 to 18 kg	X	UF*1	UF	UF	U	U	UF*1
group II 15 to 25 kg	X	UF*1	UF	UF	U	U	UF*1
group III 22 to 36 kg	X	UF*1	UF	UF	U	U	UF*1

U: Suitable for "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

UF: Suitable for forward-facing "universal" category restraints approved for use in this mass group.

X: Seat position not suitable for children in this mass group.

\*1: Seat-back angle to the upright position (Front most lock position).

## ■ Installing a Lower Anchorage\*-Compatible Child Restraint System

A lower anchorage-compatible child restraint system can be installed in either of the two outer second row seats. A child restraint system is attached to the lower anchorages with either the rigid or flexible type of connectors.

Models with cradle seat  
Models with captain seat



Models with bench seat



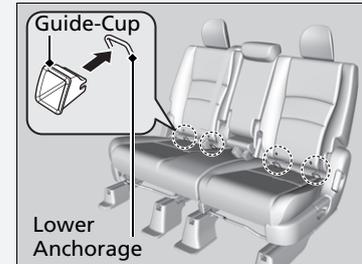
1. Locate the lower anchorages under the marks.

## ⊠ Installing a Lower Anchorage\*-Compatible Child Restraint System

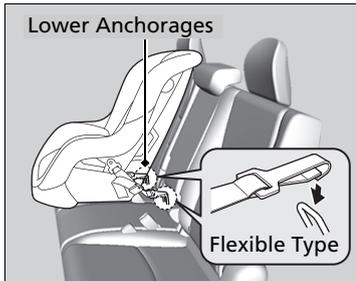
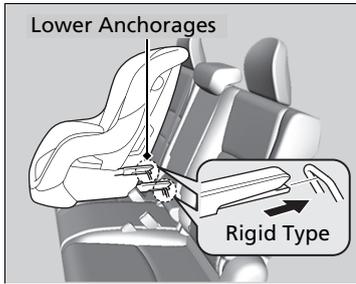
### ⚠ WARNING

Never attach two child restraint systems to the same anchorage. In a collision, one anchorage may not be strong enough to hold two child restraint system attachments and may break, causing serious injury or death.

Some child restraint systems come with optional guide-cups, which avoid possible damage to the seat surface. Follow the manufacturer's instructions when using the guide-cups, and attach them to the lower anchorages as shown in the image.



\* Not available on all models



2. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat, then attach the child restraint system to the lower anchorages according to the instructions that came with the child restraint system.

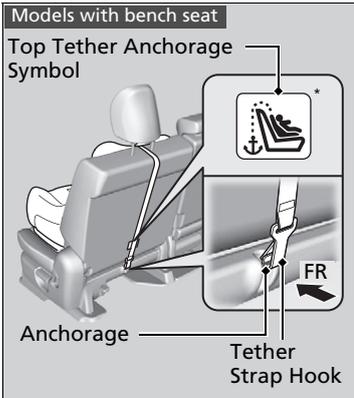
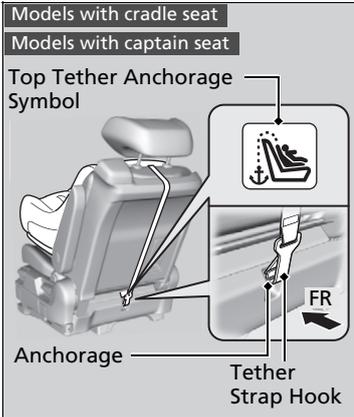
- When installing the child restraint system, make sure that the lower anchorages are not obstructed by the seat belt or any other object.

►► Installing a Lower Anchorage\*-Compatible Child Restraint System

For your child's safety, when using a child restraint system installed using the lower anchorage system, make sure that the child restraint system is properly secured to the vehicle.

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

The flexible type may not be available in your country.



**Child restraint system with tether strap**

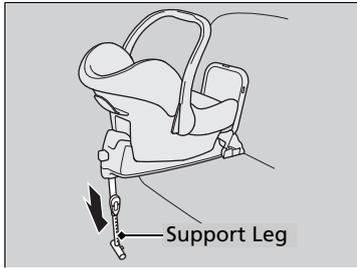
3. Put the head restraint to its upper-most position, then route the tether strap through the head restraint legs, and secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
5. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.

►► Installing a Lower Anchorage\*-Compatible Child Restraint System

**WARNING:** Never use a hook that does not come with a Top Tether Anchorage Symbol when securing an installed child restraint system.

\* Not available on all models

*Continued*



**Child restraint system with support leg**

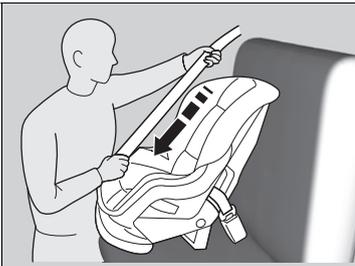
3. Extend the support leg until it touches the floor as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.
  - ▶ Confirm that the section of the floor on which the support leg rests is level. If the section is not level, the support leg will not provide adequate support. If this is the case, move the seat forward and back and side to side\* so that the support leg is resting on a level section.
  - ▶ Make sure that the support leg is not resting on the slide rail or cover.
  - ▶ Make sure that there is no contact between the child restraint system and the seat in front of it.

## ■ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

A child restraint can be installed with a lap/shoulder belt in any rear seat or, if absolutely necessary, the front passenger seat.



1. Place the child restraint system on the vehicle seat.
2. Route the seat belt through the child restraint system according to the child restraint system manufacturer's instructions, and insert the latch plate into the buckle.
  - ▶ Insert the latch plate fully until it clicks.



### ■ Lap/shoulder seat belt with lockable retractor

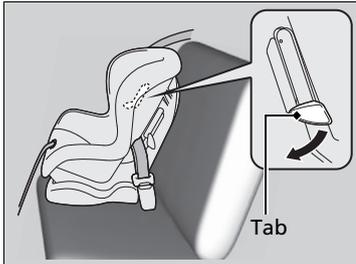
3. Slowly pull the shoulder part of the belt all the way out until it stops. This activates the lockable retractor.
4. Let the seat belt retract several centimetres and check that the retractor has switched modes by pulling on the webbing. It should not pull out again until it is reset by removing the latch plate from the buckle.
  - ▶ If you are able to pull the shoulder belt out, the lockable retractor is not activated. Slowly pull the seat belt all the way out, and repeat steps 3 – 4.

### ▣ Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt

To check if the lap/shoulder belt is equipped with the lockable retractor, pull the shoulder part of the lap/shoulder belt all the way out, let the belt retract slowly, then pull the belt again gently. If the belt is locked, the belt is equipped with the lockable retractor.

The seat belt with a lockable retractor has a label as shown in the image.





5. Grab the shoulder part of the seat belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.

- When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.

**Lap/shoulder seat belt without lockable retractor**

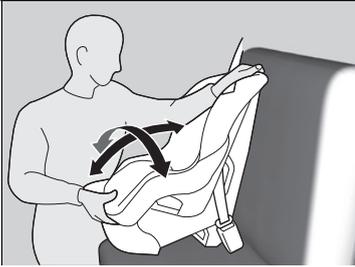
3. Push down the tab. Route the shoulder part of the belt into the slit at the side of the restraint.
4. Grab the shoulder part of the belt near the buckle, and pull up to remove any slack from the lap part of the belt.
  - When doing this, place your weight on the child restraint system and push it into the vehicle seat.
5. Position the belt properly and push up the tab. Make sure the belt is not twisted.
  - When pushing up the tab, pull up the upper shoulder part of the belt to remove any slack from the belt.

**►► Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt**

A child restraint system that is not properly secured will not adequately protect a child in a crash and may cause injury to the child or other vehicle occupants.

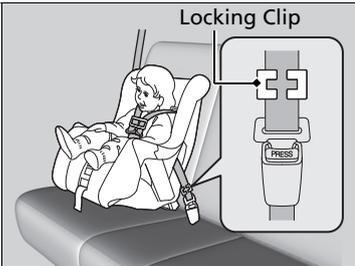
**Lap/shoulder seat belt with lockable retractor**

After the child restraint system is installed properly, check if the lockable retractor is activated and the belt is fully retracted and locked. To deactivate a lockable retractor, release the buckle and allow the seat belt to wind up all the way.



**All models**

6. Make sure the child restraint system is firmly secured by rocking it forward and back, and side to side; little movement should be felt.
7. Make sure any unused seat belt that a child can reach is buckled.



**Lap/shoulder seat belt without lockable retractor**

If your child restraint system does not come with a mechanism that secures the belt, install a locking clip on the seat belt.

After going through the step 1 and 2, pull up the shoulder part of the belt and make sure there is no slack in the lap portion.

3. Tightly grasp the belt near the latch plate. Pinch both parts of the belt together so they do not slip through the latch plate. Unbuckle the seat belt.
4. Install the locking clip as shown in the image. Position the clip as close as possible to the latch plate.
5. Insert the latch plate into the buckle. Go to step 6 and 7.

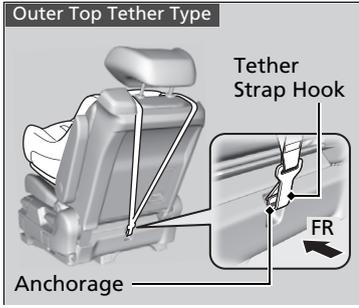
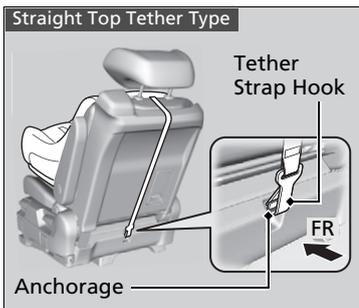
Australian and New Zealand models

## ■ Adding Security with a Tether

A tether anchorage point is provided behind each second row seating position and third row outer seating position.

If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

Second row outer seating positions



Models with captain seat

1. Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point.
2. Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap outside/through the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
3. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

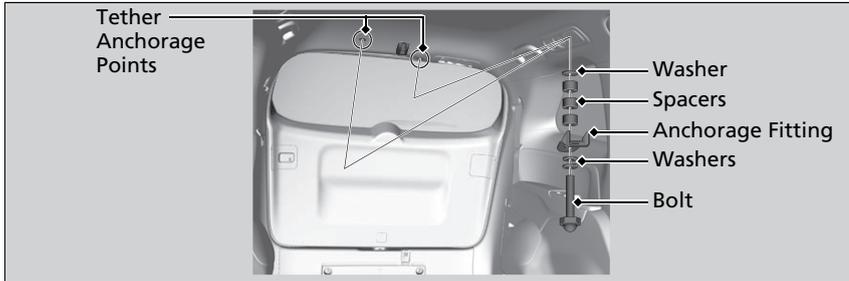
▶▶ Adding Security with a Tether

**WARNING:** Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

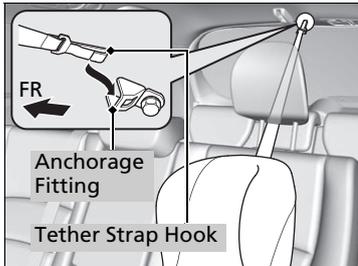
Always use a tether for front-facing child restraint system whether using the seat belt or lower anchorages.

**Second row outer seating positions**

**Models with bench seat**



1. Take the anchorage fitting assembly out of the luggage area.
2. Raise the cap from the anchorage point on the ceiling at the rear end.
3. Install the anchorage fitting, using the three spacers (10-mm type), three washers and a bolt (50 mm) to the anchorage point as shown in the image.

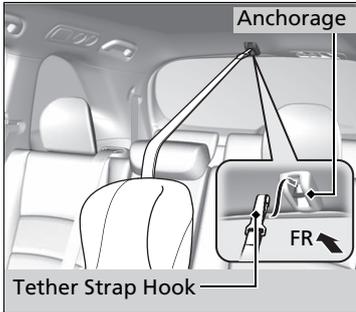


4. Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap through the head restraint legs.
5. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage fitting.
  - ▶ Make sure to attach the tether strap hook at the angle as shown in the image and tether strap is not twisted.
6. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

▶▶ Adding Security with a Tether

If adults are to use the third row seats, the child restraint anchorage fittings on the ceiling should not be installed.

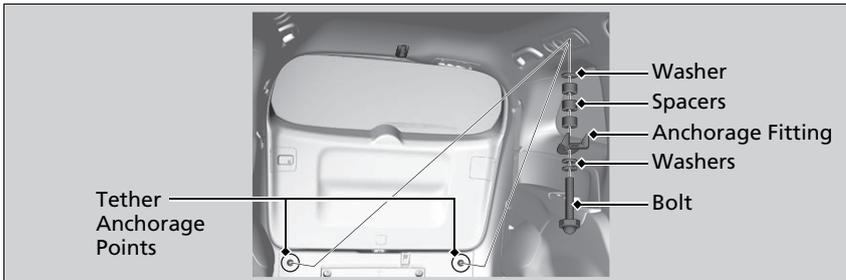
Second row centre seating position



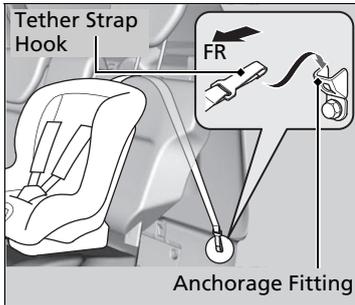
Models with bench seat

1. Lower the head restraint its lowest position.
2. Route the tether strap over the head restraint. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
3. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

Third row outer seating positions



1. Take the anchorage fitting assembly out of the luggage area.
2. Remove the cap from the anchorage point on the lower tailgate sill.
3. Install the anchorage fitting, using the three spacers (10 mm type), three washers and a bolt (50 mm) to the anchorage point as shown in the image.

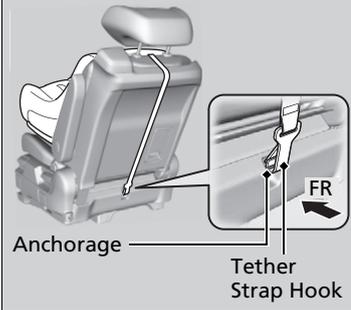


4. Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap through the head restraint legs.
5. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage fitting.
  - ▶ Make sure to attach the tether strap hook at the angle as shown in the image and tether strap is not twisted.
6. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

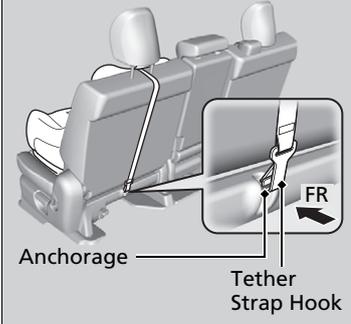
Except Australian and New Zealand models

## ■ Adding Security with a Tether

Models with cradle seat  
Models with captain seat



Models with bench seat



A tether anchorage point is provided behind each second row outer seating position. If you have a child restraint system that comes with a tether but can be installed with a seat belt, the tether may be used for additional security.

1. Locate the appropriate tether anchorage point.
2. Raise the head restraint to its highest position, then route the tether strap through the head restraint legs. Make sure the strap is not twisted.
3. Secure the tether strap hook to the anchorage.
4. Tighten the tether strap as instructed by the child restraint system manufacturer.

### ▶▶ Adding Security with a Tether

**WARNING:** Child restraint anchorages are designed to withstand only those loads imposed by correctly fitted child restraints. Under no circumstances are they to be used for adult seat belts, harnesses or for attaching other items or equipment to the vehicle.

Always use a tether for front-facing child restraint system whether using the seat belt or lower anchorages.

## Safety of Larger Children

### ■ Protecting Larger Children

The following pages give instructions on how to check proper seat belt fit, what kind of booster seat to use if one is needed, and important precautions for a child who must sit in front.

### ■ Checking Seat Belt Fit

When a child is too big for a child restraint system, secure the child in a rear seat using the lap/shoulder seat belt. Have the child sit upright and all the way back, then answer the following questions.



#### ■ Checklist

- Do the child's knees bend comfortably over the edge of the seat?
- Does the shoulder belt cross between the child's neck and arm?
- Is the lap part of the seat belt as low as possible, touching the child's thighs?
- Will the child be able to stay seated like this for the whole trip?

If you answer yes to all these questions, the child is ready to wear the lap/shoulder seat belt correctly. If you answer no to any question, the child needs to ride on a booster seat until the seat belt fits properly without a booster seat.

### ▶▶ Safety of Larger Children

## ⚠ WARNING

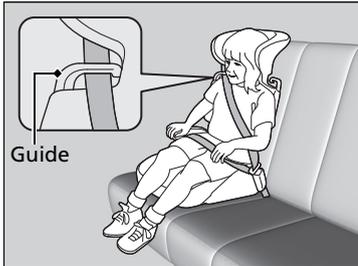
Allowing a child aged 12 or under to sit in front can result in injury or death if the passenger's front airbag inflates.

If a larger child must ride in front, move the vehicle seat as far to the rear as possible, have the child sit up properly and wear the seat belt properly, using a booster seat if needed.

## ■ Booster Seats



If a lap/shoulder seat belt cannot be used properly, position the child in a booster seat in the rear seat. For the child's safety, check that the child meets the booster seat manufacturer's recommendations.



A backrest is available for a specific booster seat. Install the backrest to the booster seat and adjust it to the vehicle seat according to the booster seat manufacturer's instructions. Make sure the seat belt is properly routed through the guide at the shoulder of the backrest and the belt does not touch and cross the child's neck.

## ▣ Booster Seats

When installing a booster seat, make sure to read the instructions that came with it, and install the seat accordingly.

There are high- and low-type booster seats. Choose a booster seat that allows the child to wear the seat belt correctly.

We recommend a booster seat with a backrest as it is easier to adjust the shoulder belt.

## ■ Protecting Larger Children - Final Checks

Your vehicle has a rear seat where children can be properly restrained. If you ever have to carry a group of children, and a child must ride in front:

- Make sure you read and fully understand the instructions and safety information in this manual.
- Move the front passenger seat as far back as possible.
- Have the child sit upright and well back in the seat.
- Check that the seat belt is properly positioned so that the child is secure in the seat.

## ■ Monitoring child passengers

We strongly recommend that you keep an eye on child passengers. Even older, more mature children sometimes need to be reminded to fasten their seat belts and sit up properly.

## Carbon Monoxide Gas

The engine exhaust from this vehicle contains carbon monoxide, a colourless, odourless, and highly toxic gas. As long as you properly maintain your vehicle, carbon monoxide gas will not get into the interior.

### ■ Have the exhaust system inspected for leaks whenever

- The exhaust system is making an unusual noise.
- The exhaust system may have been damaged.
- The vehicle is raised for an oil change.

When you operate a vehicle with the tailgate open, airflow can pull exhaust gas into the interior and create a hazardous condition. If you must drive with the tailgate open, open all the windows and set the climate control system as shown below.

1. Select the fresh air mode.
2. Select the  mode.
3. Set the fan speed to high.
4. Set the temperature control to a comfortable setting.

Adjust the climate control system in the same manner if you sit in your parked vehicle with the engine running.

### ⓘ Carbon Monoxide Gas

## WARNING

Carbon monoxide gas is toxic.

Breathing it can cause unconsciousness and even kill you.

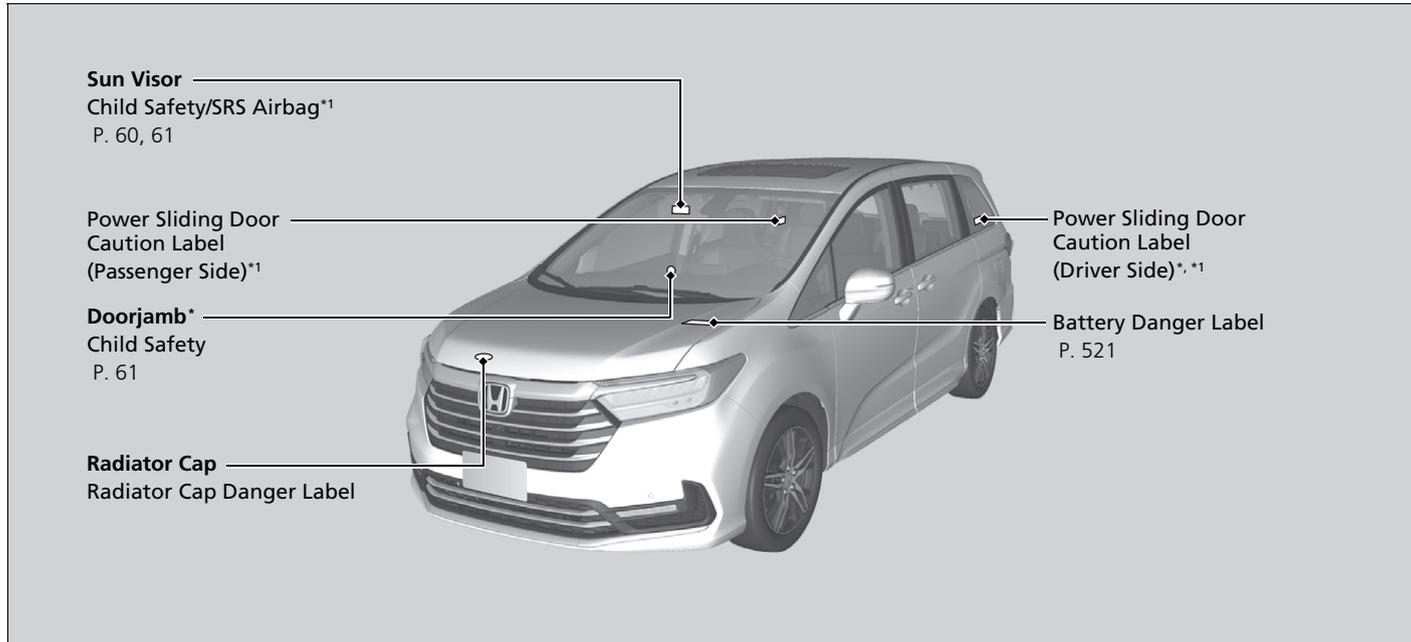
Avoid any enclosed areas or activities that expose you to carbon monoxide.

An enclosed area such as a garage can quickly fill up with carbon monoxide gas. Do not run the engine with the garage door closed. Even when the garage door is open, drive out of the garage immediately after starting the engine.

## Label Locations

These labels are in the locations shown. They warn you of potential hazards that can cause serious injury or death. Read these labels carefully.

If a label comes off or becomes hard to read, contact a dealer for a replacement.



\*1: Left-hand drive models shown. For the right-hand drive models, these labels are located at the symmetrically opposite to the left-hand drive model.

\* Not available on all models



# Instrument Panel

This chapter describes the buttons, indicators, and gauges that are used while driving.



<b>Indicators</b> .....	98
Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages.....	117
<b>Gauges and Driver Information Interface</b>	
Gauges.....	133
Driver Information Interface .....	134

 *1	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	→ P. 100		Transmission System Indicator	→ P. 101	 *1	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) OFF Indicator	→ P. 104
 *1	Brake System Indicator (Amber)	→ P. 100		Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	→ P. 102	 *1	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	→ P. 104
 *1	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	→ P. 101		Low Fuel Indicator	→ P. 102	<p><b>Oceanian models</b> Deflation Warning System Indicator</p>		
 *1	Charging System Indicator	→ P. 101	 *1	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	→ P. 103	<p><b>Taiwanese models</b>  *1 Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator → P. 107</p>		
	Shift Position Indicator	→ P. 101	 *1	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	→ P. 103	<p><b>Middle Eastern models</b> Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator</p>		
	M (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/Shift Indicator	→ P. 101	 *1	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	→ P. 104	 *1	Speed Alarm Indicator*	→ P. 110

\*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the engine has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.

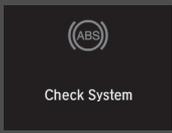
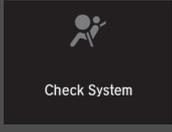
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators → P. 108		ECON Mode Indicator → P. 110		Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Amber)* → P. 113
	High Beam Indicator → P. 108		CRUISE MAIN Indicator* → P. 110		Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) with Low Speed Follow Indicator (Green)* → P. 114
	Lights On Indicator → P. 108		CRUISE CONTROL Indicator* → P. 110		Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)* → P. 114
	Front Fog Light Indicator → P. 108		*1 Blind spot information System Indicator* → P. 105		Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Green)* → P. 114
	Rear Fog Light Indicator* → P. 108		*1 Road Departure Mitigation Indicator* → P. 112		Immobilizer System Indicator → P. 109
	System Message Indicator → P. 109		*1 Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator* → P. 115		Security System Alarm Indicator → P. 109
					Auto Idle Stop System Indicator (Amber)* → P. 111
					*1 Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green)* → P. 111

\*1: When you set the power mode to ON, these indicators come on to indicate that system checks are being performed. They go off a few seconds later or after the engine has started. If an indicator does not come on or turn off, there may be a malfunction in the corresponding system. To resolve the issue, follow the instructions in the owner's manual.

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
 (Red)	Parking Brake and Brake System Indicator (Red)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when the parking brake is applied, and goes off when it is released.</li> <li>• Comes on when the brake fluid level is low.</li> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the brake system.</li> <li>• The beeper sounds and the indicator comes on if you drive with the parking brake not fully released.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Make sure the parking brake is released. Check the brake fluid level.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>What to do when the indicator comes on while driving</b> P. 555</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Comes on along with the ABS indicator</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On</b> P. 555</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<div style="background-color: #333; color: white; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">               Release Parking Brake           </div> <div style="background-color: #333; color: white; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">               Brake Fluid Low           </div> <div style="background-color: #333; color: white; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">               Check System           </div>
 (Amber)	Brake System Indicator (Amber)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with a system related to braking other than the conventional brake system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>• With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability.</li> </ul>	<div style="background-color: #333; color: white; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">               Check System           </div> <div style="background-color: #333; color: white; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">               Check System           </div>

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Malfunction Indicator Lamp	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the emissions control systems.</li> <li>Blinks when a misfire in the engine's cylinders is detected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks</b> P. 554</li> </ul>	 Check System
	Charging System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the battery is not charging.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Stop in a safe place and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.</li> <li>➤ <b>If the Charging System Indicator Comes On</b> P. 554</li> </ul>	 Check System
	Shift Position Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Indicates the current shift position.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Shifting</b> P. 365</li> </ul>	—
	M (7-speed manual shift mode) Indicator/Shift Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the 7-speed manual shift mode is applied.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>7-Speed Manual Shift Mode</b> P. 367</li> </ul>	—
	Transmission System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks if the transmission system has a problem.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks while driving</b> - Avoid sudden starts and acceleration and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.</li> </ul>	 Check System

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Seat Belt Reminder Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks and the beeper sounds for a few seconds if you are not wearing a seat belt when you set the power mode to ON, then the indicator comes on.</li> <li>If the front passenger is not wearing a seat belt, the indicator comes on a few seconds later.</li> <li>Blinks while driving if you and/or the front passenger has not fastened a seat belt. The beeper sounds and the indicator blinks at regular intervals.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The beeper stops and the indicator goes off when you and the front passenger fasten their seat belts.</li> <li><b>Stays on after you and/or the front passenger has fastened the seat belt(s)</b> - A detection error may have occurred in the sensor. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Seat Belt Reminder</b> P. 40</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	 <p>Fasten Seat Belt</p>  <p>Fasten Passenger's Seat Belt</p>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the fuel reserve is running low (approximately 8.2 Litre left).</li> <li>Blinks if there is a problem with the fuel gauge.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on</b> - Refuel your vehicle as soon as possible.</li> <li><b>Blinks</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	 <p>Fuel Low</p>  <p>Check Fuel Gauge System</p>

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the ABS.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. With this indicator on, your vehicle still has normal braking ability but no anti-lock function.                      ❏ <b>Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)</b> P. 438</li> </ul>	
	Supplemental Restraint System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if a problem with any of the following is detected:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- Supplemental restraint system</li> <li>- Side airbag system</li> <li>- Side curtain airbag system</li> <li>- Seat belt tensioner</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks when VSA is active.</li> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the VSA system, brake assist system, hill start assist system.</li> </ul>	<p>—</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  <b>➤ Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System</b>                      P. 379</li> </ul>	<p>—</p> <div style="background-color: #333; color: white; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">               Check System         </div> <div style="background-color: #333; color: white; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">               Check System         </div>
	Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) <b>OFF</b> Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you partially disable VSA.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>VSA On and Off</b> P. 380</p>	<div style="background-color: #333; color: white; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">               Vehicle Stability Assist              OFF         </div>
	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the EPS System.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.  <b>➤ If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On</b> P. 555</li> </ul>	<div style="background-color: #333; color: white; padding: 5px; text-align: center;">               Check System         </div>

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Blind spot information System Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Stays on while the blind spot information system is turned off.</li> </ul>	 <b>Blind spot information System</b> * P. 381	 <p>Blind Spot Information OFF</p>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when mud, snow, or ice accumulates in the vicinity of sensor.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Remove the obstacle in the vicinity of sensor.</li> </ul>	 <p>Blind Spot Information Not Available</p>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	 <p>Check System</p>

\* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	<p>Oceanian models</p> <p>Deflation Warning System Indicator</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on if the tyre pressure of any of the tyres becomes low.</li> <li>• Comes on when a compact spare tyre is temporarily installed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on or blinks while driving</b> - Stop in a safe place, check which tyre's pressure is low, and find the cause.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▣ <b>If the Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks</b> P. 556</li> </ul> </li> <li>• <b>Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures</b> - The system needs to be initialised.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▣ <b>Deflation Warning System</b> P. 384</li> </ul> </li> <li>• If the vehicle is fitted with a compact spare tyre, get your regular tyre repaired or replaced and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can.</li> </ul>	 <p>Check Tyre Pressure</p>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the deflation warning system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Blinks and remains on</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	 <p>Check System</p>	

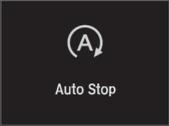
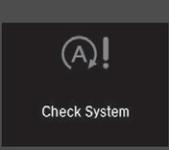
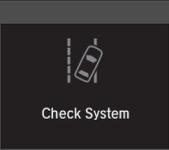
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	<p>Taiwanese models</p> <p>Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• May come on briefly if the power mode is set to ON and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, to indicate the initialisation process is not yet complete.</li> <li>• Comes on and stays on when:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- One or more tyres' pressures are determined to be significantly low.</li> <li>- The system has not been initialised.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Comes on while driving</b> - Stop in a safe place, check tyre pressures, and inflate the tyre(s) if necessary.</li> <li>• <b>Stays on after the tyres are inflated to the recommended pressures</b> - The system needs to be initialised.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)</b> P. 390</li> <li>➤ <b>Deflation Warning System</b> P. 387</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	 <p>Check Tyre Pressure</p>
	<p>Middle Eastern models</p> <p>Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System Indicator</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blinks for about one minute, and then stays on if there is a problem with the TPMS<sup>*1</sup>/deflation warning system<sup>*2</sup>, or when a compact spare tyre is temporarily installed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Blinks and remains on</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If the vehicle is fitted with a compact spare tyre, get your regular tyre repaired or replaced, and put back on your vehicle as soon as you can.</li> </ul>	 <p>Check System</p>

\*1: Taiwanese models  
 \*2: Middle Eastern models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Turn Signal and Hazard Warning Indicators	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks when you operate the turn signal lever.</li> <li>Blink along with all turn signals when you press the hazard warning button.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Does not blink or blinks rapidly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	—
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blink along with all turn signals when you depress the brake pedal while the high speed driving.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Emergency Stop Signal</b> P. 440</li> </ul>	
	High Beam Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the high beam headlights are on.</li> </ul>	—	—
	Lights On Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the position, tail, and other external lights are on.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Light Switches</b> P. 193</li> </ul>	—
	Front Fog Light Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the front fog lights are on.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Front and Rear Fog Lights</b> * P. 196</li> </ul>	—
	Rear Fog Light Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the rear fog light is on.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Front and Rear Fog Lights</b> * P. 196</li> </ul>	—

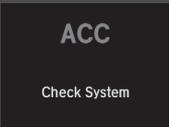
Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Immobilizer System Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks if the immobilizer system cannot recognise the key information.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks</b> - You cannot start the engine. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, then select the ON mode again.</li> <li><b>Repeatedly blinks</b> - The system may be malfunctioning. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> <li>Do not attempt to alter this system or add other devices to it. Electrical problems can occur.</li> </ul>	—
	Security System Alarm Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks when the security system alarm has been set.</li> </ul>	<p>📄 <b>Security System Alarm</b> P. 182</p>	—
	System Message Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on along with a beep when a problem is detected. A system message on the driver information interface appears at the same time.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>While the indicator is on, press the  (home) button to see the message again.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>📄 <b>Accessing contents in the main display</b> P. 134</li> </ul> </li> <li>Refer to the Indicators information in this chapter when a system message appears on the driver information interface. Take the appropriate action for the message.</li> <li>The driver information interface does not return to the normal screen unless the warning is cancelled, or the left selector wheel is pressed.</li> </ul>	—

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Speed Alarm Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks when your vehicle speed exceeds 120 km/h. A reminder tone sounds.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>This indicator keeps blinking while your vehicle speed is faster than 120 km/h.</li> </ul>	—
	ECON Mode Indicator	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the ECON mode is on.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>ECON Mode</b> P. 369</li> </ul>	
	<b>CRUISE MAIN</b> Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>CRUISE</b> button.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Cruise Control*</b> P. 376</li> </ul>	—
	<b>CRUISE CONTROL</b> Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if you have set a speed for cruise control.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Cruise Control*</b> P. 376</li> </ul>	—

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Auto Idle Stop Indicator (Green)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when Auto Idle Stop is in operation. The engine automatically shuts off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Auto Idle Stop*</b> P. 370</li> </ul>	
	Auto Idle Stop System Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the Auto Idle Stop system has been turned off by the Auto Idle Stop <b>OFF</b> button.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li> <b>Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF</b> P. 371</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Blinks if there is a problem with the Auto Idle Stop system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Blinks</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the road departure mitigation system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	

\* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Road Departure Mitigation Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the road departure mitigation system shuts itself off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down.                      ➤ <b>Front Sensor Camera</b> P. 433</li> </ul>	 <p>Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High</p>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator and message come back on after you cleaned the area around the camera.                      ➤ <b>Front Sensor Camera</b> P. 433</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth.</li> </ul>	 <p>Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windscreen</p>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The area around the radar sensor is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth. Indicator may take some time to go off after the radar sensor is cleaned.</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you clean the sensor cover.                      ➤ <b>Radar Sensor</b> P. 435</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The area around the radar sensor is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth. Indicator may take some time to go off after the radar sensor is cleaned.</li> </ul>	 <p>Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Radar Obstructed</p>

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with ACC.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Comes on while driving</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if anything covers the radar sensor cover and prevents the sensor from detecting a vehicle in front.</li> <li>May come on when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.)</li> <li>ACC has been automatically cancelled.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When the radar sensor gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and then clean the sensor using a soft cloth. Indicator may take some time to go off after the radar sensor is cleaned.</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not disappear, even after you clean the sensor cover.</li> </ul> <p> <b>Radar Sensor</b> P. 435</p>	

\* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
ACC	Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) Indicator (Green)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>MAIN</b> button.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</b> P. 407</li> </ul>	—
LKAS	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Amber)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on if there is a problem with the LKAS.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>	
LKAS	Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) Indicator (Green)*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when you press the <b>MAIN</b> button.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)</b> P. 420</li> </ul>	—

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Comes on when you deactivate the CMBS. A driver information interface message appears for five seconds.</li> <li>• Comes on if there is a problem with the CMBS.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Stays on constantly without the CMBS OFF</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▣ <b>Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)</b> P. 396</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	

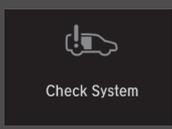
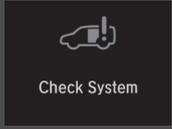
\* Not available on all models

Indicator	Name	On/Blinking	Explanation	Message
	Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) Indicator*	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Comes on when the CMBS shuts itself off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The area around the radar sensor is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place and wipe the debris off with a soft cloth. Indicator may take some time to go off after the radar sensor is cleaned.</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you have cleaned the sensor cover.   <b>Radar Sensor</b> P. 435</li> </ul>	 <p>Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Radar Obstructed</p>
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The temperature inside the camera is too high. Use the climate control system to cool down the camera. The system activates when the temperature inside the camera cools down.   <b>Front Sensor Camera</b> P. 433</li> </ul>	 <p>Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High</p>	
		<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Stays on</b> - The area around the camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. Stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.   <b>Front Sensor Camera</b> P. 433</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the indicator does not go off even after you have cleaned the camera.</li> </ul>	 <p>Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windscreen</p>	

## Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages

The following messages appear only on the driver information interface. Press the  (home) button, select **Warnings**, then press the left selector wheel to see the message again with the system message indicator on.

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>STOP Critical System Failure Detected. Stop Driving When Safe</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the vehicle is no longer able to run due to a malfunction.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Immediately stop in a safe place.</li> </ul>
 <p>Apply Parking Brake To Keep Vehicle Stationary</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when there is a risk that the vehicle will move unexpectedly after you have stopped due to a malfunction with the vehicle.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>While the vehicle is stopped, apply the parking brake.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Parking Brake</b> P. 436</li> </ul> </li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
 <p>Models with power tailgate</p> <p>Check System</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when there is a problem with the power tailgate system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Manually open or close the power tailgate.</li> <li>Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>Door And Tailgate Open</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears if any door or the tailgate is not completely closed.</li> <li>• Appears if any door or the tailgate is opened while driving. The beeper sounds.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Disappears when all doors and the tailgate are closed.</li> </ul>
 <p>Check System</p>  <p>Check System</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears if there is a problem with the power sliding door system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Turn off the main switch and manually operate the power sliding doors.</li> <li>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Opening/Closing the Power Sliding Door(s)*</b> P. 173</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
 <p>Check Rear Seats</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF, if the rear doors were opened shortly before or after the vehicle was powered on.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Check the rear seat for passengers or items before exiting the vehicle.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Rear Seat Reminder</b> P. 223</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>Oil Pressure Low</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the engine oil pressure is low.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Appears while driving</b> - Immediately stop in a safe place.                      ◻ <b>If the Low Oil Pressure Warning Appears</b> P. 553</li> </ul>
 <p>Outside Temperature Low</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears once if the outside temperature is below 3°C while the power mode is in ON.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• There is a possibility that the road surface is icy and slippery.</li> </ul>
 <p>Check Charging System</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when there is a problem with the sensor on the battery.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>

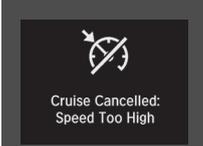
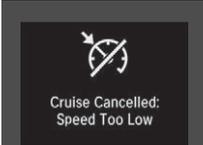
Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the engine coolant temperature gets abnormally high.</li> </ul>	<p>► <b>Overheating</b> P. 551</p>
 <p>To Start Engine: Brake + Push</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears after you set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON.</li> </ul>	<p>► <b>Starting the Engine</b> P. 361</p>
 <p>To Unlock Wheel: Push + Turn</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the steering wheel is locked.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move the steering wheel left and right while pressing the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button.</li> </ul>

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>Accessory Mode</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.</li> </ul>	—
 <p>To Turn Vehicle OFF: Push Twice</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears after the driver's door is opened when the power mode is in ACCESSORY.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Change the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>ENGINE START/STOP Button</b> P. 189</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
 <p>Keyless Remote Not Detected</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when you close the door with the power mode in ON without the keyless remote inside the vehicle.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Disappears when you bring the keyless remote back inside the vehicle and close the door.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Keyless Remote Reminder</b> P. 191</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
 <p>Change Keyless Remote Battery</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the keyless remote battery becomes weak.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>▶ <b>Replacing the Button Battery</b> P. 522</li> </ul>

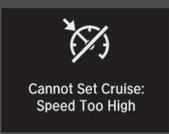
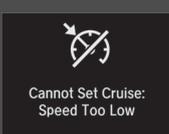
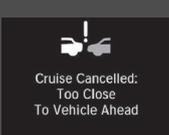
Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if the keyless remote's battery is too weak to start the engine or the key is not within operating range to start the engine. The beeper sounds six times.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Bring the back of the keyless remote into contact with the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak</b> P. 546</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
 <p>Check System</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the starter system has a problem.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>As a temporary measure, press and hold the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button for up to 15 seconds while pressing the brake pedal, manually start the engine. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
 <p>Check System</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears as soon as a problem is detected in the keyless access system or keyless starting system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Appears constantly</b> - Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
 <p>HOLD OFF Pressing Button Again Twice Or Holding Will Cause Ignition OFF &amp; Power Loss</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if you press the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button while the vehicle is moving.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Emergency Engine Stop</b> P. 547</li> </ul>

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>Shift To Park</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if you press the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button to turn the engine off without the shift lever in <b>P</b>.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Move the shift lever to <b>P</b>, then press the <b>ENGINE START/STOP</b> button twice.</li> </ul>
 <p>Check System</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if there is a problem with the automatic lighting control system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Appears while driving</b> - Manually turn the lights on, and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
 <p>Check Headlights</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if there is a problem with the headlights.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li><b>Appears while driving</b> - The headlights may not be on. When conditions allow you to drive safely, have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.</li> </ul>
 <p>Check System</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if there is a problem with the parking sensor system.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check if the area around the sensor(s) is covered with mud, ice, snow, etc. If the indicator(s) stays on even after you clean the area, have the system checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>

Models with ACC

Message	Condition	Explanation
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when ACC has been automatically cancelled.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You can resume the set speed after the condition that caused ACC to cancel improves. Press the <b>RES/+</b> button.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</b> P. 407</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Flashes when the system senses a likely collision with a vehicle in front of you. The beeper sounds.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</b> P. 407</li> <li>► <b>Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)</b> P. 396</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
 <p>Cruise Cancelled: Speed Too High</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when ACC is cancelled due to excessive high vehicle speed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reduce the speed, then reset ACC.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</b> P. 407</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
 <p>Cruise Cancelled: Speed Too Low</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when ACC is cancelled due to excessive low vehicle speed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Raise the speed, then reset ACC.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</b> P. 407</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Models with ACC

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>Cannot Set Cruise: Speed Too High</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the speed of the vehicle is too high for you to set ACC.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Reduce the speed, then set ACC. ➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</b> P. 407</li> </ul>
 <p>Cannot Set Cruise: Speed Too Low</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the speed of the vehicle is too low for you to set ACC.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Raise the speed, then set ACC. ➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</b> P. 407</li> </ul>
 <p>Cruise Cancelled: Too Close To Vehicle Ahead</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too close while ACC is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC has been automatically cancelled. ➤ <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</b> P. 407</li> </ul>

Models with ACC

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>Cannot Set Cruise: Too Close To Vehicle Ahead</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when pressing the <b>SET/-</b> button while the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too close.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC cannot be set.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</b> P. 407</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
 <p>Cannot Set Cruise: Shift To Drive</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when pressing the <b>SET/-</b> button while the shift lever is in any position other than <b>D</b> or <b>S</b>.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC cannot be set.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</b> P. 407</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
 <p>Cannot Set Cruise: Brake Pedal Is Applied</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears when pressing the <b>SET/-</b> button while the vehicle is moving and the brake pedal is depressed.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC cannot be set.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</b> P. 407</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
 <p>Cruise Cancelled: Loss Of Traction</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Appears if the VSA or traction control function operates while ACC is in operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>ACC has been automatically cancelled.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)</b> P. 407</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Models with ACC

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Radar Obstructed</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears if anything covers the radar sensor cover and prevents the sensor from detecting a vehicle in front.</li> <li>• May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When the radar sensor gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe off dirt using a soft cloth. The message may take some time to go off.</li> <li>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you clean the sensor cover.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Radar Sensor</b> P. 435</li> <li>➤ <b>Honda Sensing*</b> P. 393</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
 <p>Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears if the temperature inside the front sensor camera is too high and some driver assist systems cannot be activated.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Use the climate control system to cool down the camera.</li> <li>• <b>Disappears</b> - The camera has been cooled down and the systems are activated normally.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Front Sensor Camera</b> P. 433</li> <li>➤ <b>Honda Sensing*</b> P. 393</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
 <p>Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windscreen</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears if the area around the front sensor camera is blocked by dirt, mud, etc. and be prevented from detecting a vehicle in front.</li> <li>• May appear when driving in bad weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.).</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When the front window gets dirty, stop your vehicle in a safe place, and wipe it off with a soft cloth.</li> <li>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if the message does not disappear even after you cleaned the area around the camera.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Front Sensor Camera</b> P. 433</li> <li>➤ <b>Honda Sensing*</b> P. 393</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

\* Not available on all models

Models with ACC

Message	Condition	Explanation
 (Amber)	<p><b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected lane. The steering wheel vibrates rapidly.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)</b> P. 420</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<p><b>Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Blinks when you fail to steer the vehicle. The beeper sounds simultaneously.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Operate the steering wheel to resume the LKAS.</li> </ul>
 (Amber)	<p><b>Road Departure Mitigation System</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the vehicle is driving out of a detected lane.</li> </ul> <p><b>When you selected Warning Only</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.</li> </ul> <p><b>When you selected Early, Normal or Delayed</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The steering wheel vibrates rapidly when the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane. The system also steers the vehicle to help you remain within your driving lane.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Keep the vehicle within the lane you are driving.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Road Departure Mitigation System</b> P. 428</li> </ul> </li> <li>• You can change the setting for the Road Departure Mitigation system. <b>Early, Normal, Delayed,</b> and <b>Warning Only</b> can be selected.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Customized Features</b> P. 315</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	 (White)	<p><b>Road Departure Mitigation System</b></p> <p><b>When you selected Early</b></p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the vehicle is likely to drive out of a detected lane. The Road Departure Mitigation system also steers the vehicle to help you remain within your driving lane.</li> </ul>

Models with ACC

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>LKAS OFF Lane Keeping Assist Cannot Operate</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the LKAS is in operation, or the LKAS button is pressed, but there is a problem with a system related to the LKAS. The LKAS cancels automatically. The beeper sounds simultaneously.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If any other system indicators come on, such as the VSA, ABS and brake system, take appropriate action.   <b>Indicators</b> P. 98</li> </ul>

**Models with Auto Idle Stop**

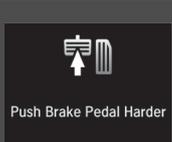
Message	Condition	Explanation
 Auto Stop Not Available	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate for some reason.</li> <li>• Appears when the engine restarts automatically.</li> <li>• Appears when the battery temperature is around 5°C or lower.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Auto Idle Stop Activates When:</b> P. 372</p>
 Auto Stop Not Available	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate because the engine coolant temperature is too low or high.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Auto Idle Stop does not activate when:</b> P. 372</p>
 Auto Stop Not Available	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate because the climate control system is in use, and the difference between the set temperature and actual interior temperature becomes significant.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Auto Idle Stop Activates When:</b> P. 372</p>
 Auto Stop Not Available	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate because the battery charge level is low.</li> <li>• Appears when the battery is low performance.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Auto Idle Stop*</b> P. 370</p>

Models with Auto Idle Stop

Message	Condition	Explanation
 Auto Idle Stop ON	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when you turn the Auto Idle Stop system on.</li> </ul>	<p>➤ <b>Auto Idle Stop*</b> P. 370</p>
 Bonnet Open	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the bonnet is opened.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Close the bonnet.</li> </ul>
 Auto Stop: Engine Will Restart Soon	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the system is under the following conditions while Auto Idle Stop activates:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The climate control system is in use, and the difference between the set temperature and actual interior temperature becomes significant.</li> <li>- The humidity in the interior is high.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The engine restarts automatically in a few seconds.</li> </ul>
 Auto Stop: Engine Will Restart Soon	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the system is under the following conditions while Auto Idle Stop activates:                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>- The battery charge level is low.</li> </ul> </li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The engine restarts automatically in a few seconds.</li> </ul>

\* Not available on all models

Models with Auto Idle Stop

Message	Condition	Explanation
 <p>System Problem. Shift To Park.</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when the engine stops without the shift lever in <b>P</b>, and does not restart automatically.</li> <li>• Appears if you open the bonnet with Auto Idle Stop activated.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• If you want to set the power mode to ON, move the shift lever to <b>P</b>.</li> <li>• If you want to start the engine, follow the normal procedure.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Starting the Engine</b> P. 361</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
 <p>Push Brake Pedal Harder</p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Appears when Auto Idle Stop does not activate because the pressure to the brake pedal is not enough.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Depress the brake pedal firmly.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>► <b>Auto Idle Stop*</b> P. 370</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

## Gauges

Gauges include the speedometer, fuel gauge, and other related indicators. They are displayed when the power mode is in ON.

### ■ Speedometer

Displays your driving speed in km/h.

### ■ Fuel Gauge

Displays the amount of fuel left in the fuel tank.

### ■ Temperature Gauge

Displays the temperature of the engine coolant.

### ■ Current Mode for ACC and the LKAS \*

Shows the current mode for ACC and LKAS.

➤ **Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)** P. 407

➤ **Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)** P. 420

### ⌘ Fuel Gauge

#### NOTICE

You should refuel when the reading approaches **E**. Running out of fuel can cause the engine to misfire, damaging the catalytic converter.

The actual amount of remaining fuel may differ from the fuel gauge reading.

### ⌘ Temperature Gauge

#### NOTICE

Driving with the temperature gauge pointer in the upper zone can cause serious engine damage. Pull safely to the side of the road and allow engine temperature to return to normal.

➤ **Overheating** P. 551

\* Not available on all models

## Driver Information Interface

The driver information interface shows information such as the estimated travelable distance and fuel economy of the vehicle. It also displays messages such as warnings and other helpful information.

### ■ Switching the Display

#### ■ Accessing contents in the main display

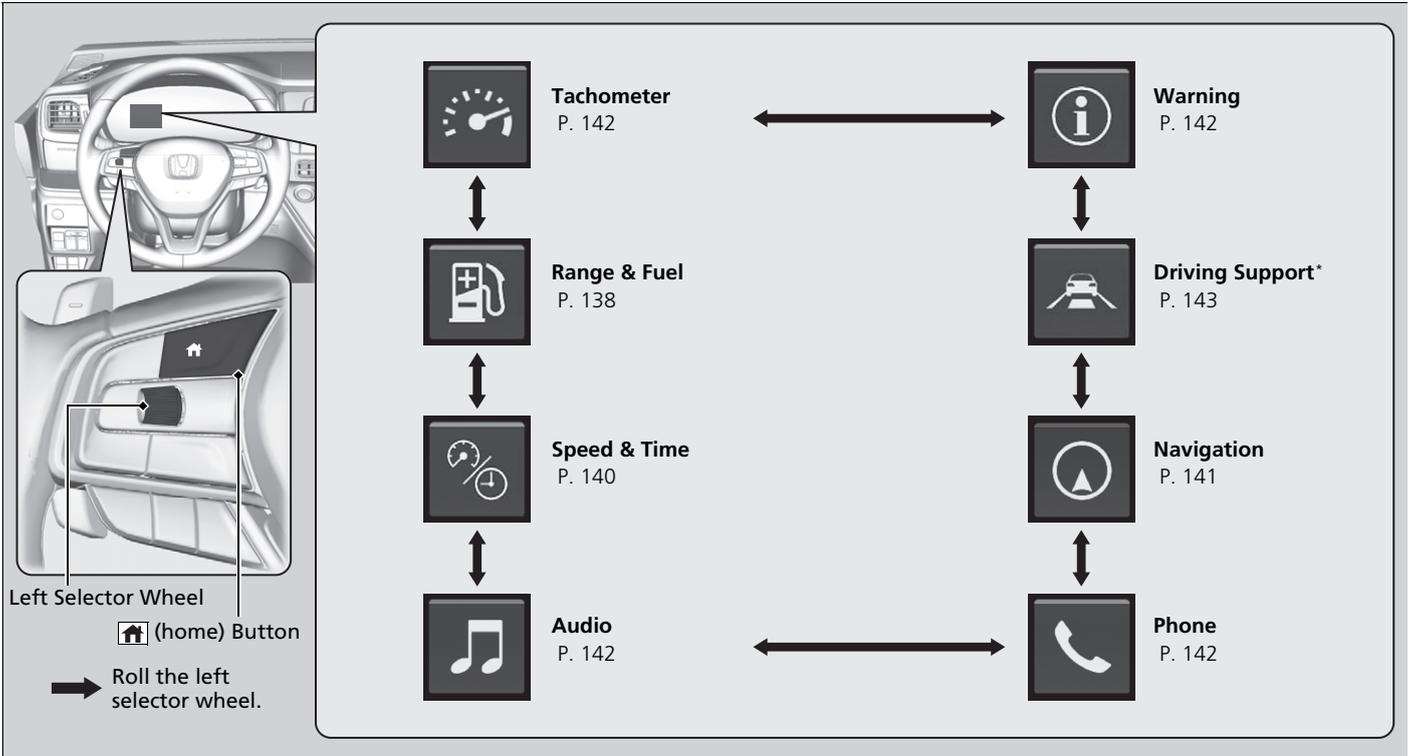
Press the  (home) button, then roll the left selector wheel to scroll to the content you want to see. Press the left selector wheel to see detailed information.

#### ▣ Switching the Display

To go back to the previous screen, press the  (back) button.

You can edit, add, or delete the meter contents using the audio/information screen.

▣ **Customizing the Meter** P. 279

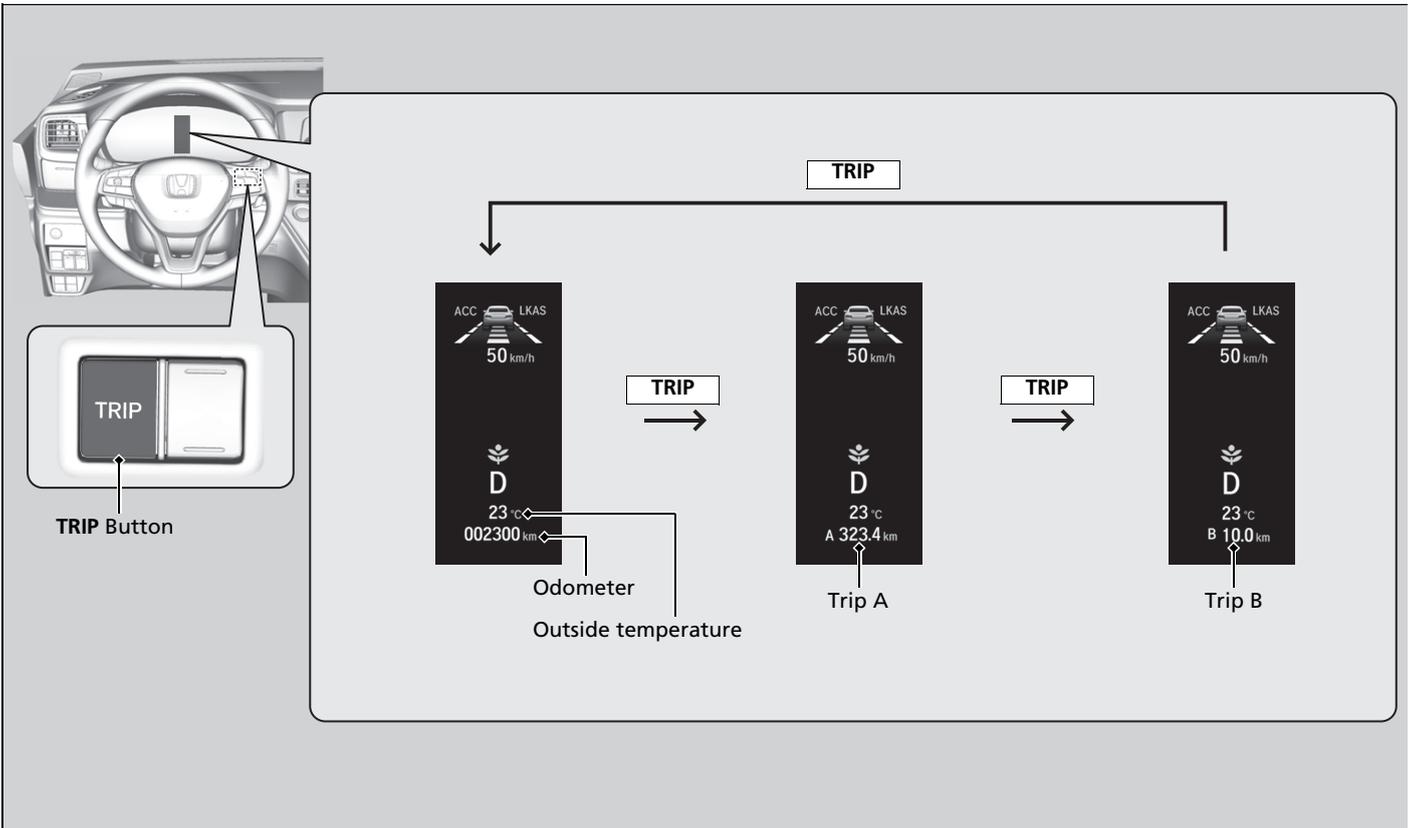


Instrument Panel

\* Not available on all models

### ■ Sub display

Press the **TRIP** button to change the display.



## ■ Odometer

Shows the total number of kilometres that your vehicle has accumulated.

## ■ Trip Meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

### ■ Resetting a trip meter

To reset a trip meter, display it, then press and hold the **TRIP** Button. The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

## ■ Outside Temperature

Shows the outside temperature in Celsius.

If the outside temperature has been below 3°C at the time you set the power mode to ON, the **Outside Temperature Low** message appears on the driver information interface.

### ■ Adjusting the outside temperature display

Adjust the temperature reading up to  $\pm 3^{\circ}\text{C}$  if the temperature reading seems incorrect.

### ☒ Trip Meter

Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by pressing the **TRIP** Button.

### ☒ Outside Temperature

The temperature sensor is in the front bumper. Road heat and exhaust from another vehicle can affect the temperature reading when your vehicle speed is less than 30 km/h.

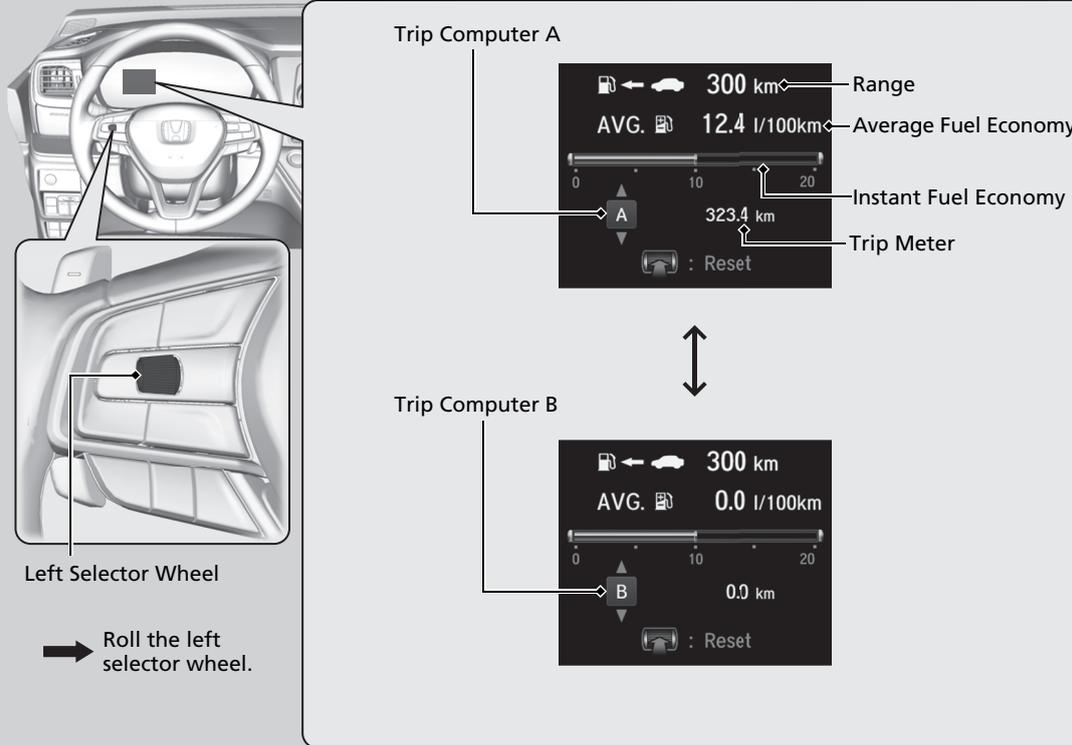
It may take several minutes for the display to be updated after the temperature reading has stabilized.

You can adjust the temperature reading.

☒ **Customized Features** P. 315

## ■ Range & Fuel

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip computer A and trip computer B.



### ■ Trip meter

Shows the total number of kilometres driven since the last reset. Meters A and B can be used to measure two separate trips.

### Resetting a trip meter

To reset the trip meter, display it, press the left selector wheel and then select **Reset**.

- ▶ The trip meter is reset to **0.0**.

### ■ Average fuel economy

Shows the estimated average fuel economy of each trip meter in km/l\* or l/100 km\*. The display is updated at set intervals. When a trip meter is reset, the average fuel economy is also reset.

### ■ Instant fuel economy

Shows the instant fuel economy as a bar graph in km/l\* or l/100 km\*.

### ■ Range

Shows the estimated distance you can travel on the remaining fuel. This estimated distance is based on the vehicle's current fuel economy.

#### ☒ Trip meter

Switch between trip meter A and trip meter B by rolling the left selector wheel.

Resetting the trip meter in the **Range & Fuel**, the trip meter in the sub display resets at the same time.

#### ☒ Average fuel economy

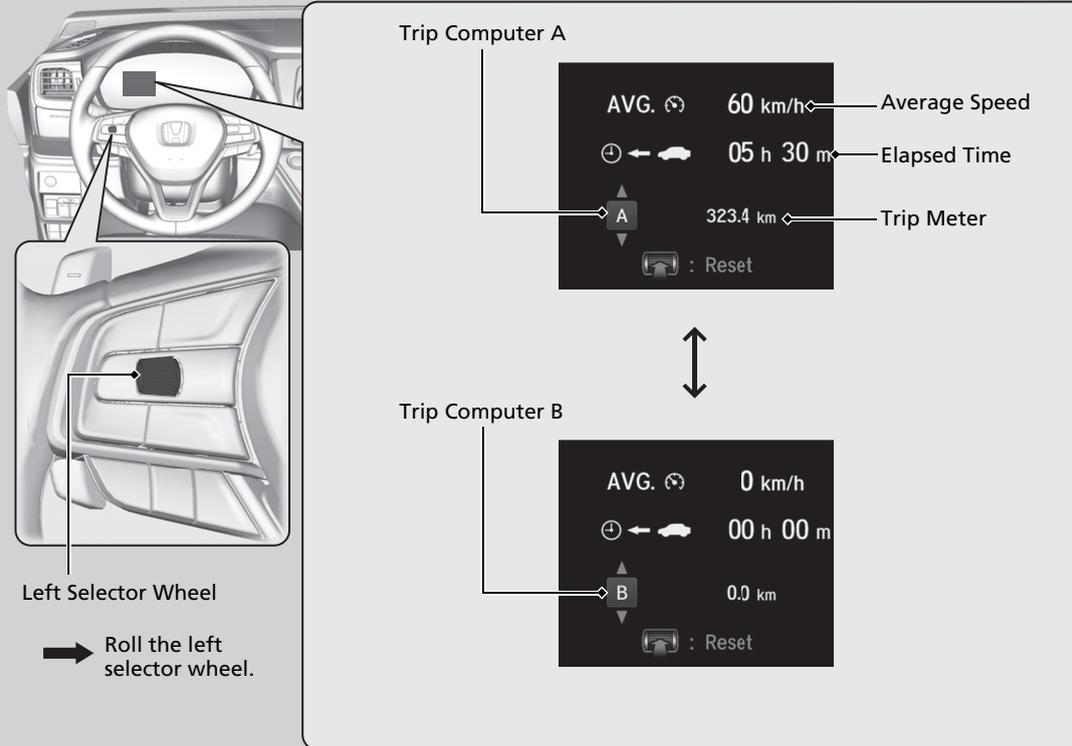
You can change when the average fuel economy is reset.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 315

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Speed & Time

Roll the left selector wheel to switch between trip computer A and trip computer B.



## ■ Trip meter

➤ Trip meter P. 139

## ■ Elapsed Time

Shows the time elapsed since the last time Trip A or Trip B was reset.

## ■ Average Speed

Shows the average speed in km/h since the last time Trip A or Trip B was reset.

## ■ Navigation

### ■ Compass

Shows the compass screen.

### ■ Turn-by-Turn Directions

When driving guidance is provided by the navigation system\*, Android Auto or Apple CarPlay, turn-by-turn directions to your destination appear.

➤ Refer to the **Navigation System Manual**

➤ **Android Auto** P. 305

➤ **Apple CarPlay** P. 300

### ⌘ Elapsed Time

You can change when to reset the elapsed time.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 315

### ⌘ Average Speed

You can change when to reset the average speed.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 315

### ⌘ Navigation

You can select whether to have the turn-by-turn display come on or not during route guidance.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 315

### Models with navigation system

When the compass or turn-by-turn directions are displayed, you can control some navigation system functions on the driver information interface by scrolling the left selector wheel.

➤ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Warnings

➤ **Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages** P. 117

## ■ Phone

Shows the current phone information.

➤ **Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System** P. 335

## ■ Tachometer

Shows the number of engine revolutions per minute.

## ■ Audio

Shows the current audio information.

➤ **Audio System Basic Operation** P. 266

## ⌘ Warnings

If there are multiple warnings, you can roll the left selector wheel to the up or down to see other warnings.

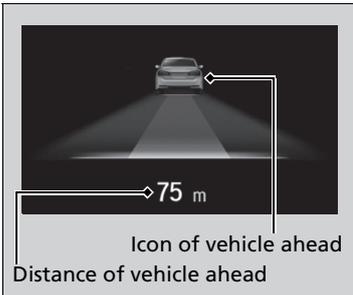
## ⌘ Tachometer

The tachometer can be turned on and off using audio/information screen.

➤ **Customizing the Meter** P. 279

Even if you have turned off the tachometer using audio/information screen, if **Tachometer** is selected on the driver information interface, it will change to a tachometer only display.

## Driving Support Information \*



Shows the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead.

Informs you whether ACC and/or LKAS is activated or not. If ACC is activated, the set following interval is displayed. If LKAS is activated, the displayed lane marks change to indicate that LKAS is activated.

- ▶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) P. 407
- ▶ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) P. 420

### When ACC and LKAS is in On

#### Set Vehicle Interval



ACC on: The section behind the vehicle icon turns green.

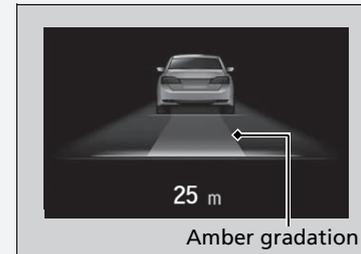
LKAS on: The lane outlines appear on the display.

LKAS starts: The lane lines change to solid ones.

LKAS suspend: The lane lines change to dotted ones.

## Driving Support Information \*

In case ACC is not activated, when the distance between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead becomes too small, the section behind the vehicle icon turns amber and alerts you.



\* Not available on all models



# Controls

This chapter explains how to operate the various controls necessary for driving.

<b>Clock</b> .....	146	<b>Security System</b>		Daytime Running Lights* .....	200
<b>Locking and Unlocking the Doors</b>		Immobilizer System .....	182	Wipers and Washers .....	201
Key .....	147	Security System Alarm.....	182	Brightness Control .....	203
Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength ...	149	<b>Windows</b> .....	184	Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror* Icon ..	204
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the		<b>Sunroof*</b> .....	187	Driving Position Memory System* ....	205
Outside .....	150	<b>Operating the Switches Around the</b>		Adjusting the Steering Wheel .....	207
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the		<b>Steering Wheel</b>		<b>Mirrors</b> .....	208
Inside .....	158	ENGINE START/STOP Button.....	189	<b>Seats</b> .....	211
Childproof Door Locks .....	159	Turn Signals .....	192	<b>Interior Convenience Items</b> .....	231
Auto Door Locking/Unlocking* .....	160	Light Switches.....	193	<b>Climate Control System</b> .....	245
<b>Sliding Doors</b> .....	171	Front and Rear* Fog Lights .....	196		
		Active Cornering Lights* .....	198		

\* Not available on all models

## Adjusting the Clock

You can adjust the time manually in the audio/information screen with the power mode in ON.

### Adjusting the Time



1. Press the , then select **Settings**.
2. Select **System**.
3. Select **Day & Time**.
4. Select **Set Date & Time**.
5. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.

#### To adjust time:

6. Select **Set Time**.
7. Selecting /.
8. Select **Save** to set the time.

#### To adjust date:

6. Select **Set Date**.
7. Selecting /.
8. Select **Save** to set the date.



### Adjusting the Clock

The clock is automatically updated through the audio system.

### Clock

You can also adjust the clock by touching the clock displayed on the upper right corner of the display or the **Clock** icon on the home screen.

1. Touch the clock on the display.  
The clock screen of the select face-type appears.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Day & Time**.
4. Select **Set Date & Time**.
5. Select **Automatic Date & Time**, then select **OFF**.
6. Select **Set Date** or **Set Time**.
7. Adjusting the dates, hours and minutes by selecting /.
8. Select **Save** to set the time.

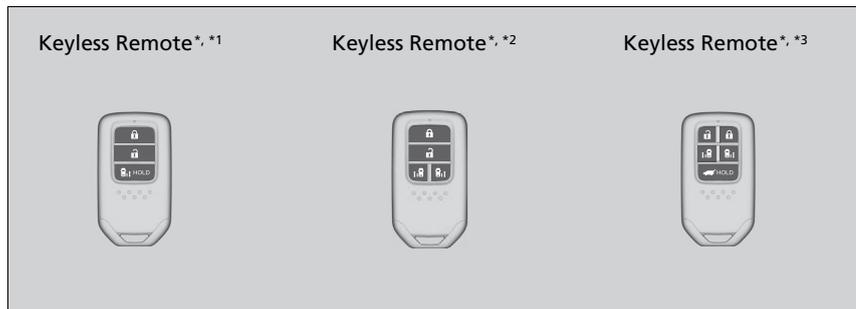
You can customize the clock display to show the 12 hour clock or 24 hour clock.

 **Customized Features** P. 315

# Locking and Unlocking the Doors

## Key

This vehicle comes with the following keys:



Use the keys to start and stop the engine, and to lock and unlock all the doors and tailgate.

\*1: Models with passenger side power sliding door

\*2: Models with driver and passenger side power sliding doors

\*3: Models with power sliding doors (driver and passenger side) and power tailgate

\* Not available on all models

### Key

All the keys have an immobilizer system. The immobilizer system helps to protect against vehicle theft.

**Immobilizer System** P. 182

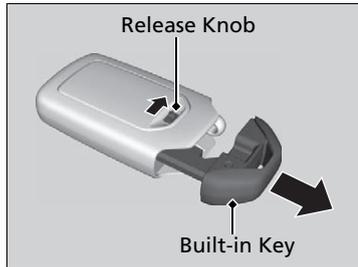
Follow the advice below to prevent damage to the keys:

- Do not leave the keys in direct sunlight, or in locations with high temperature or high humidity.
- Do not drop the keys or set heavy objects on them.
- Keep the keys away from liquids, dust and sand.
- Do not take the keys apart except for replacing the battery.

If the circuits in the keys are damaged, the power system may not activate, and the remote transmitter may not work.

If the keys do not work properly, have them inspected by a dealer.

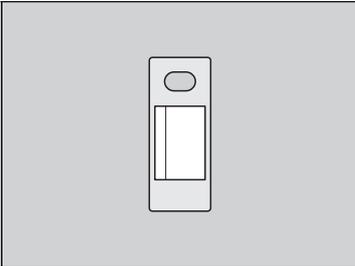
## ■ Built-in Key



The built-in key can be used to lock/unlock the doors when the keyless remote battery becomes weak and the power door lock/unlock operation is disabled.

To remove the built-in key, slide the release knob and then pull out the key. To reinstall the built-in key, push the built-in key into the keyless remote until it clicks.

## ■ Key Number Tag



Contains a number that you will need if you purchase a replacement key.

## Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

The vehicle transmits radio waves to locate the keyless remote when locking/unlocking the doors and tailgate, or to start the engine.

In the following cases, locking/unlocking the doors and tailgate, or starting the engine may be inhibited or operation may be unstable:

- Strong radio waves are being transmitted by nearby equipment.
- You are carrying the keyless remote together with telecommunications equipment, laptop computers, cell phones, or wireless devices.
- A metallic object is touching or covering the keyless remote.

## ☒ Key Number Tag

Keep the key number tag separate from the key in a safe place outside of your vehicle. If you wish to purchase an additional key, contact a dealer.

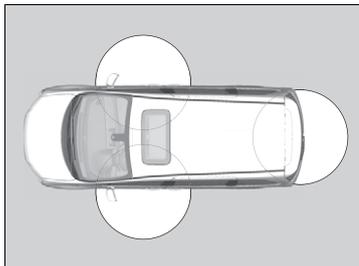
If you lose your key and you cannot start the engine, contact a dealer.

## ☒ Low Keyless Remote Signal Strength

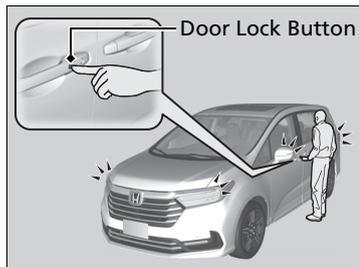
Communication between the keyless remote and the vehicle consumes the keyless remote's battery. Battery life is about two years, but this varies depending on regularity of use. The battery is consumed whenever the keyless remote is receiving strong radio waves. Avoid placing it near electrical appliances such as televisions and personal computers.

## Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

### ■ Using the Keyless Access System



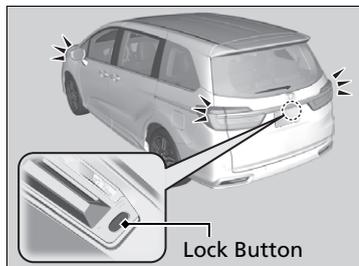
When you carry the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and open the tailgate. You can lock/unlock the doors and tailgate within a radius of about 80 cm of the outside door handle or tailgate outer handle.



### ■ Locking the doors and tailgate

Press the door lock button on the front door or on the tailgate.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash three times; the beeper sounds; all the doors and tailgate lock; and the security system sets.



### ▣ Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Outside

If the interior light switch is in the door activated position, the interior light comes on when you unlock the doors.

No doors opened: The light fades out after 30 seconds.

Doors relocked: The light goes off immediately.

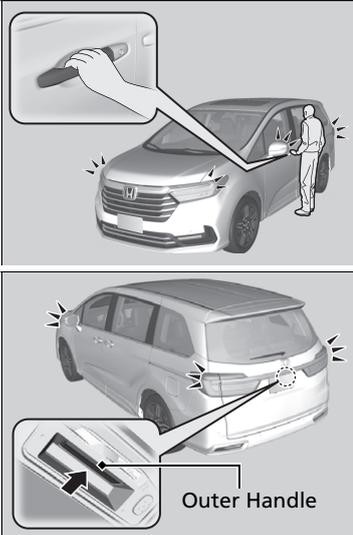
▶ **Interior Lights** P. 231

### ▣ Using the Keyless Access System

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the keyless access system, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

You can lock or unlock doors using the keyless access system only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.
- The door may be unlocked if the door handle is covered with water in heavy rain or in a car wash if the keyless remote is within range.
- If you grip a front door handle or touch a door lock sensor wearing gloves, the door sensor may be slow to respond or may not respond by unlocking or locking the doors.



### ■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate

Grab the front door handle or open the sliding door.

- ▶ All doors and the tailgate unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash once and the beeper sounds once.

Press the tailgate outer handle.

- ▶ All doors and the tailgate unlock.
- ▶ Some exterior lights flash once and the beeper sounds once.

➤ **Opening/Closing the Tailgate** P. 170

### ☒ Using the Keyless Access System

- After locking the door, you have up to 2 seconds during which you can pull the door handle to confirm whether the door is locked. If you need to unlock the door immediately after locking it, wait at least 2 seconds before gripping the handle, otherwise the door will not unlock.
- The door may not open if you pull it immediately after gripping the door handle. Grip the handle again and confirm that the door is unlocked before pulling the handle.
- Even within the 80 cm radius, you may not be able to lock/unlock the doors and the tailgate with the keyless remote if it is above or below the outside handle.
- The keyless remote may not operate if it is too close to the door, door glass and tailgate.

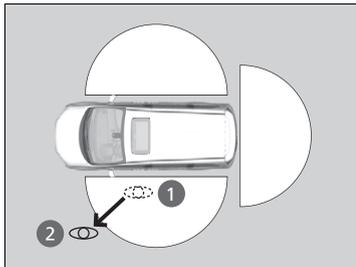
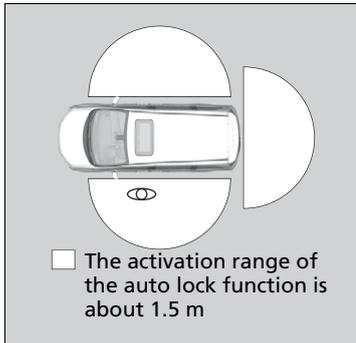
The beep settings can be customized using the audio/information screen.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 315

### Models with power tailgate

You can also unlock and open with the power tailgate.

➤ **Opening/Closing the Tailgate** P. 170



### ■ Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)

When you walk away from the vehicle with all doors and tailgate closed while carrying the keyless remote, the doors will automatically lock.

The auto lock function activates when all doors and tailgate are closed, and the keyless remote is within about 1.5 m radius of the outside door handle.

Exit vehicle while carrying keyless remote and close door(s).

1. While within about 1.5 m radius of the vehicle.
  - ▶ The beeper sounds; the auto lock function will be activated.
2. Carry the keyless remote beyond about 1.5 m from the vehicle and remain outside this range for 2 or more seconds.
  - ▶ Some exterior lights flash; the beeper sounds; all doors and tailgate will then lock.

### ▣ Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)

The auto lock function is set to OFF as the factory default setting. The auto lock function can be set to ON using the audio/information screen.

If you set the auto lock function to ON using the audio/information screen, only the remote transmitter that was used to unlock the driver's door prior to the setting change can activate auto lock.

▶ **Customized Features P. 315**

After the auto lock function has been activated, when you stay within the locking/unlocking operation range, the indicator on the keyless remote will continue to flash until the doors are locked.

When you stay beside the vehicle within the operation range, the doors will automatically lock approximately 30 seconds after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds.

When you open a door after the auto lock function activating beeper sounds, the auto lock function will be cancelled.

Under the following circumstances, the auto lock function will not activate:

- The keyless remote is inside the vehicle.
  - ▶ The beeper will not sound.
- The keyless remote is taken out of its operational range before all the doors and tailgate are closed.
  - ▶ The beeper will sound.

To temporarily deactivate the function:

1. Set the power mode to OFF.
2. Open the driver's door.
3. Using the master door lock switch, operate the lock as follows:

Lock → Unlock → Lock → Unlock.

- ▶ The beeper sounds and the function is deactivated.

To restore the function:

- Set the power mode to ON.
- Lock the vehicle without using the auto lock function.
- With the keyless remote on you, move out of the auto lock function operation range.
- Open any door.

#### ⊠ Locking the doors and tailgate (Walk away auto lock)

If equipped, the user must wait until the power tailgate fully closes before the auto lock function will be activated.

The auto lock function does not operate when any of the following conditions are met.

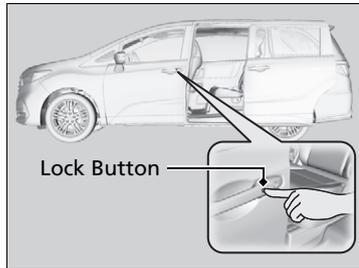
- The keyless remote is inside the vehicle.
- A door or the bonnet is not closed.
- The power mode is set to any mode other than OFF.
- The keyless remote is not located within a radius of about 1.5 m from the vehicle when you get out of the vehicle and close the doors.

#### **Auto lock function operation stop beeper**

After the auto lock function has been activated, the auto lock operation stop beeper sounds for approximately two seconds in the following cases.

- The keyless remote is put inside the vehicle through a window.
- You are located too close to the vehicle.
- The keyless remote is put inside the tailgate.

If the warning beeper sounds, check that you are carrying the keyless remote. Then, open/close a door and confirm the auto lock activation beeper sounds once.



### ■ Locking the doors and tailgate (lock presetting)

The vehicle will automatically lock after you lock the doors in advance then close the power sliding doors and power tailgate\*.

Activate lock presetting after closing any other doors besides the power sliding doors and power tailgate\*.

1. Press the lock button.
  - ▶ Alert sounds and lock presetting is activated.
2. Close the power sliding doors or power tailgate\*.
  - ▶ Some exterior lights flash and a beeper sounds when vehicle locks.

Make sure the doors and tailgate are locked before moving away from the vehicle.

### ▶ Locking the doors and tailgate (lock presetting)

## ⚠ WARNING

Opening or closing the power sliding doors or power tailgate on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

**Make sure all hands and fingers, especially children's, are clear of the doors.**

You can also activate lock presetting by pressing the lock button on the keyless remote.

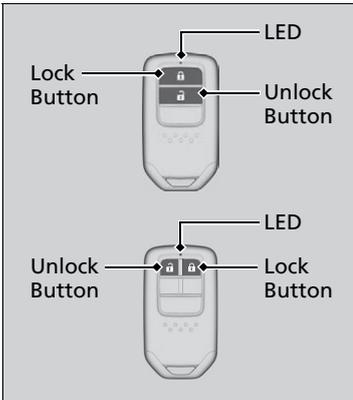
Lock presetting will be reset if a door or the tailgate is opened before the vehicle has locked completely.

Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

You can turn this function on and off.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 315

## ■ Using the Remote Transmitter



### ■ Locking the doors and tailgate

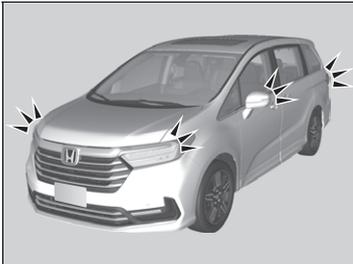
Press the lock button.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash three times, all the doors and tailgate lock, and the security system sets.

### ■ Unlocking the doors and tailgate

Press the unlock button.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash once, and all doors and tailgate unlock.



## ▶▶ Using the Remote Transmitter

If you do not open a door or the tailgate within 30 seconds of unlocking the vehicle with the remote transmitter, the doors and tailgate will automatically relock.

You can change the relock timer setting.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 315

You can lock or unlock doors using the remote transmitter only when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF.

The remote transmitter uses low-power signals, so the operating range may vary depending on the surroundings.

The remote will not lock the vehicle when a door or the tailgate is open.

If the distance at which the remote transmitter works varies, the battery is probably low.

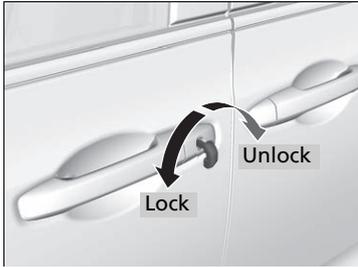
If the LED does not come on when you press a button, the battery is dead.

▶ **Replacing the Button Battery** P. 522

## ■ Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

If the lock or unlock button of the keyless remote does not work, use the key instead.

### 🔑 Replacing the Button Battery P. 522



Fully insert the key and turn it.

## 🔑 Locking/Unlocking the Doors Using a Key

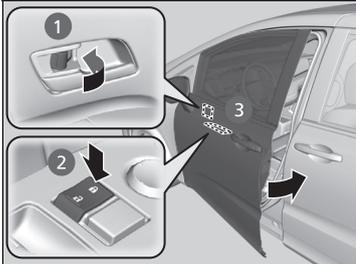
When you lock/unlock the driver's door with the key, all the other doors and tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

### Except Middle Eastern models

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

## ■ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

If you do not have the key on you, or if for some reason you cannot lock a door using the key, you can lock the door without it.



### ■ Locking the driver's door

Push the lock tab forward ① or push the master door lock switch in the lock direction ②, then pull and hold the outside door handle ③. Close the door, then release the handle.

### ■ Locking the passenger's doors

Push the lock tab forward and close the door.

### ■ Lockout prevention system

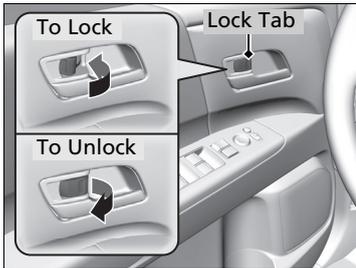
The doors and tailgate cannot be locked when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.

## ☒ Locking a Door Without Using a Key

When you lock the driver's door, all the other doors and tailgate lock at the same time.  
Before locking a door, make sure that the key is not inside the vehicle.

## Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the Inside

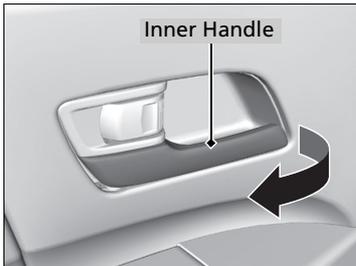
### ■ Using the Lock Tab



■ **Locking a door**  
Push the lock tab forward.

■ **Unlocking a door**  
Pull the lock tab rearward.

### ■ Unlocking Using the Driver's Door Inner Handle



Pull the driver's door inner handle.  
▶ The door unlocks and opens in one motion.

### ☞ Using the Lock Tab

When you lock/unlock the door using the lock tab on the driver's door, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

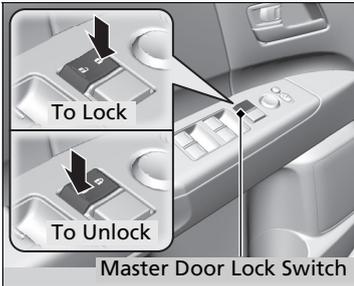
### ☞ Unlocking Using the Driver's Door Inner Handle

The driver's door inner handle is designed to allow the driver to open the door in one motion. However, this feature requires that the driver never pull the door inner handle while the vehicle is in motion.

Children should always ride in a rear seat where childproof door locks are provided.

☑ **Childproof Door Locks** P. 159

### ■ Using the Master Door Lock Switch

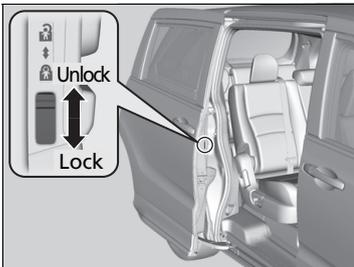


Press the master door lock switch in as shown to lock or unlock all the doors and the tailgate.

### Childproof Door Locks

The childproof door locks prevent the rear doors from being opened from the inside regardless of the position of the lock tab.

### ■ Setting the Childproof Door Locks



Slide the lever in the rear door to the lock position, and close the door.

#### ■ When opening the sliding door

Open the door using the outside door handle.

### ☒ Using the Master Door Lock Switch

When you lock/unlock the driver's door or passenger's door\* using the master door lock switch, all the other doors and the tailgate lock/unlock at the same time.

### ☒ Childproof Door Locks

To open the door from the inside when the childproof door lock is on, put the lock tab in the unlock position, lower the rear window, put your hand out of the window, and pull the outside door handle.

You can open and close the power sliding door, using the power sliding door switches near the driver's seat, or the remote.

\* Not available on all models

## Auto Door Locking/Unlocking\*

Your vehicle locks or unlocks all doors and tailgate automatically when a certain condition is met.

### ■ Auto Door Locking

#### ■ Drive lock mode

All doors and tailgate lock when the vehicle's speed reaches about 15 km/h.

### ■ Auto Door Unlocking

#### ■ Park unlock mode

All doors and tailgate unlock when the shift lever is moved into **P** with the brake pedal depressed.

### ⊗ Auto Door Locking/Unlocking\*

You can turn off or change to another auto door locking/unlocking setting using the audio/information screen.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 315

## Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.

- Open the tailgate all the way.
  - ▶ If it is not fully opened, the tailgate may begin to close under its own weight.
- Be careful when it is windy. The wind may cause the tailgate to close.

Keep the tailgate closed while driving to:

- ▶ Avoid possible damage.
- ▶ Prevent exhaust gas from leaking into the vehicle.
- 🚫 **Carbon Monoxide Gas** P. 94

### ⚠️ Precautions for Opening/Closing the Tailgate

#### **⚠️ WARNING**

Anyone caught in the path of a tailgate that is being opened or closed can be seriously injured.

**Make sure that all people are clear of the tailgate before opening or closing it.**

Be careful not to hit your head on the tailgate or to put your hands between the tailgate and the luggage area when closing the tailgate.

When you are storing or picking up luggage from the luggage area, or by using a forward and back kicking motion under the centre of the rear bumper for hands free access\*, while the engine is idling, do not stand in front of the exhaust pipe. You may get burned.

Do not allow any passenger in the luggage space. They may get hurt during hard braking, a sudden acceleration, or a crash.

\* Not available on all models

## Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate\*

The power tailgate can be operated by pressing the power tailgate button on the remote transmitter, pressing the power tailgate button in the driver side control panel, pressing the button on the tailgate, or by using a forward and back kicking motion under the centre of the rear bumper for hands free access\*.

The power tailgate can be opened/closed when the transmission is in **P**.

### ► Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate\*

#### NOTICE

Do not push or pull on the power tailgate when it is being automatically opened or closed. Forcibly opening or closing the power tailgate while in operation can deform the tailgate frame.

When operating the power tailgate, make sure there is enough space around your vehicle. People near the tailgate may be seriously hurt if the tailgate hits or closes on their heads. Be especially cautious if children are around.

The power tailgate may not open or close under the following conditions:

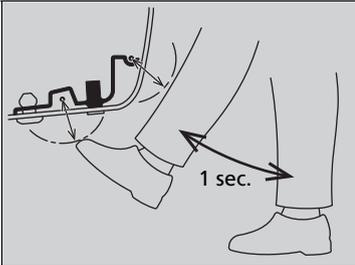
- You start the engine while the tailgate is automatically opening or closing.
- The vehicle is parked on a steep hill.
- The vehicle is swayed in a strong wind.
- The tailgate or the roof is covered with snow or ice.

## ■ Using the Hands Free Access



Use a forward and back kicking motion under the centre of the rear bumper to open or close the power tailgate while carrying the keyless remote.

- ▶ Some exterior lights will flash and a beeper will sound, then the tailgate begins to move.



## ⊞ Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate\*

### ⚠ WARNING

Opening or closing a power tailgate while any part of a passenger is in the tailgate's operating path can cause serious injury.

Make sure all passengers or objects are clear of the tailgate operating range before opening or closing the tailgate.

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone with other occupants.

During rain or in other instances when the vehicle becomes wet, the sensor may not properly detect your foot motion.

When performing work on or around the rear section of the vehicle, you may inadvertently open or close the tailgate.

To prevent this from happening, select Customized Features on the audio/information screen and then select OFF for the feature.

▣ **Customized Features** P. 315

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Using the Remote Transmitter



Press the power tailgate button for more than one second to operate when the power mode is in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) and all doors are unlocked.

- ▶ Some exterior lights flash and the beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop.

Press the button for more than one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

## ■ Customizing when to open the tailgate

**When Unlocked:** The tailgate opens when all doors are unlocked. This is the default setting.

**Anytime:** The power tailgate unlocks and opens at the same time.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 315

## ⊠ Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate\*

If you hold your foot under the bumper for too long, the power tailgate does not open or close.

This function will not operate if you don't have the keyless remote on you. Please make sure you have the keyless remote on you.

The duration of the kicking motion should be approximately one second.

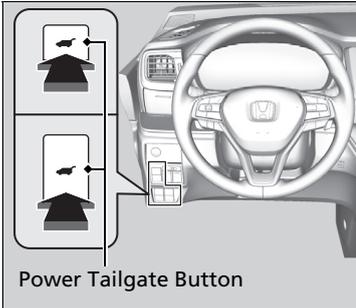
If you replace the battery or the power tailgate fuse while the tailgate is open, the power tailgate may be disabled. The power tailgate resumes once you manually close the tailgate.

Installing aftermarket components other than Honda genuine accessories on the power tailgate may prevent it from fully opening or closing.

Make sure the power tailgate is fully open before you get your luggage in and out.

The beeper sounds when you start driving while the power tailgate is still open, or closing.

## ■ Using the Power Tailgate Button



Power Tailgate Button

To open or close the power tailgate, press the power tailgate button for about one second.

- Some exterior lights flash and the beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop. Press the button for about one second, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

## ☒ Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate\*

If the power tailgate meets resistance while opening or closing, the auto reverse feature reverses the direction. The beeper sounds three times.

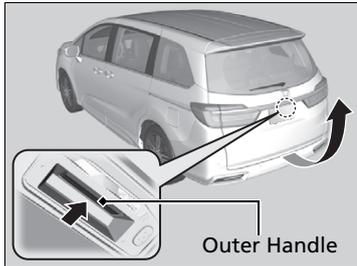
The auto reverse function stops sensing when the tailgate is almost closed to make sure that it fully closes.

Do not touch the sensors located on both sides of the tailgate. The power tailgate does not close if you touch either sensor when you are trying to close the tailgate.

Be careful not to scratch the sensors with a sharp object. If scratched, they can be damaged, and the power tailgate closing feature malfunctions.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Using the Tailgate Outer Handle



If you press the outer handle of the tailgate for no longer than one second, the tailgate opens automatically.

- ▶ The beeper sounds.
- ▶ If you want to open the tailgate manually, press the outer handle for more than one second and wait until you hear beeps.

▶ **Opening/Closing the Tailgate** P. 170

If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.

If you press the outer handle again while the power tailgate is moving, it will stop. Press the outer handle, and the power tailgate will reverse direction.

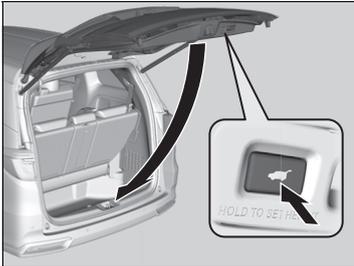
## ▶▶ Opening/Closing the Power Tailgate\*

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can lock/unlock the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.

You can change the power tailgate operation setting on and off.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 315

## ■ Using the Tailgate Inner Button



Press the button on the tailgate to close the power tailgate.

► The beeper sounds.

If you press the button again while the power tailgate is moving, it reverses direction

## ■ Auto-Closer

If you manually close the power tailgate, it latches automatically.

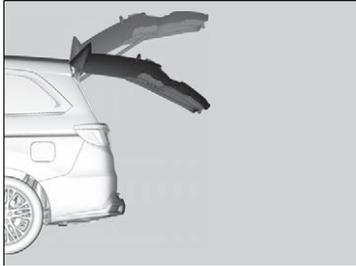
### ☒ Auto-Closer

The auto-closer feature does not activate if you press and hold the tailgate outer handle while the power tailgate is closing.

Do not put any force on the tailgate while the power tailgate is latching.

Keep your hands away from the tailgate when you manually close the tailgate and let it latch automatically. It is dangerous to put your hands around the tailgate as it starts to latch itself.

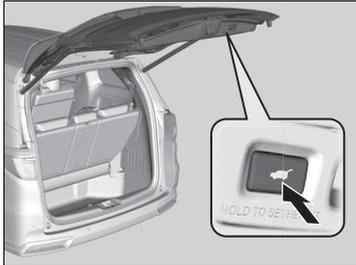
## ■ Programming Tailgate Position



The extent to which the power tailgate automatically opens can be programmed.

To program:

1. Open the tailgate to the desired position.
  2. Press and hold the tailgate inner button.
- You will hear one long beep, followed by two short beeps.



## ▣ Programming Tailgate Position

If the tailgate is only slightly opened, the position cannot be programmed, even if you push the inner button.

If you want to reprogram the power tailgate to open all the way, manually raise the tailgate to its uppermost position and follow the directions step 2.

## ■ Power Tailgate Fall Detection

Automatically lowers the power tailgate when there is a possibility that the fully opened power tailgate can fall down by its own weight (for example, by snow on the tailgate). The beeper sounds while the power tailgate lowers.

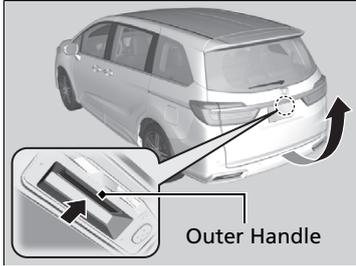
### ☒ Power Tailgate Fall Detection

If you try to manually close the power tailgate immediately after it fully opens, the power tailgate fall detection may activate.

Once the power tailgate fall detection activates, wait until the power tailgate fully closes. Keep away from the power tailgate when it is in motion.

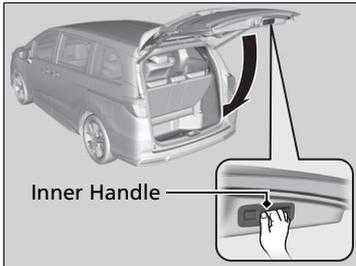
If the power tailgate fall detection constantly activates, consult at a dealer.

## Opening/Closing the Tailgate



When all the doors are unlocked or press the power tailgate button\* on the remote transmitter, the tailgate is unlocked. Press the outer handle of the tailgate and lift open the tailgate.

If you are carrying the keyless remote, you do not have to unlock the tailgate before opening it.



To close the tailgate, grab the inner handle, pull the tailgate down, and push it closed from outside.

### Opening/Closing the Tailgate

- Do not leave the keyless remote in the vehicle when you get out. Carry it with you.
- Even if you are not carrying the keyless remote, you can unlock the tailgate while someone else with the remote is within range.

## Precautions for Opening/Closing the Sliding Doors

Always make sure individuals and objects are clear of the sliding doors.

### ■ Opening the sliding doors

Open the door all the way until it stops.

- ▶ If it is not fully opened, the door may close again by its own weight.

### ⓘ Precautions for Opening/Closing the Sliding Doors

#### **WARNING**

Closing a sliding door while any part of a passenger is in the door's path can cause serious injury.

Make sure all passengers are clear of the doorway before closing a sliding door.

Do not leave the sliding door open while parking on a slope. The door may slide close by its weight.

When opening or closing the sliding doors, do not grab the door or place your hand on the vehicle body. Use the handle.

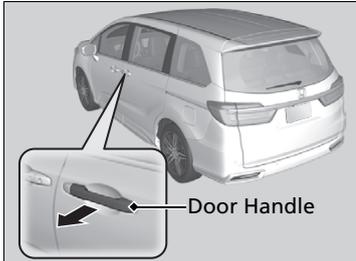
Do not put your foot and hand on the sliding door rail and on the rollers.

If a small child is in the vehicle, use the childproof door locks to prevent the child in the rear seat from accidentally opening the sliding doors.

➔ **Childproof Door Locks** P. 159

Do not put any items that stick out from the pocket in the door pockets. It may prevent the doors from properly opening or closing, and damage the vehicle.

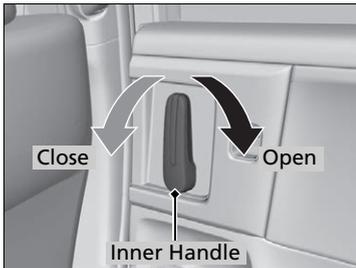
## Opening/Closing a Sliding Door



### ■ From outside

**To open:** Pull the door handle rearward and slide the door.

**To close:** Pull the door handle forward and slide the door.



### ■ From inside

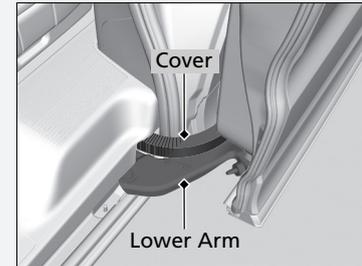
**To open:** Grab the inner handle and pull it rearward. Slide the door.

**To close:** Grab the inner handle and pull it forward. Slide the door.

### ▶▶ Opening/Closing a Sliding Door

Once a door is fully opened, the door position is locked.

Do not step on the lower arm of the sliding door or the cover that stores the wiring for the sliding door. The lower arm or the wiring will likely be damaged, causing the sliding door to malfunction.



If you try to open the left side sliding door while the fuel fill door is open, the door stops halfway. Close the fuel fill door, and then open the door again.

## Opening/Closing the Power Sliding Door(s\*)

The power sliding door(s\*) can be operated by pressing the power sliding door button on the remote transmitter, pressing the power sliding door switch on the dashboard, or using the door handle.

The power sliding door can be operated when:

- The sliding door main switch is in the ON position.
- The power sliding door is unlocked.
- The fuel fill door is closed (on the left side sliding door only).
- The power mode is in VEHICLE OFF when using the remote transmitter.
- The shift lever is in **[P]**, the brake pedal is depressed, or the parking brake is applied (with the power mode in ON) when using the power sliding door switch on the dashboard or the door handle.

### ⓘ Opening/Closing the Power Sliding Door(s\*)

#### **⚠ WARNING**

**Closing a power sliding door while any part of a passenger is in the door's path can cause serious injury.**

**Make sure all passengers are clear of the doorway before closing a sliding door.**

Check that passengers, especially children, do not have their hands on the sliding doors or on the door pillars before its operation. If someone is caught in the opening or closing sliding door, it can cause serious injury.

Before replacing a rear tyre, turn the power sliding door main switch to OFF.

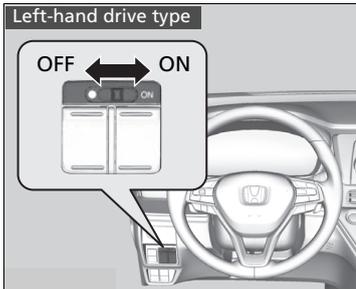
Operate the power sliding door only when the vehicle is at a complete stop. Make sure you apply the brake when rear passengers are boarding or exiting.

If you move the shift lever out of **[P]**, and release the brake pedal and the parking brake:

While opening – The sliding door stops and is left ajar.

While closing – The beeper sounds until the door closes.

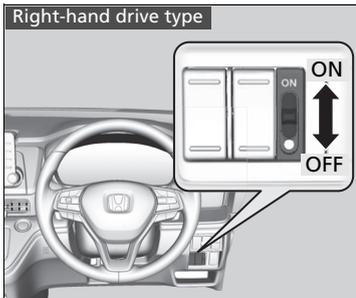
## Switching between Manual and Automatic Operations



**Automatic operation:** Select the ON position of the sliding door main switch.

**Manual operation:** Select the OFF position of the sliding door main switch.

➤ **Opening/Closing a Sliding Door** P. 172



## Opening/Closing the Power Sliding Door(s\*)

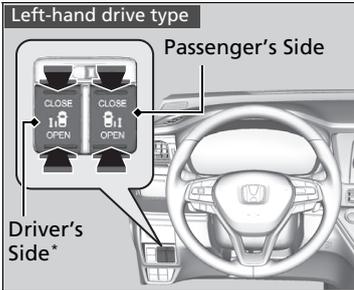
Do not turn the main switch off while the power sliding door is in operation on a slope. The power sliding door's fail-safe mode activates and the beeper sounds continuously.

When the fail-safe mode is active, turn the main switch on and close the door automatically.

The following can deactivate the fail-safe mode and the sliding door may close by its own weight.

- Using the door handle
- Turning the main switch from ON to OFF

## Power Sliding Door Switches

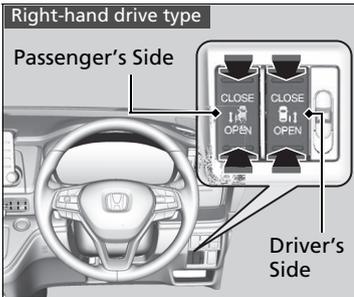


### Left-hand drive type

The power sliding door opens when you press the open side of the / switch, and closes when you press the close side of the / switch.

### Right-hand drive type

The power sliding door opens when you press the open side of the / switch, and closes when you press the close side of the / switch.

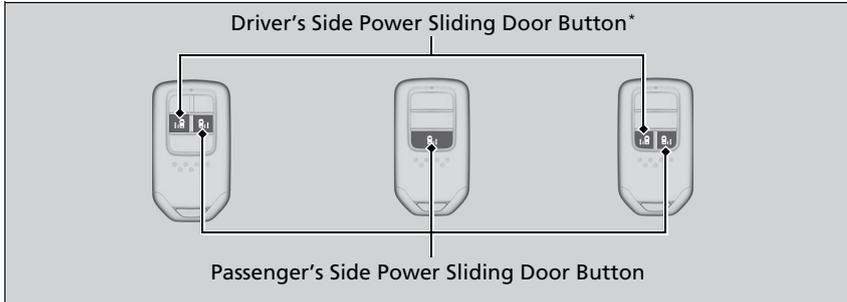


While the power sliding door is in operation, if you press the switch that corresponds to that power sliding door, the beeper sounds and the operation stops.

To resume the power sliding door operation, press the same switch again.

\* Not available on all models

## Remote Transmitter



Press the power sliding door button for more than one second to operate.

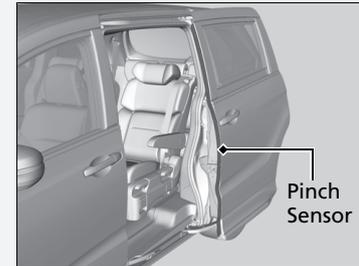
While the power sliding door is in operation, if you press the button that corresponds to that power sliding door, the beeper sounds and the operation stops.

If you press the same button again, the sliding door reverses its direction.

## Opening/Closing the Power Sliding Door(s\*)

### Auto Reverse

Do not touch the pinch sensor located at the front edge of the power sliding door. Do not damage the sensor. The power sliding door may not operate properly.

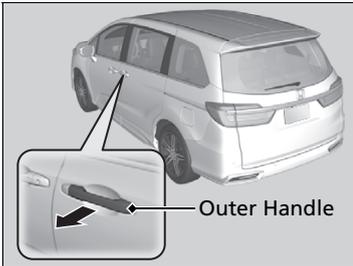


If the power sliding door senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction. The beeper sounds.

Before the power sliding door operation, make sure there are no people or obstacles near the door. The auto reverse function should be activated in case of emergency only. If someone is caught in the opening or closing sliding door, it can cause serious injury. Pay special attention to children.

Closing a power sliding door on someone's hand or fingers can cause serious injury. Some parts of the door edge do not sense resistance when the door is near closing.

## ■ Door Handles



### ■ Outer handles

Pull up on the outer handle towards you. The sliding door starts opening or closing.

When the power sliding door is locked, pulling the outer handle unlocks all the doors and tailgate while the keyless remote is in your possession. The power sliding door you pulled the handle with automatically operates.

While the power sliding door is in operation, if you pull either handle that corresponds to that power sliding door, the beeper sounds and the operation stops.

Pull the same handle again, the power sliding door moves to reverse direction.

### ⊠ Opening/Closing the Power Sliding Door(s)\*

While the fuel fill door is open, the beeper sounds and you cannot operate the left side power sliding door. Operate the left side power sliding door after the fuel fill door is closed.

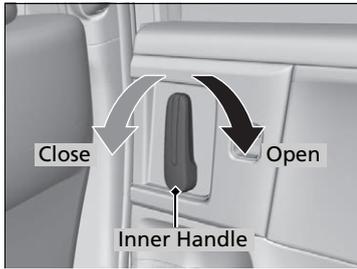
The beeper will sound and the power sliding door will not open if you pull the inner or outer handle under the following conditions:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The shift lever is in other than **P**.
- The brake pedal is released.
- The parking brake is released.

If you leave the power sliding door half open on a steep hill with the engine off, the door starts to sliding down towards the hill bottom after 30 minutes.

While the door is sliding down, the beeper sounds.

\* Not available on all models



■ **Inner handles**

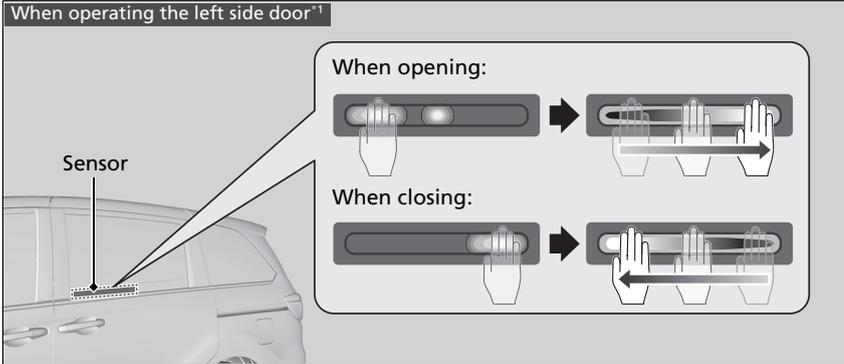
Pull it rearward to automatically open the sliding door, and pull it forward to automatically close the door.

While the power sliding door is in operation, if you pull either handle that corresponds to that power sliding door, the beeper sounds and the operation stops.

To resume the power sliding door operation, pull the same handle in the same direction again.

## ■ Gesture Controlled Power Sliding Door\*

You can open and close the power sliding door without touching it by gesturing with your hands in front of the power sliding door sensor while it is glowing.



1. Hold your hand in front of the right or left end of the sensor with your fingers together.
  - ▶ Hold your hand still until the sensor light begins to move.  
Your hand should be about 1-5cm away from the sensor.
  - ▶ The sensor light flows horizontally when your hand is detected.
2. Move your hand in the direction of the light to the end of the sensor.
  - ▶ Hold your hand at a constant distance from the sensor.

If the door does not open or close, wait several seconds then try the gesture again.

You can open locked doors by holding the keyless remote and controlling the door via gesture, which will unlock all doors and the tailgate and open the power sliding door.

\*1: Gesture is in the opposite direction for the driver's side door.

\* Not available on all models

Continued

## ☒ Gesture Controlled Power Sliding Door\*

The sensor will glow in the following situations.

- The keyless remote is brought close to the power sliding door.
- The vehicle is unlocked via the keyless access system or the remote transmitter.

The light in the sensor will turn off if no operations are performed for a time.

If the door of the vehicle has been locked for more than a week, the function will enter sleep mode and cannot be used. It will return to normal once the keyless remote has been used to unlock the vehicle.

The sensor will become less sensitive and may not detect your movements in the following situations:

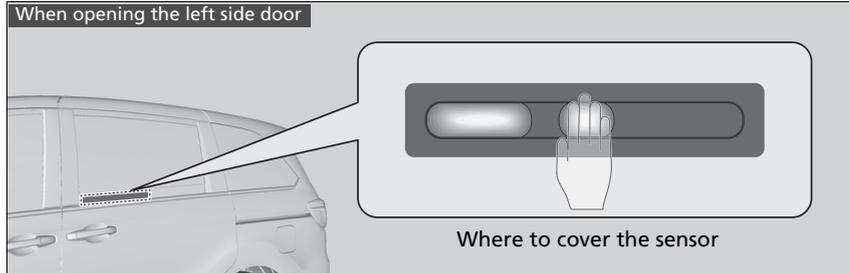
- Water, snow, or mud is on the window.
- Films or stickers are attached to the window.

Turn off the gesture control function when washing the car or cleaning around the sensor to prevent opening or closing the door by mistake.

☒ **Switching between Manual and Automatic Operations P. 174**

### ■ Opening the door using the centre sensor light

You can open the door using your hand or elbow by holding it up to the light in the centre of the sensor. It is not possible to close the door this way.



1. Approach the vehicle while holding the keyless remote.
  - ▶ The centre of the sensor glows.
2. Hold your hand or elbow in front of the light for about one second.
  - ▶ A buzzer sounds when it is detected.

### ■ Stopping the power sliding door when in operation

The power sliding door will stop moving if you touch the glowing section of the sensor.

- ▶ In order to resume opening or closing the door, hold your hand in front of the glowing light on the right or left side of the sensor, then gesture.

## Auto-Closer

---

If you manually close the power sliding door, it latches automatically.

The auto-closer feature activates with or without the main switch ON.

### Auto-Closer

Keep your hands away from the power sliding door. The manually closed door latches automatically when it is half-shut.

The auto-closer feature does not activate if you keep pulling the inner or outer handle and while the sliding door is closing.

Do not put any force on the power sliding door while the door is latching.

## Immobilizer System

This system prevents a key that has not been pre-registered from starting the engine.

Pay attention to the following when pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button:

- Do not allow objects that emit strong radio waves near the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- Make sure the key is not covered by or touching a metal object.
- Do not bring a key from another vehicle's immobilizer system near the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.
- Do not put the key near magnetic items. Electronic device, such as televisions and audio systems emit strong magnetic fields. Note that even a key chain can become magnetic.

## Security System Alarm

The security system alarm activates when the tailgate, bonnet or doors are forcibly opened. The alarm does not activate if the tailgate or doors are opened with the built-in key\*, remote transmitter or keyless access system.

### ■ When the security system alarm activates

The horn sounds intermittently, and some exterior lights flash.

### ☒ Immobilizer System

#### NOTICE

Leaving the key in the vehicle can result in theft or accidental movement of the vehicle. Always take the key with you whenever you leave the vehicle unattended.

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

If the system repeatedly does not recognise the coding of your key, contact a dealer. If you have lost your key and cannot start your vehicle, contact a dealer.

### ☒ Security System Alarm

Do not alter the system or add other devices to it. Doing so may damage the system and make your vehicle inoperable.

The security system alarm will continue for approximately 5 minutes before the security system deactivates.

The system will go through ten 30-second cycles, during which the horn will sound and an emergency indicator will flash.

Depending on circumstances, the security system may continue operating for more than 5 minutes.

### ■ To deactivate the security system alarm

Unlock the vehicle using the built-in key\*, remote transmitter or keyless access system, or turn the power mode to ON. The system, along with the horn and flashing lights, is deactivated.

### ■ Setting the security system alarm

The security system alarm automatically sets when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
- The bonnet is closed.
- All doors and the tailgate are locked from outside with the key, remote transmitter or keyless access system.

### ■ When the security system alarm sets

The security system alarm indicator in the instrument panel blinks and the blinking interval changes after about 15 seconds.

### ■ To cancel the security system alarm

The security system alarm is cancelled when the vehicle is unlocked using the built-in key\*, remote transmitter or keyless access system, or when the power mode is set to ON. The security system alarm indicator goes off at the same time.

#### ☒ Security System Alarm

Do not set the security system alarm when someone is in the vehicle or a window is open. The system can accidentally activate when:

- Unlocking the door with the lock tab.
- Opening the bonnet with the bonnet release.

If the battery goes dead after you have set the security system alarm, the security alarm may go off once the battery is recharged or replaced.

If this occurs, deactivate the security system alarm by unlocking a door using the built-in key\*, remote transmitter or keyless access system.

#### Except Middle Eastern models

If you unlock a door with the built-in key while the security system is activated, the alarm will go off.

\* Not available on all models

## Opening/Closing the Power Windows

The power windows can be opened and closed when the power mode is in ON, using the switches on the doors.

The driver's side switches can be used to open and close all the windows. The power window lock button on the driver's side must be switched off (not pushed in, indicator off) to open and close the windows from anywhere other than the driver's seat.

When the power window lock button is pushed in, the indicator comes on and you can only operate the driver's window. Turn the power window lock button on if a child is in the vehicle.

### Opening/Closing the Power Windows

#### **WARNING**

Closing a power window on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure your passengers are away from the windows before closing them.

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

#### Oceanian models

The power windows can be operated for up to 45 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

Opening either front door cancels this function.

#### Except Oceanian models

The power windows can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF.

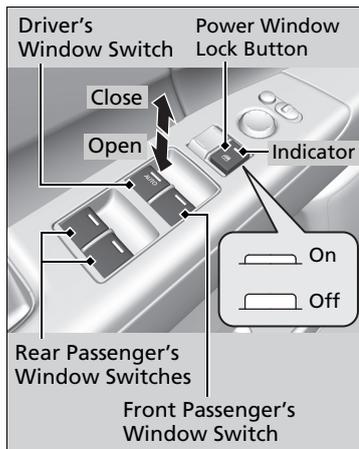
#### Models with auto-open/close function on all windows

Closing the driver's door cancels this function.

#### Models with auto-open/close function on driver's window

Opening either front door cancels this function.

### Opening/Closing the Windows with Auto-Open/Close Function



#### Manual operation

**To open:** Push the switch down lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

**To close:** Pull the switch up lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

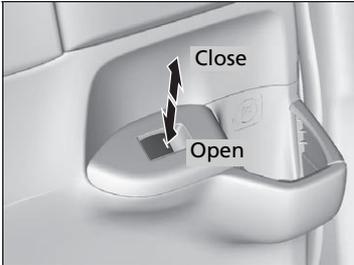
#### Automatic operation

**To open:** Push the switch down firmly.

**To close:** Pull the switch up firmly.

The window opens or closes completely. To stop the window at any time, push or pull the switch briefly.

## ■ Opening/Closing Windows without Auto-Open/Close Function\*

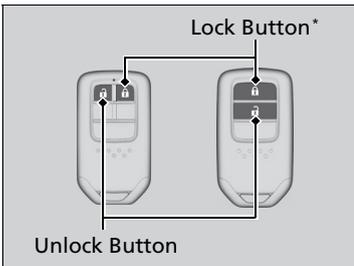


**To open:** Push the switch down.

**To close:** Pull the switch up.

Release the switch when the window reaches the desired position.

## ■ Opening/Closing\* the Windows with the Remote



**To open:** Press the unlock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

**To close\*:** Press the lock button, and then within 10 seconds, press it again and hold it.

If the windows stop midway, repeat the procedure.

### ☒ Opening/Closing the Power Windows

#### Auto Reverse

If a power window senses resistance when closing automatically, it will stop closing and reverse direction.

The driver's window auto reverse function is disabled when you continuously pull up the switch.

The auto reverse function stops sensing when the window is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

### ☒ Opening/Closing\* the Windows with the Remote

If you open/close the windows with the remote, the sunroof\* will open/close automatically along with them.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Closing the Window with the Key



Lock the driver's door with the key. Within 10 seconds of returning the key to the central position, turn the key in the lock direction and hold it there.

Release the key to stop the windows at the desired position. If you want further adjustment, repeat the same operation.

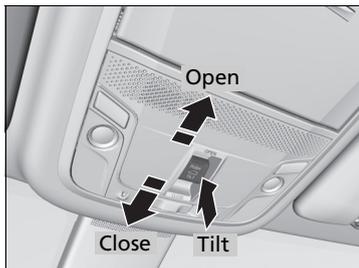
## ☒ Closing the Window with the Key

If you close the windows with the key, the sunroof\* will close automatically along with them.

## Opening/Closing the Sunroof

You can only operate the sunroof when the power mode is in ON. Use the switch in the front of the ceiling to open and close the sunroof.

### Using the Sunroof Switch



#### Automatic operation

**To open:** Pull the switch back firmly.

**To close:** Push the switch forward firmly.

The sunroof automatically opens or closes all the way. To stop the sunroof midway, pull or push the switch briefly.

#### Manual operation

**To open:** Pull the switch back lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

**To close:** Push the switch forward lightly, and hold it until the desired position is reached.

#### Tilting the sunroof up

**To tilt:** Push on the centre of the sunroof switch.

**To close:** Push the switch forward firmly, then release.

Sunroof\*

### WARNING

Opening or closing the sunroof on someone's hands or fingers can cause serious injury.

Make sure all hands and fingers are clear of the sunroof before opening or closing it.

**WARNING:** Always take the ignition key with you whenever you leave the vehicle alone or with other occupants.

**WARNING:** Extending the head, arms or other parts of the body through the sunroof while the vehicle is moving can cause serious injury or death.

#### NOTICE

Opening the sunroof in below freezing temperature or when it is covered with snow or ice can damage the sunroof panel or motor.

» Sunroof\*

**Oceanian models**

The sunroof can be operated for up to 45 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

Opening either front door cancels this function.

**Except Oceanian models**

The sunroof can be operated for up to 10 minutes after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

**Models with auto-open/close function on all windows**

Closing the driver's door cancels this function.

**Models with auto-open/close function on driver's window**

Opening either front door cancels this function.

**All models**

When resistance is detected, the auto reverse function causes the sunroof to change directions, then stop. Auto reverse stops sensing when the sunroof is almost closed to ensure that it fully closes.

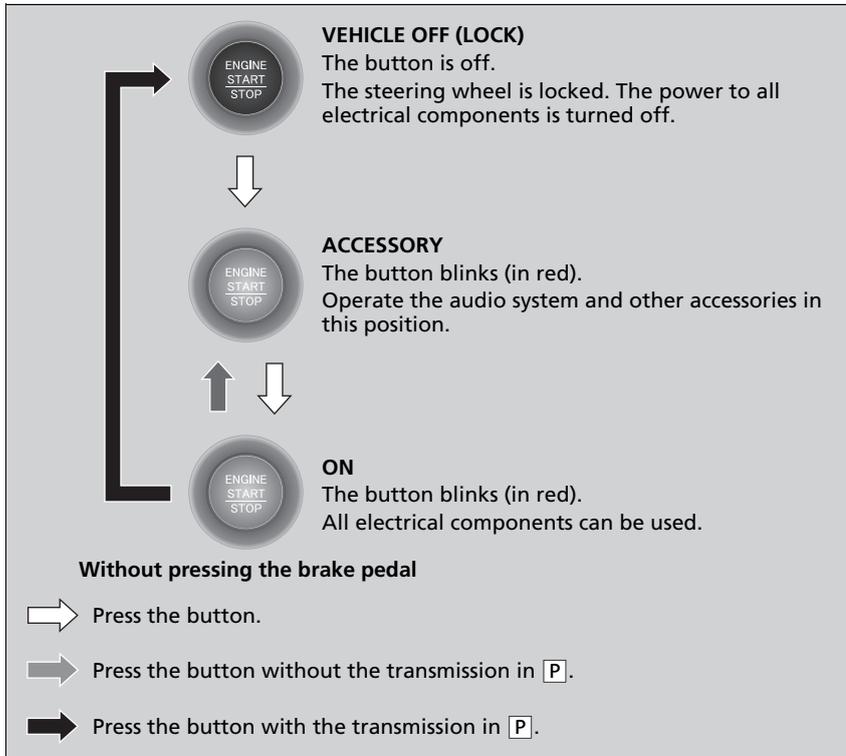
You can use the remote transmitter or the key to operate the sunroof.

➤ **Opening/Closing\* the Windows with the Remote** P. 185

➤ **Closing the Window with the Key** P. 186

## ENGINE START/STOP Button

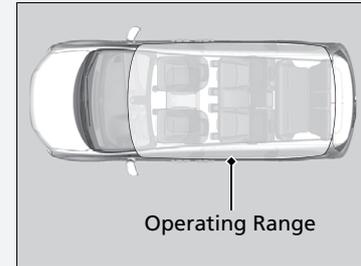
### ■ Changing the Power Mode



### ⊠ ENGINE START/STOP Button

#### ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range

You can start the engine when the keyless remote is inside the vehicle.



If the battery of the keyless remote is getting low, the engine may not start when you push the **ENGINE START/STOP** button. If the engine does not start, refer to the following link.

#### ⊠ If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

P. 546

The engine may also run if the keyless remote is close to the door or window, even if it is outside the vehicle.

ON mode:

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button is on (in red), if the engine is running.

## ■ Automatic Power Off

If you leave the vehicle for 30 to 60 minutes with the transmission in **P** and the power mode in ACCESSORY, the vehicle automatically goes into the mode similar to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) to avoid draining the battery.

When in this mode:

The steering wheel does not lock.

You cannot lock or unlock doors with the remote transmitter or the keyless access system.

Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice to switch the mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

## ■ Power Mode Reminder

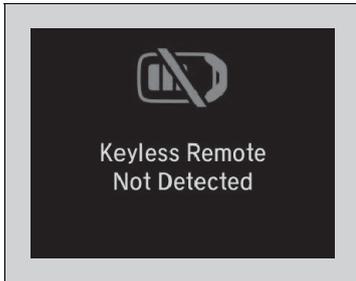
If you open the driver's door when the power mode is set to ACCESSORY, a warning beep sounds.

## ⌘ ENGINE START/STOP Button

If the power mode does not change from VEHICLE OFF to ACCESSORY, press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while moving the steering wheel left and right. The steering wheel will unlock, allowing the mode to change.

Do not leave the power mode in ACCESSORY or ON when you get out.

## ■ Keyless Remote Reminder



When the power mode is set to any mode other than OFF and you remove the keyless remote from the vehicle and shut the door, an alarm will sound. If the alarm continues to sound, place the keyless remote in another location.

### ■ When the power mode is in ACCESSORY

The alarm will sound from outside the vehicle.

### ■ When the power mode is in ON

An alarm will sound both inside and outside the vehicle. In addition, a warning indicator will appear on the instrument panel.

## ⊠ Keyless Remote Reminder

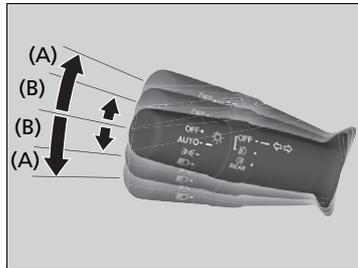
When the keyless remote is within the system's operational range, and the driver's door is closed, the warning function cancels.

If the keyless remote is taken out of the vehicle after the engine has been started, you can no longer change the **ENGINE START/STOP** button mode or restart the engine. Always make sure if the remote is in your vehicle when you operate the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

Removing the keyless remote from the vehicle through a window does not activate the warning buzzer.

Do not put the keyless remote on the dashboard or in the glove box. It may cause the warning buzzer to go off. Under some other conditions that can prevent the vehicle from locating the remote, the warning buzzer may also go off even if the remote is within the system's operational range.

## Turn Signals



The turn signals can be used when the power mode is in ON.

### ■ (A): Turn signal

Push the lever up or down based on the direction you want to turn, and the turn signal will blink.

### ■ (B): One-touch turn signal

When you lightly push the lever up or down and release it, the turn signal will blink 3 times.

- ▶ If you lightly push the lever in the opposite direction while it is blinking, the blinking will stop.

### ▶ Turn Signals

The turn signal indicator on the instrument panel will blink when the external turn signal blinks.

▶ Indicators P. 98

# Light Switches

## Manual Operation

**Except Taiwanese models with automatic lighting control system**

Low Beams  
High Beams

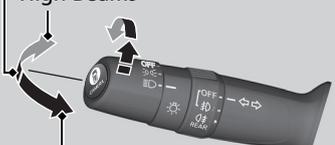


Flashing the high beams

---

**Models without automatic lighting control system and Taiwanese models**

Low Beams  
High Beams



Flashing the high beams

-  Turns on position, side marker, tail, and rear licence plate lights
-  Turns on headlights, side marker, position, tail, and rear licence plate lights

Rotating the light switch turns the lights on and off, regardless of the power mode setting.

### High beams

Push the lever forward until you hear a click.

### Low beams

When in high beams, pull the lever back to return to low beams.

### Flashing the high beams

Pull the lever back, and release it.

### Taiwanese models

### Lights off

Turn the lever to **OFF** either when:

- The transmission is in **P**.
- The parking brake is applied.

To turn the lights on again, turn the lever to **OFF** to cancel the lights off mode. Even if you do not cancel the lights off mode, the lights come on automatically when:

- The transmission is taken out of **P** and the parking brake is released.
- The vehicle starts to move.

### Light Switches

If you leave the power mode in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) while the lights are on, a chime sounds when the driver's door is opened.

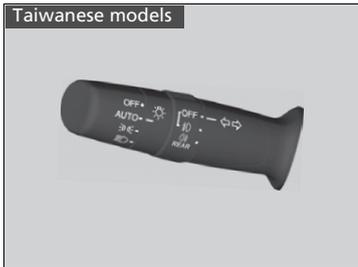
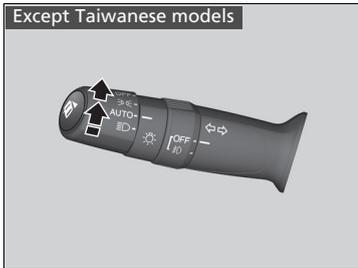
When the lights are on, the lights on indicator in the instrument panel will be on.

### Lights On Indicator P. 108

Do not leave the lights on when the engine is off because it will cause the battery to discharge.

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights. If you find a significant change in the vertical angle of the headlights, there may be a problem with the system. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## ■ Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)\*



Automatic lighting control can be used when the power mode is in ON.

### Except Taiwanese models

When you turn the light switch to **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

### Taiwanese models

When the light switch is in **AUTO**, the headlights and other exterior lights will switch on and off automatically depending on the ambient brightness.

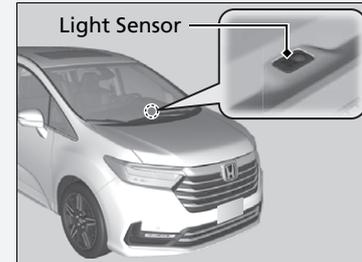
The headlights comes on when you unlock a door in dark areas with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

- ▶ Once you lock the door, the headlights will go off.

## ▶▶ Automatic Operation (automatic lighting control)\*

We recommend that you turn on the lights manually when driving at night, in a dense fog, or in dark areas such as long tunnels or parking facilities.

The light sensor is in the location shown below. Do not cover this light sensor with anything; otherwise, the automatic lighting system may not work properly.



### Except Taiwanese models

You can adjust the auto light sensitivity as follows:

Setting	The exterior lights come on when the ambient light is at	
<b>Max</b>		Bright
<b>High</b>		
<b>Mid</b>		
<b>Low</b>		
<b>Min</b>		Dark

▶▶ Customized Features P. 315

## ■ Headlight Integration with Wipers\*

The headlights automatically come on when the wipers are used several times within a certain number of intervals with the headlight switch in **AUTO**.

The headlights automatically go off a few minutes later if the wipers are stopped.

## ■ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

The headlights, all other exterior lights, and the instrument panel lights turn off 15 seconds after you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), take the remote with you, and close the driver's door.

If you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) with the headlight switch on, but do not open the door, the lights turn off after 10 minutes (3 minutes, if the switch is in the **AUTO\*** position).

The lights turn on again when you unlock or open the driver's door. If you unlock the door, but do not open it within 15 seconds, the lights go off. If you open the driver's door, you will hear a reminder chime alerting you that the lights are on.

\* Not available on all models

### ⌘ Headlight Integration with Wipers\*

This feature activates while the headlights are off in **AUTO**.

The instrument panel brightness does not change when the headlights come on.

At dark ambient light levels, the automatic lighting control feature turns on the headlights, regardless of the number of wiper sweeps.

### ⌘ Automatic Lighting Off Feature

You can change the headlight auto off timer setting.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 315

## Front and Rear\* Fog Lights

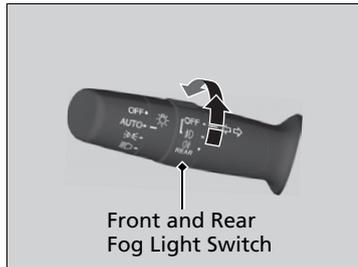
### ■ Front fog lights

Can be used when the position lights or the headlights are on.

### ■ Rear fog light\*

Can be used when the headlights or the front fog lights are on.

### ■ Front and Rear Fog Lights\*



### ■ To turn the front fog lights on

Rotate the switch up from the **OFF** position to the **FOG** position. The **FOG** indicator comes on.

### ■ To turn the front and rear fog lights on

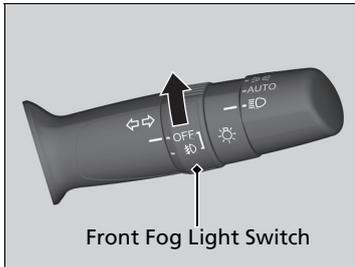
Rotate the switch one position up from the **FOG** position. The **FOG** and **REAR** indicators come on.

### ■ To turn the rear fog light on

Rotate the switch one position up from the **FOG** position and then rotate the switch one position down from the **FOG** position. The **REAR** indicator stays on.

To turn the rear fog light off, turn the headlight switch to the **OFF** position.

## ■ Front Fog Lights\*



### ■ To turn the front fog lights on

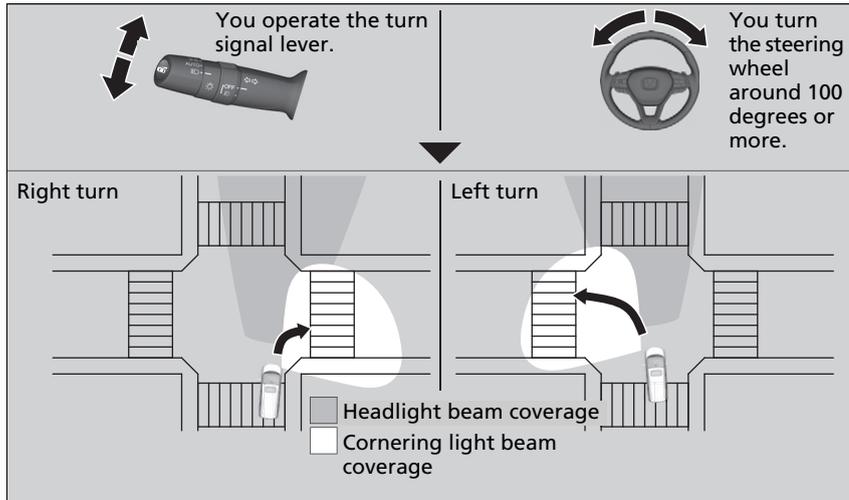
Rotate the switch to the ☁. The ☁ indicator comes on.

\* Not available on all models

## Active Cornering Lights\*

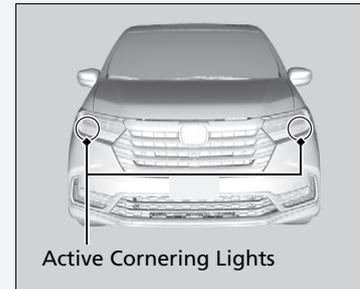
Enhance the visibility of the corner(s) when making a turn. With the power mode in ON, the headlights on, and the vehicle speed at less than 35 km/h, the cornering light(s) comes on either when operating the turn signals or the steering wheel, or moving the shift lever to **R**.

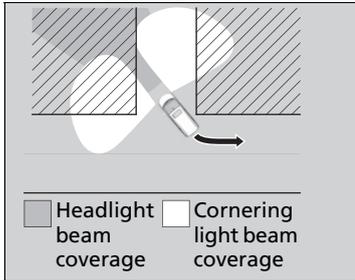
### ■ The corner you are making a turn towards is illuminated when:



### ⓘ Active Cornering Lights\*

The active cornering lights go off automatically after five minutes. To resume the lights on, recreate the same condition; putting the turn signal lever or steering wheel in the centre position, then operate it again, or if the shift lever has been in **R**, move it to another position momentarily.





■ **Both front corners are illuminated when:**

You move the shift lever to **R**.

## Daytime Running Lights\*

---

The position/daytime running lights comes on when the following conditions have been met:

- The power mode is in ON.

### Except Taiwanese models

- The headlight switch is in **AUTO\*** or **OFF**.

### Taiwanese models

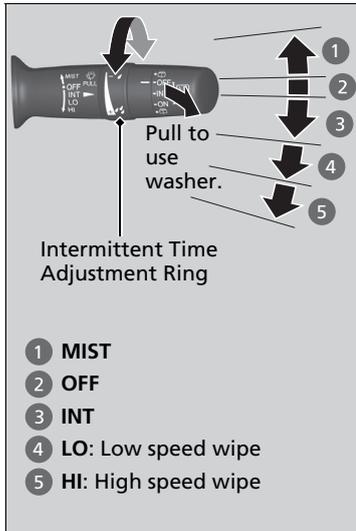
- The headlight switch is in **AUTO**.

Setting the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) will turn off the daytime running lights.

The daytime running lights are off once the headlight switch is turned on, or when the head light switch is in **AUTO\*** and it is getting darker outside.

## Wipers and Washers

### Windscreen Wipers/Washers



The windscreen wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

#### ■ MIST

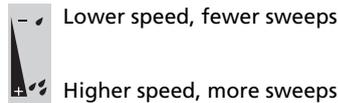
The wipers run at high speed until you release the lever.

#### ■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, LO, HI)

Move the lever up or down to change the wiper settings.

#### ■ Adjusting wiper operation

Turn the adjustment ring to adjust the wiper operation.



#### ■ Washer

Sprays while you pull the lever towards you. When you release the lever for more than one second, the spray stops, the wipers sweep two or three more times to clear the windscreen, then stop.

### Wipers and Washers

#### NOTICE

Do not use the wipers when the windscreen is dry. The windscreen will get scratched, or the rubber blades will get damaged.

#### NOTICE

Turn the washers off if no washer fluid comes out. The pump may get damaged.

The wiper motor may stop motor operation temporarily to prevent an overload. Wiper operation will return to normal within a few minutes, once the circuit has returned to normal.

If the vehicle speeds up while the wipers are operating intermittently, the length of the wipe interval shortens.

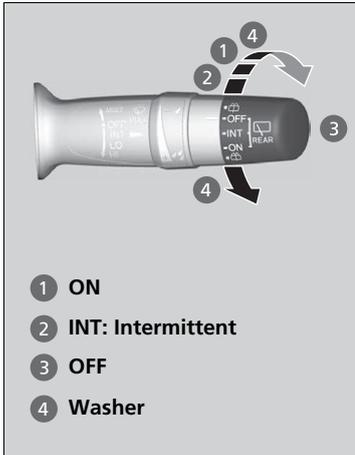
When the vehicle speeds up, the wiper operation's shortest delay setting (👉) and the **LO** setting become the same.

#### NOTICE

In cold weather, the blades may freeze to the windscreen.

Operating the wipers in this condition may damage the wipers. Use the demister to warm the windscreen, then turn the wipers on.

## ■ Rear Wiper/Washer



The rear wipers and washers can be used when the power mode is in ON.

### ■ Wiper switch (OFF, INT, ON)

Change the wiper switch setting according to the amount of rain.

### ■ Washer ( )

Sprays on the rear window while you rotate the switch to this position. Hold it to activate the rear wiper and to spray the washer. Once released, the washer spray will stop and the rear wiper will return to its selected switch setting after a few sweeps.

### ■ Operating in reverse

When you shift the transmission to **R** with the windscreen wipers activated, the rear wiper operates automatically as follows even if its switch is off.

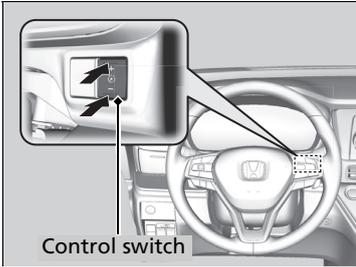
Windscreen Wiper Position	Rear Wiper Operation
<b>INT</b> (Intermittent)	Intermittent
<b>LO</b> (Low speed wipe)	Continuous
<b>HI</b> (High speed wipe)	

## ▶ Wipers and Washers

If the wipers stop operating due to an obstacle such as the build-up of snow, park the vehicle in a safe place.

Rotate the wiper switch to **OFF**, and set the power mode to ACCESSORY or VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), then remove the obstacle.

## Brightness Control



When the power mode is in ON, you can use the brightness control switch to adjust instrument panel brightness.

**Brighten:** Press the  button.

**Dim:** Press the  button.

You will hear a beep when the brightness reaches minimum or maximum. Several seconds after adjusting the brightness, you will be returned to the previous screen.

### ■ Brightness level indicator

The brightness level is shown on the display while you are adjusting it.



### ☒ Brightness Control

The brightness of the instrument panel will be reduced when the following conditions:

- The power mode is in ON.

#### Models with automatic lighting control system

- The light switch is in any position other than **OFF** and it is dark outside.

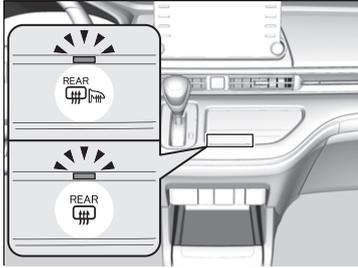
#### Models without automatic lighting control system

- The position lights are turned on.

The brightness can be set differently for when the exterior lights are on, and when they are off.

## Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror\* Icon

Select the rear demister and heated door mirror icon to demist the rear window and mirrors when the power mode is in ON.



The rear demister and heated door mirror automatically switch off after 10-30 minutes depending on the outside temperature. However, if the outside temperature is 0°C or below, it does not automatically switch off.

### ⌘ Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror\* Icon

This system consumes a lot of power, so turn it off when the window has been demisted. Also, do not use the system for a long time while the engine is idling. This may weaken the battery, making it difficult to start the engine.

#### **Models with auto-open/close function on all windows**

When the power mode is set to ON and the outside temperature is below 5°C, the heated door mirror may automatically activate for 10 minutes.

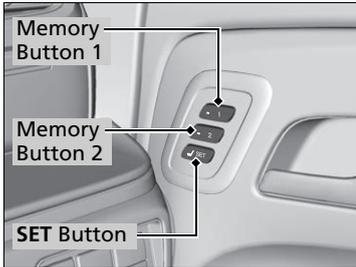
## Driving Position Memory System\*

You can store two driver's seat positions with the driving position memory system. When you unlock and open the driver's door with a remote, the seat adjusts automatically to one of the two preset positions.

- **DRIVER 1** transmitter is linked to memory button 1.
- **DRIVER 2** transmitter is linked to memory button 2.

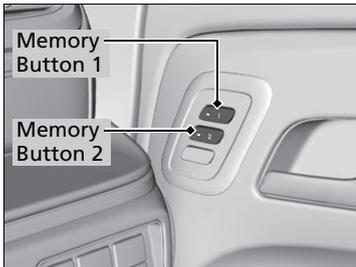


## ■ Storing a Position in Memory



1. Set the power mode to ON. Adjust the driver's seat to the desired position.
2. Press the **SET** button.
  - ▶ You will hear the beeper, and the memory button indicator light will blink.
3. Press and hold memory button **[1]** or **[2]** within five seconds of pressing the **SET** button.
  - ▶ Once the seat position has been memorized, the indicator light on the button you pressed stays on and you will hear the double-beep.

## ■ Recalling the Stored Position



1. Put the transmission into **[P]**.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Press a memory button (**[1]** or **[2]**).
  - ▶ You will hear the beeper, and the indicator light will blink.

The seat will automatically move to the memorized position. When it has finished moving, you will hear the beeper, and the indicator light stays on.

## ⌘ Storing a Position in Memory

After you press the **SET** button, the storing operation will be cancelled when:

- You do not press the memory button within five seconds.
- You readjust the seat position before the double-beep.
- You set the power mode to any position except ON.

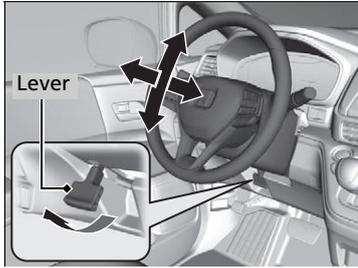
## ⌘ Recalling the Stored Position

The seat will stop moving if you:

- Press the **SET** button or memory button **[1]** or **[2]**.
- Adjust the seat position.
- Put the transmission into a position other than **[P]**.

## Adjusting the Steering Wheel

The steering wheel height and distance from your body can be adjusted so that you can comfortably grip the steering wheel in an appropriate driving posture.



1. Pull the steering wheel adjustment lever up.
  - ▶ The steering wheel adjustment lever is under the steering column.
2. Move the steering wheel up or down, and in or out.
  - ▶ Make sure you can see the instrument panel gauges and indicators.
3. Push the steering wheel adjustment lever down to lock the steering wheel in position.
  - ▶ After adjusting the position, make sure you have securely locked the steering wheel in place by trying to move it up, down, in, and out.

### Adjusting the Steering Wheel

#### **⚠ WARNING**

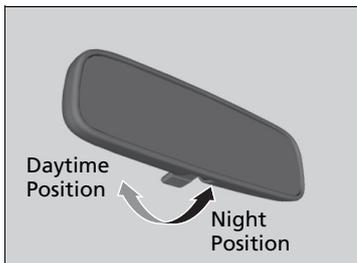
Adjusting the steering wheel position while driving may cause you to lose control of the vehicle and be seriously injured in a crash.

Adjust the steering wheel only when the vehicle is stopped.

## Interior Rearview Mirror

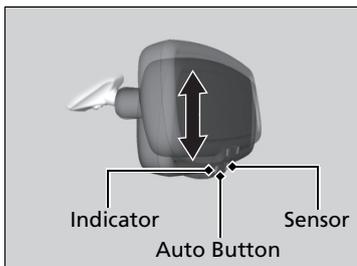
Adjust the angle of the rearview mirror when you are sitting in the correct driving position.

### ■ Rearview Mirror with Day and Night Positions\*



Flip the tab to switch the position. The night position will help to reduce the glare from headlights behind you when driving after dark.

### ■ Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror\*



When you are driving after dark, the automatic dimming rearview mirror reduces the glare from headlights behind you. Press the auto button to turn this function on and off. When activated, the auto indicator comes on.

### ▣ Mirrors

Keep the inside and outside mirrors clean and adjusted for best visibility.

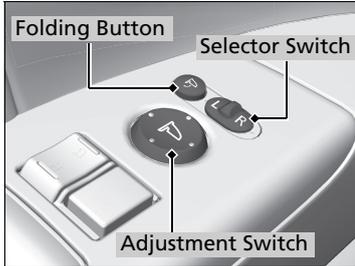
Adjust the mirrors before you start driving.

▣ **Front Seats** P. 211

### ▣ Automatic Dimming Rearview Mirror\*

The auto dimming function cancels when the transmission is in **R**.

## Power Door Mirrors



You can adjust the door mirrors when the power mode is in ON.

### ■ Mirror position adjustment

**L/R selector switch:** Select the left or right mirror. After adjusting the mirror, return the switch to the centre position.

**Mirror position adjustment switch:** Press the switch left, right, up, or down to move the mirror.

### ■ Folding door mirrors

Press the folding button to fold in or out the door mirrors.

## ■ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function\*

### ■ Folding in the door mirrors

Press the lock button on the keyless remote, or press the door lock button on either front door or the tailgate.

- ▶ The mirrors start folding out automatically.

### ■ Folding out the door mirrors

Unlock all doors and the tailgate using the remote transmitter or keyless access system.

- ▶ The mirrors start folding out automatically.

## ⊞ Automatic Folding Door Mirror Function\*

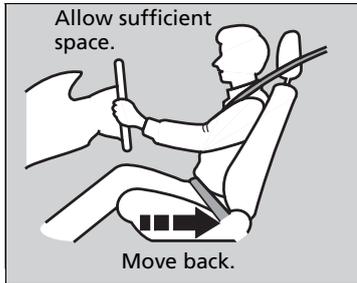
You cannot turn the automatic folding out automatically if they have been folded in using the folding button.

You can turn the automatic folding door mirror function on and off.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 315

Door mirrors will not fold automatically when locking from inside the vehicle using lock tab or master door lock switch.

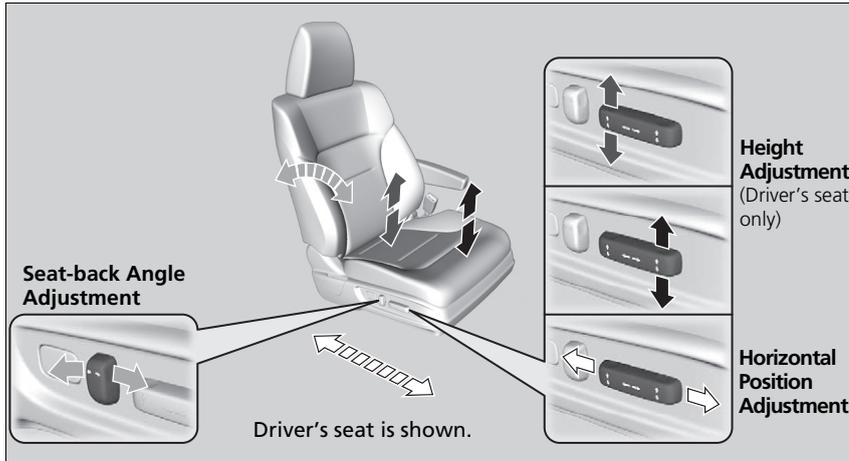
## Front Seats



Adjust the driver's seat as far back as possible while allowing you to maintain full control of the vehicle. You should be able to sit upright, well back in the seat and be able to adequately press the pedals without leaning forward, and grip the steering wheel comfortably. The passenger's seat should be adjusted in a similar manner, so that it is as far back from the front airbag in the dashboard as possible.

### ■ Adjusting the Seat Positions

#### ■ Adjusting the front power seat(s)\*



\* Not available on all models

Continued

### ▣ Seats

Always make seat adjustments before driving.

### ▣ Front Seats

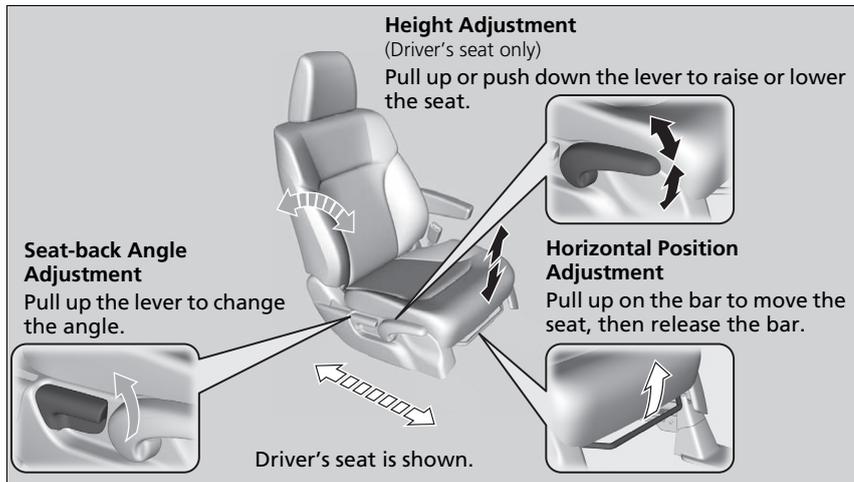
## ⚠ WARNING

Sitting too close to a front airbag can result in serious injury or death if the front airbags inflate.

Always sit as far back from the front airbags as possible while maintaining control of the vehicle.

In addition to the seat adjustment, you can adjust the steering wheel up and down, in and out. Allow at least 25 cm between the centre of the steering wheel and the chest.

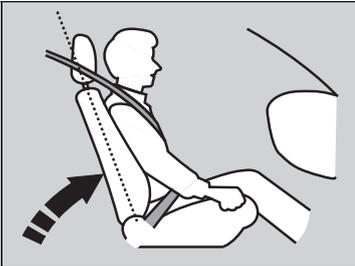
### ■ Adjusting the front manual seat(s)\*



### ▣ Adjusting the front manual seat(s)\*

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.

## ■ Adjusting the Seat-Backs



Adjust the driver's seat-back to a comfortable, upright position, leaving ample space between your chest and the airbag cover in the centre of the steering wheel.

The front seat passenger should also adjust their seat-back to a comfortable, upright position.

Reclining a seat-back so that the shoulder part of the belt no longer rests against the occupant's chest reduces the protective capability of the belt. It also increases the chance of sliding under the belt in a crash and being seriously injured. The farther a seat-back is reclined, the greater the risk of injury.

## ▣ Adjusting the Seat-Backs

### **⚠ WARNING**

**Reclining the seat-back too far can result in serious injury or death in a crash.**

**Adjust the seat-back to an upright position, and sit well back in the seat.**

Do not put a cushion, or other object, between the seat-back and your back.

Doing so may interfere with proper seat belt or airbag operation.

If you cannot get far enough away from the steering wheel and still reach the controls, we recommend that you investigate whether some type of adaptive equipment may help.

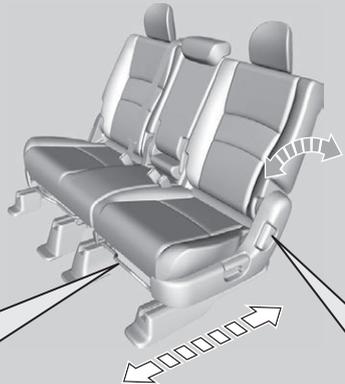
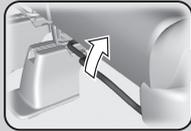
## Second Row Seats

### ■ Adjusting the Seat Positions

Models with bench seat

#### Horizontal Position Adjustment

Pull up on the bar to move the seat, then release the bar.



#### Seat-back Angle Adjustment

Pull up the lever to change the angle.



### ▶▶ Second Row Seats

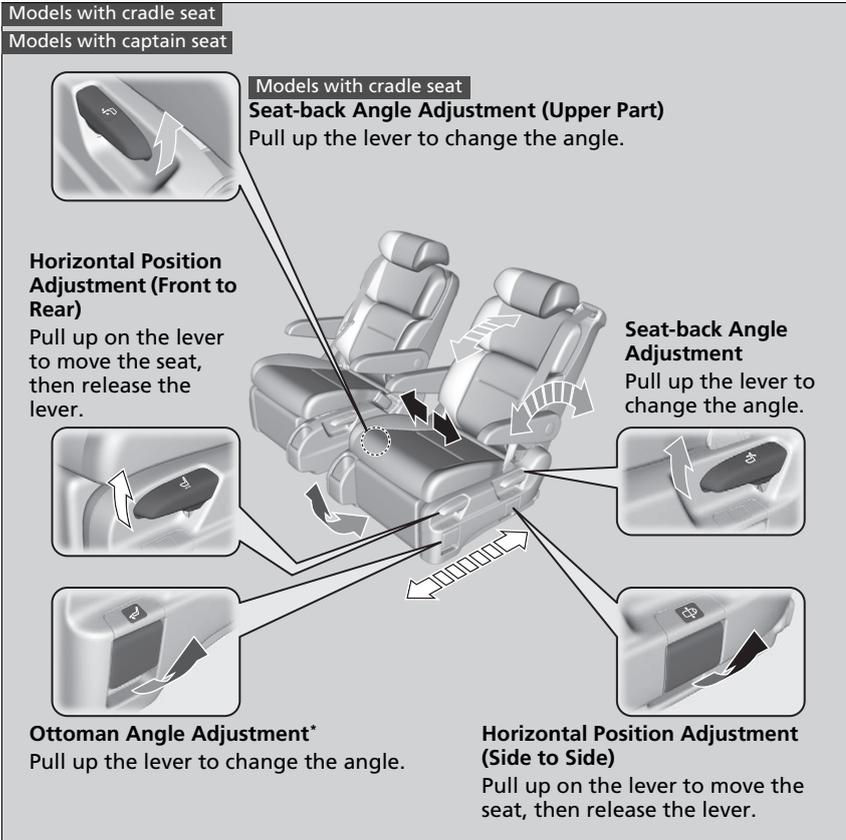
## ⚠ WARNING

An unsecured seat or seat-back can move out of position or collapse without warning if there is sudden acceleration or stop or in a crash.

A seat or seat-back that suddenly moves or collapses can result in severe injury or death.

Always make sure all seats and seat-backs are securely locked into position before driving.

Once a seat is adjusted correctly, rock it back and forth to make sure it is locked in position.



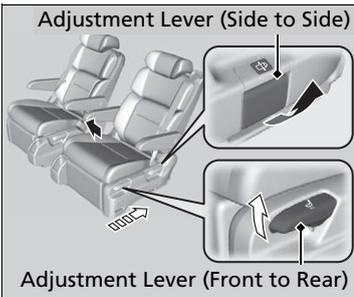
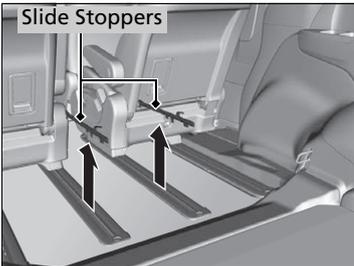
\* Not available on all models

Continued

Models with cradle seat

Models with captain seat

## ■ Setting to the Long Slide Position



1. Remove the slide stoppers, then store its in the soft stopper case.

2. Pull up the horizontal position adjustment lever (side to side), then slide the seat to centre position.

3. Pull up the horizontal position adjustment lever (front to rear), then slide the seat to backward.

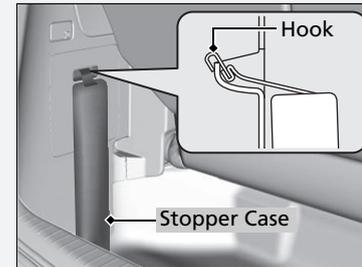
► Make sure the seats are locked securely before driving.

## ► Setting to the Long Slide Position

When not in use, store the slide stoppers in the soft stopper case that can be hooked onto the lid of the luggage area storage compartment.

### ► Luggage Area Storage Compartment

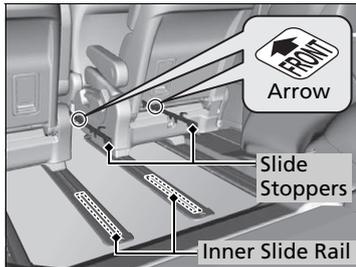
P. 236



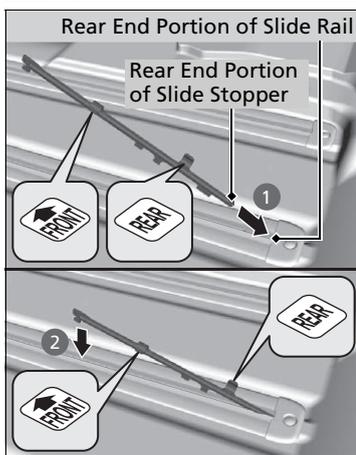
## ■ Installing the slide stoppers

Each second row seat can be moved back all the way right in front of the third row seats, causing a third row seat passenger's legs to be stuck between the seats. To prevent this, you can install a slide stopper behind the second row seat.

Make sure to install the slide stoppers when there is a third row seat passenger.

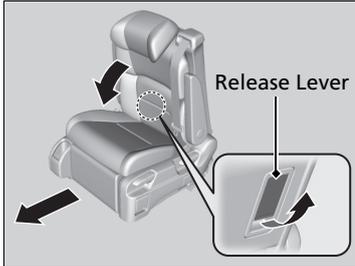
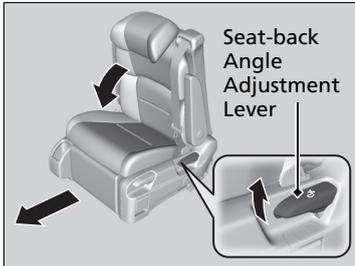


Install the slide stopper onto the inner slide rail of the second row seat with the arrow pointing towards the front of the vehicle following the procedure below.



1. Insert the rear end of the slide stopper in the rear end portion of the slide rail.
2. Lay the slide stopper on the slide rail.

### ■ Third Row Seat Access



#### Models with cradle seat

#### Models with captain seat

To get into the third row seat:

1. Pull up the seat-back angle adjustment lever on the outside of the seat bottom.
2. Tilt the seat-back forward, then move the seat forward.

To get out from the third row seat:

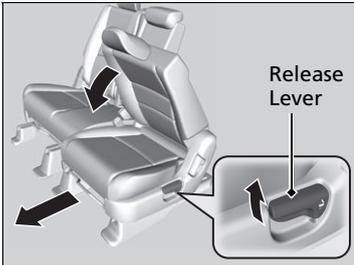
1. Pull up the release lever on the second row seat-back.
2. Tilt the seat-back forward, then move the seat forward.
  - Make sure the seat and the seat-back are locked securely before driving.

### ►► Second Row Seats

## ⚠ WARNING

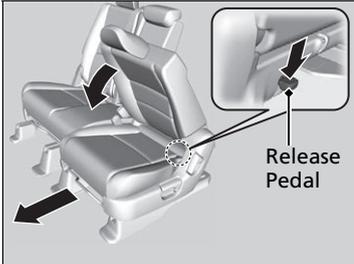
**Make sure the seat-backs are latched securely before driving.**

When you enter the third row seat, be careful not to trip over the second row seat belt. If necessary, move the seat forward after tilting the seat-back forward.



**Models with bench seat**

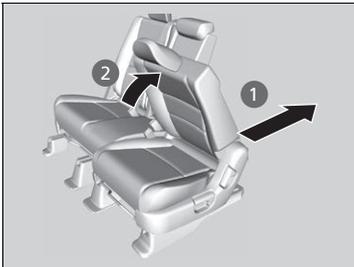
To get into the third row seat:  
Pull up on the release lever on the outside of the seat bottom to tilt the seat-back forward, then move the seat forward.



To get out from the third row seat:

Press down the release pedal on the back of the seat bottom to tilt the seat-back forward, then move the seat forward.

- Make sure the seat and the seat-back are locked securely before driving.

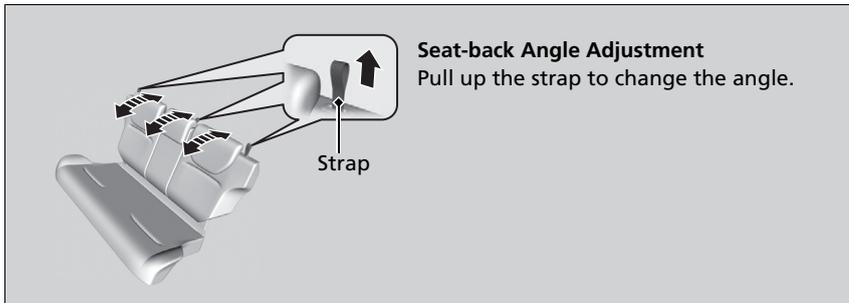


►► Second Row Seats

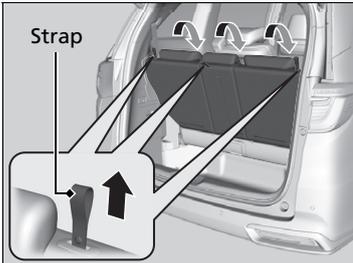
Make sure all items in the luggage area or items extending to the rear seats are properly secured. Loose items can fly forward if you have to brake hard.

## Third Row Seats

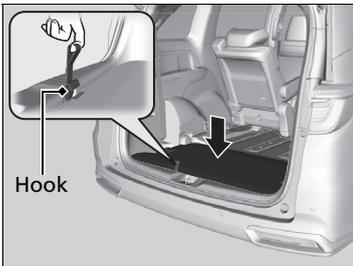
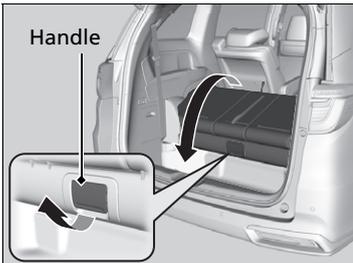
### ■ Seat-back angle adjustment



## ■ Tucking Away the Third Row Seats



1. Store the centre seat belt first. Insert a latch plate into the slot on the side of the anchor buckle.
2. Retract the seat belt into the holder on the ceiling.
3. Lower the head restraints to their lowest positions.
4. Unlock the seat-back by pulling the strap. Push the seat-back forward.
5. Pull the handle on the back of the seat cushion while you pull the entire seat towards you with the strap. Pivot the seat into the floor recess.



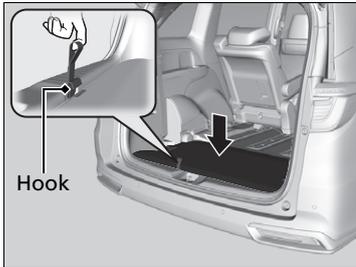
6. Pull up the strap to lock the hook securely while you push the seat.

## ▣ Tucking Away the Third Row Seats

Releasing the hook lifts up the third row seat cushions.

Do not release the hook when someone is sitting or objects are placed on the tucked away seats.

When the seats are unlocked, the seat cushions can jump up, throwing out the person or objects on the seats.

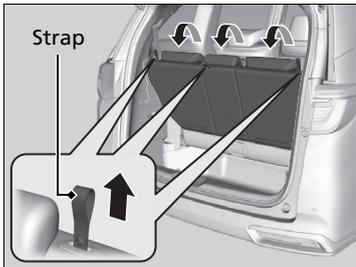


**To return the third seat to the upright position:**

**1.** Pull the seat out of the recess by pushing down the seat and pulling the strap to unlatch.



**2.** Pivot the seat forward all the way.



**3.** Pull up on the strap on the seat-back, and pull the seat-back upright.

► Make sure the seat and the seat-back are locked securely before driving.

► Tucking Away the Third Row Seats

Releasing the hook lifts up the third row seat cushions.

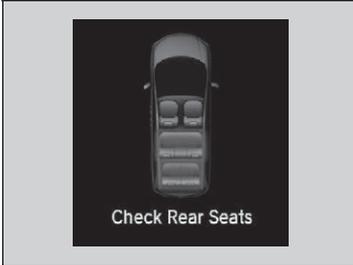
Do not release the hook when someone is sitting or objects are placed on the tucked away seats.

When the seats are unlocked, the seat cushions can jump up, throwing out the person or objects on the seats.

## Rear Seat Reminder

This feature alerts you to the possible presence of passengers or items in the second row or third row seats. It activates when the vehicle is set to VEHICLE OFF if the rear doors were opened shortly before or after the vehicle was set to ON.

A reminder appears on the driver information interface and an alert will sound when the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF.



### ⊗ Rear Seat Reminder

When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF, the reminder comes on briefly, then the function is deactivated.

The reminder will not work if the power mode has not been set to ON within 10 minutes of operating the rear doors.

The system does not detect passengers in the rear seat(s). Instead, it can detect when a rear door is opened and closed, indicating that there may be something in the rear seat(s).

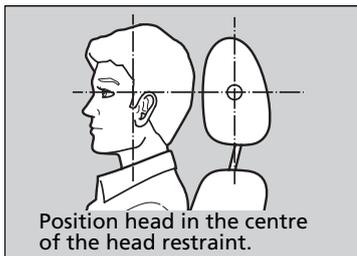
You can turn off the notification setting.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 315

## Head Restraints

Your vehicle is equipped with head restraints in all seating positions.

### ■ Adjusting the Front and Second Row Outer Head Restraint Positions



Head restraints are most effective for protection against whiplash and other rear-impact crash injuries when the centre of the back of the occupant's head rests against the centre of the restraint. The tops of the occupant's ears should be level with the centre height of the restraint.

#### ▣ Head Restraints

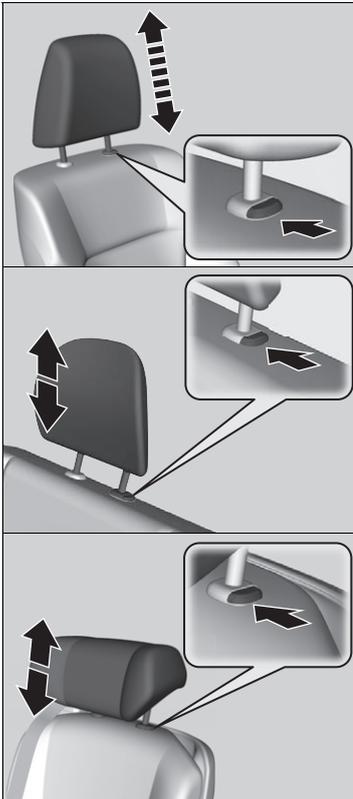
### ⚠ WARNING

Improperly positioning head restraints reduces their effectiveness and increases the likelihood of serious injury in a crash.

**Make sure head restraints are in place and positioned properly before driving.**

In order for the head restraint system to work properly:

- Do not hang any items on the head restraints, or from the restraint legs.
- Do not place any objects between an occupant and the seat-back.
- Install each restraint in its proper location.



**To raise the head restraint:**

Pull it upward.

**To lower the head restraint:**

Push it down while pressing the release button.

► Adjusting the Front and Second Row Outer Head Restraint

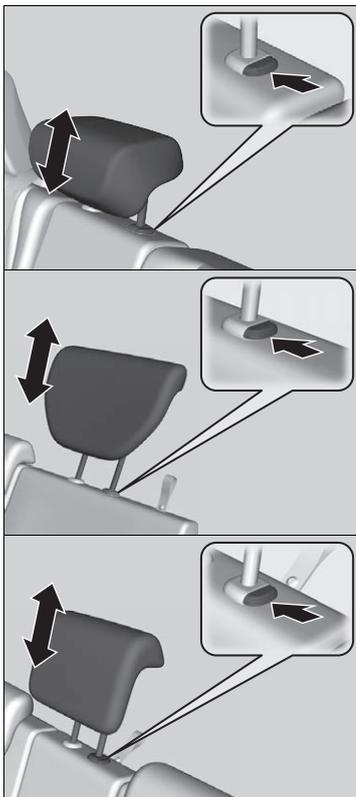
Positions

**Models with cradle seat**

**Models with captain seat**

When you use the head restraints in the second row outer seating positions, pull up the head restraints to its highest position. Do not use it in any lower position.

## ■ Changing the Second Row Centre\* and Third Row Seat Head Restraint Positions



A passenger sitting in the second row centre\* or third row seating position should adjust the height of their head restraint to an appropriate position before the vehicle begins moving.

### To raise the head restraint:

Pull it upward.

### To lower the head restraint:

Push it down while pressing the release button.

## ☒ Changing the Second Row Centre\* and Third Row Seat Head Restraint Positions

When you use the head restraints in the second row centre\* and third row seating positions, pull up the head restraints to its highest position. Do not use it in any lower position.

## ■ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

Head restraints can be removed for cleaning or repair.

### To remove a head restraint:

Pull the restraint up as far as it will go. Then push the release button, and pull the restraint up and out.

### To reinstall a head restraint:

Insert the legs back in place, then adjust the head restraint to an appropriate height while pressing the release button. Pull up on the restraint to make sure it is locked in position.

## ⌘ Removing and Reinstalling the Head Restraints

### **WARNING**

Failure to reinstall, or correctly reinstall, the head restraints can result in severe injury during a crash.

Always replace the head restraints before driving.

## Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

After all occupants have adjusted their seats and head restraints, and put on their seat belts, it is very important that they continue to sit upright, well back in their seats, with their feet on the floor, until the vehicle is safely parked and the engine is off.

Sitting improperly can increase the chance of injury during a crash. For example, if an occupant slouches, lies down, turns sideways, sits forward, leans forward or sideways, or puts one or both feet up, the chance of injury during a crash is greatly increased.

In addition, an occupant who is out of position in the front seat can be seriously or fatally injured in a crash by striking interior parts of the vehicle or being struck by an inflating front airbag.

### ► Maintain a Proper Sitting Position

#### **WARNING**

Sitting improperly or out of position can result in serious injury or death in a crash.

Always sit upright, well back in the seat, with your feet on the floor.

## Armrest

### ■ Using the Front Seat Armrest

Models without large type armrest



Pull the armrest all the way down, then pull it up to the desired angle.

Models with large type armrest

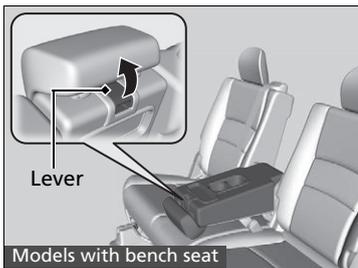


Pivot down the armrest all the way, then push it to unfold to use the armrest. Pull it up to a desired angle.

## ■ Using the Second Row Seat Armrest



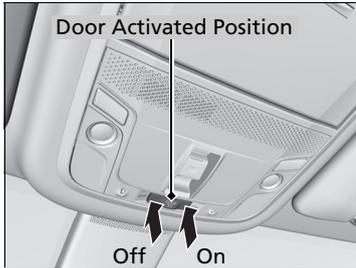
Pull the armrest all the way down, then pull it up to the desired angle.



Pull the lever upward and pivot the centre backrest down.

## Interior Lights

### Interior Light Switches



#### ■ ON

The interior lights come on regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

#### ■ Door activated

The interior lights come on in the following situations:

- When any doors are opened.
- You unlock the driver's door.
- When the power mode is set to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

#### ■ OFF

The interior lights remain off regardless of whether the doors are open or closed.

### Interior Light Switches

In the door activated position, the interior lights fade out and go off about 30 seconds after the doors are closed.

The lights go off after about 30 seconds in the following situations:

- When you unlock the driver's door but do not open it.
- When you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) but do not open a door.

You can change the interior lights dimming time.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 315

The interior lights go off immediately in the following situations:

- When you lock the driver's door.
- When you close the driver's door in ACCESSORY mode.
- When you set the power mode to ON.

To avoid draining the battery, do not leave the interior light on for an extended length of time when the engine is off.

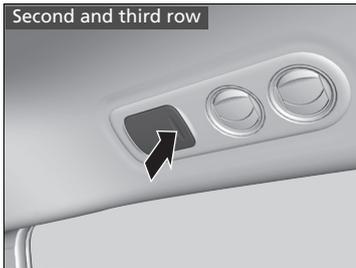
If you leave any of the doors open in VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) mode, the interior lights go off after about 15 minutes.

## ■ Map Light Switches



### ■ Front

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the  (map light) button.



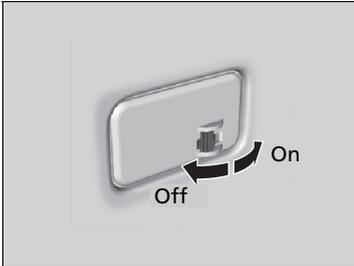
### ■ Second and third row

The map lights can be turned on and off by pressing the lenses when the front interior light switch is in the door activated position.

## ⌘ Map Light Switches

When the interior light switch is in the door activated position and any door is open, the second and third row map light will not go off when you press the lens.

## ■ Luggage Area Light and Tailgate Light Switch



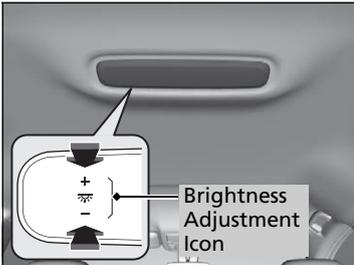
### ■ ON

The light comes on when you open the tailgate, and goes off when closed.

### ■ OFF

The light stays off with or without opening the tailgate.

## ■ Foot Light Brightness Adjustment Icon\*



When the position lights are on, the foot lights turn on. You can use the brightness adjustment icon to adjust the foot lights brightness.

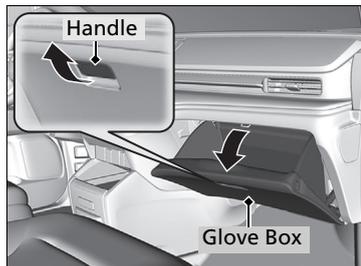
Brighten: Press  icon.

Dim: Press  icon.

\* Not available on all models

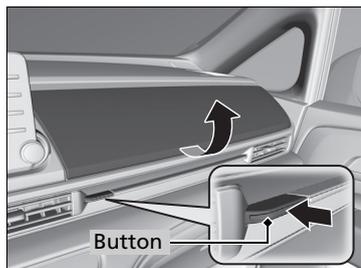
## Storage Items

### ■ Glove Box



Pull the handle to open the glove box.

### ■ Passenger's Side Upper Box



Push the button to open the upper box.

### » Storage Items

## ⚠ WARNING

An open glove box and an upper box can cause serious injury to your passenger in a crash, even if the passenger is wearing the seat belt.

Always keep the glove box and the upper box closed while driving.

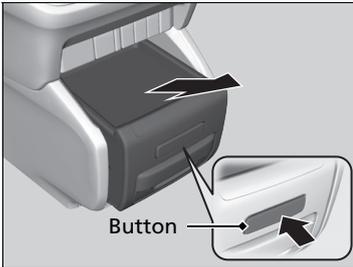
### » Passenger's Side Upper Box

The upper box light comes on when you unlock the driver's door.

You can change the upper box light dimming time by changing the interior lights dimming time.

➔ **Customized Features** P. 315

## ■ Lift Up Console



### ■ To lift up the console

1. Press the button to unlock the console.
2. Lift up the console until it locks in place.

### ■ To store the console

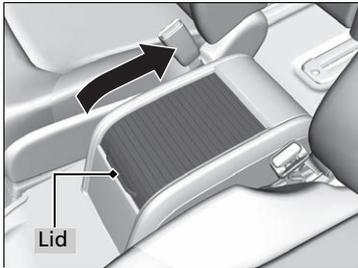
1. Press the button to unlock the console.
2. Push down the console until it locks in place.

## ☒ Lift Up Console

Use the lift up console in a locked position.

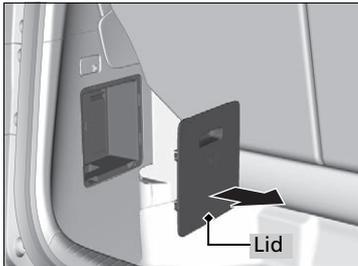
*Continued*

### ■ Console Compartment\*



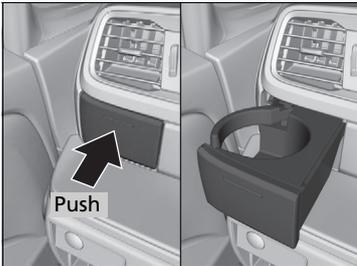
Slide the lid to open or close the console compartment.

### ■ Luggage Area Storage Compartment



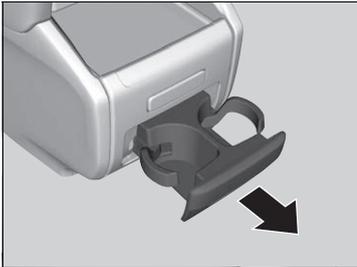
Pull the handle and remove the lid.

## ■ Beverage Holders



### ■ Driver's side beverage holder

To use the beverage holder, push and release the indent. To close, push it again until it latches.



### ■ Front panel beverage holder

To use the beverage holder, pull it towards you.



### ■ Front door beverage holders

Are located on the both of the front door side pockets.

## » Beverage Holders

### NOTICE

Spilled liquids can damage the upholstery, carpeting, and electrical components in the interior.

Be careful when you are using the beverage holders. Hot liquid can scald you.



Models with bench seat



Models with captain seat



### ■ Slide door beverage holders

Are located on the both of the sliding doors.

### ■ Second row seat beverage holders

To use the beverage holder, fold the seat-back.

#### ➤ Using the Second Row Seat Armrest

P. 230

The beverage holders are located at the foot of the both second row seats.

### ➤ Second row seat beverage holders

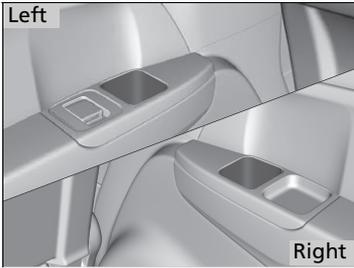
#### Models with captain seat

Do not put a tall item (larger than a 500 mL plastic bottle, tumbler, flask, mug, etc.) that sticks out from the beverage holder.

Such items in the holder may prevent the seat from smoothly sliding and cause damage to the seat.

When sliding the seat, also make sure there are no objects around it.

When an item such as a loosely lidded cup that sticks out is put in the holder, it may become unstable and the lid may come off.



■ Third row seat beverage holders

## ■ Coat Hook

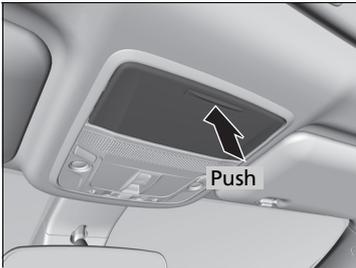


There is a coat hook on the grab handle above the second row seat on the driver side. Pull it down to use it.

## ☒ Coat Hook

The coat hook is not designed for large or heavy items.

## ■ Sunglasses Holder



To open the sunglasses holder, push and release the indent. To close, push it again until it latches.

You can store eyeglasses and other small items in this holder.



### ■ Conversation mirror\*

The sunglasses holder comes with a mirror. Open the sunglasses holder fully, then push it back to the first detent.

You can use the mirror to view the rear seats.

## ☒ Sunglasses Holder

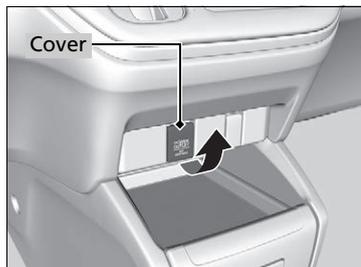
Keep the holder closed while driving except when accessing stored items.

\* Not available on all models

## Other Interior Convenience Items

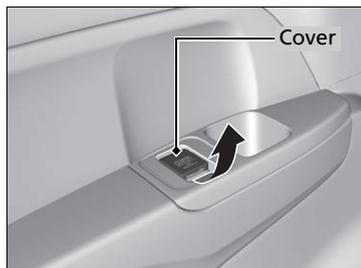
### ■ Accessory Power Sockets

The accessory power sockets can be used when the power mode is in ACCESSORY or ON.



#### ■ Accessory power socket (console panel)

Open the cover to use it.



#### ■ Accessory power socket (third row seat)

Open the cover to use it.

### ▶▶ Accessory Power Sockets

#### NOTICE

Do not insert an automotive type cigarette lighter element. This can overheat the power socket.

The accessory power socket is designed to supply power for 12-volt DC accessories that are rated 180 watts (15 amps) or less.

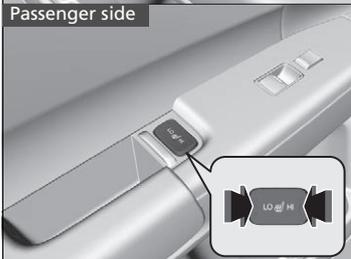
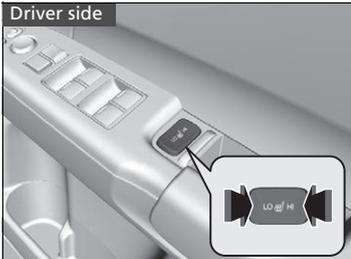
To prevent battery drain, only use the accessory power socket with the engine running.

When the accessory power socket is not in use, close the cover to prevent any small foreign objects from getting into the accessory power socket.

## ■ Seat Heaters\*



The power mode must be in ON to use the seat heaters.



The indicator for your setting comes on while the seat heater is in use. Press the button on the opposite side to turn the heater off. The indicator goes off.

\* Not available on all models

## ▣ Seat Heaters\*

### ▲ WARNING

Heat induced burns are possible when using seat heaters.

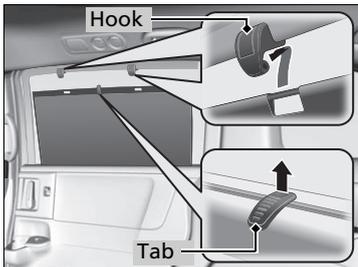
Persons with a diminished ability to sense temperature (e.g., persons with diabetes, lower-limb nerve damage, or paralysis) or with sensitive skin should not use seat heaters.

Do not use the seat heaters even in **LO** when the engine is off. Under such conditions, the battery may be weakened, making the engine difficult to start.

In the **LO** setting, the heater runs continuously and does not automatically turn off.

Continued

### ■ Integrated Sunshades\*



Pull the tab and roll up the sunshade all the way. Use the hooks to hang it.

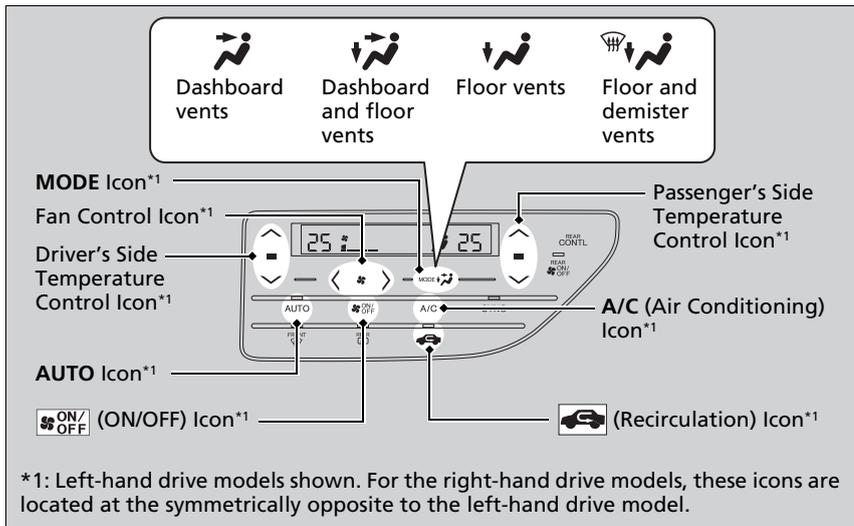
### ▣ Integrated Sunshades\*

Use the sunshades only when the windows are fully closed. Using the shade while a window is open can unhook and blow off the shade, hitting and hurting anyone sitting near the window.

## Using Automatic Climate Control

The automatic climate control system maintains the interior temperature you select. The system also selects the proper mix of heated or cooled air that raises or lowers the interior temperature to your preference as quickly as possible.

### Models with rear climate control system



Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Select the **AUTO** icon.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the driver's side temperature control icon.
3. Select the **ON/OFF** (ON/OFF) icon to cancel.

### Using Automatic Climate Control

If any icons are selected while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the icon that was selected will take priority.

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the icon that was selected will be controlled automatically.

### Models with Auto Idle Stop

During idle-stops, air-conditioning is suspended, and only the blower remains active. If you do not want air-conditioning suspended, press the Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button to cancel idle-stop.

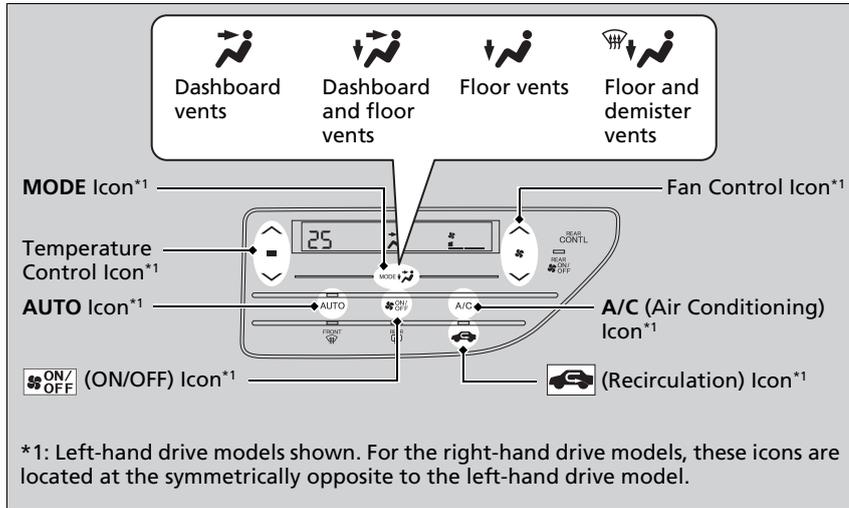
### All models

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** icon is selected.

If the interior is very warm, you can cool it down more rapidly by partially opening the windows, turning the system on auto, and setting the temperature to low. Change the fresh air mode to recirculation mode until the temperature cools down.

When you set the temperature to the lower or upper limit, **Lo** or **Hi** is displayed.

Models with rear cooling



Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Select the **AUTO** icon.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the temperature control icon.
3. Select the (on/off) icon to cancel.

■ **Switching between the recirculation and fresh air modes**

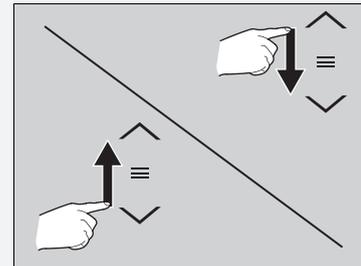
Select the icon and switch the mode depending on environmental conditions. Recirculation mode (indicator on): Recirculates air from the vehicle's interior through the system.

Fresh air mode (indicator off): Maintains outside ventilation. Keep the system in fresh air mode in normal situations.

► Using Automatic Climate Control

Selecting the icon switches the climate control system between on and off. When turned on, the system returns to your last selection.

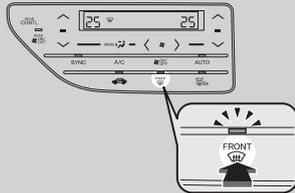
You can raise or lower the temperature or fan speed setting flicking either control icon.



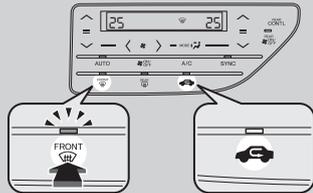
While ECON mode is active, the climate control system may have reduced cooling performance.

## Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

### Right-hand drive type



### Left-hand drive type



### Except Middle Eastern models

Selecting the  icon turns the air conditioner system on. Press the  icon (indicator off).

### Middle Eastern models

Selecting the  icon turns the air conditioner system on and automatically switch the system to fresh air mode.

### All models

Select the  icon again to turn off, the system returns to the previous settings.

## Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows

**For your safety, make sure you have a clear view through all the windows before driving.**

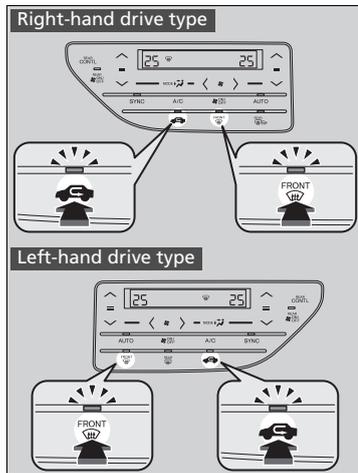
Do not set the temperature near the upper or lower limit.

When cold air hits the windscreen, the outside of the windscreen may fog up.

### Models with Auto Idle Stop

If you select the  icon during Auto Idle Stop, the engine restarts automatically.

### ■ To rapidly defrost the windows



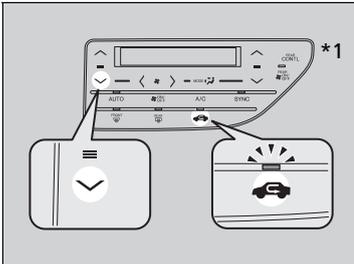
1. Select the  icon.
2. Select the  icon.

### ►► To rapidly defrost the windows

After defrosting the windows, switch over to fresh air mode. If you keep the system in recirculation mode, the windows may fog up from humidity. This impedes visibility.

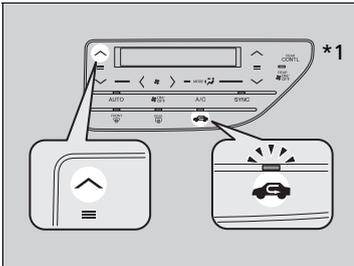
## ■ Turning On and Off the Touch Panel Beep

You hear the beep when operating the climate control system on the touch panel. This can be turned on and off.



### To turn off the beep:

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Touch the ▾ of the temperature control icon five times while pressing and holding the .
3. Release the , after -- blinks five times and **OF** is displayed.



### To turn on the beep:

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Touch the ▲ of the temperature control icon five times while pressing and holding the .
3. Release the , after **OF** blinks five times and -- is displayed.

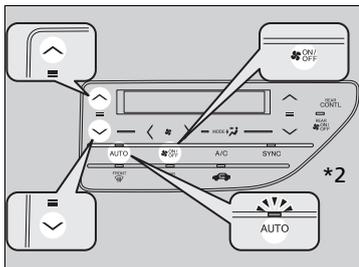
## ☒ Turning On and Off the Touch Panel Beep

If you touch any other icons during this procedure, the setting may fail. In this case, once you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), then follow this procedure again.

\*1: Left-hand drive models shown. For the right-hand drive models, these icons are located at the symmetrically opposite to the left-hand drive model.

## ■ Touch Panel Sensitivity Setting

You can set the level of sensitivity of the touch panel to high, normal, or low.



1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press and hold the **AUTO** icon, then press any of the following icons five times to set the level.

- : High\*<sup>1</sup> (**Hi**)
  - ▶ Previous setting blinks five times and **Hi** will be displayed in the temperature display.
- : Normal (--)  
 ▶ Previous setting blinks five times and -- will be displayed in the temperature display.
- : Low (**Lo**)
  - ▶ Previous setting blinks five times and **Lo** will be displayed in the temperature display.

3. Release your finger from **AUTO** icon.

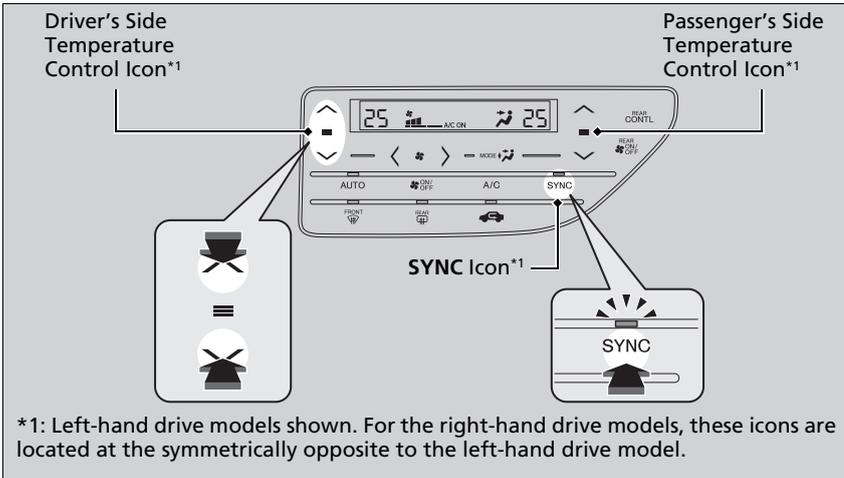
\*1 : Default Setting

\*2 : Left-hand drive models shown. For the right-hand drive models, these icons are located at the symmetrically opposite to the left-hand drive model.

## ▶▶ Touch Panel Sensitivity Setting

If you touch any other icons during this procedure, the setting may fail. In this case, once you set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), then follow this procedure again.

## ■ Synchronization Mode\*



You can set the temperature synchronously for the driver's side and the passenger's side in synchronization mode.

1. Select the **SYNC** icon.
  - The system switches to synchronization mode.
2. Adjust the temperature using the driver's side temperature control icon.

Select the **SYNC** icon or change the passenger's side temperature setting to return to dual mode.

\* Not available on all models

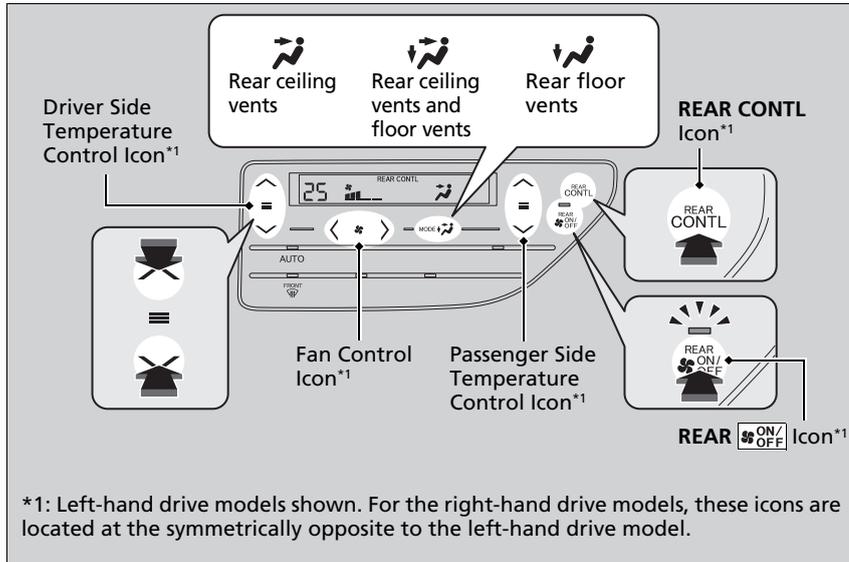
## ☒ Synchronization Mode\*

When you press the  button, the system changes to synchronization mode.

When the system is in dual mode, the driver's side temperature and the passenger's side temperature can be set separately.

## Rear Climate Control System\*

### ■ Using the Rear Climate Control System From the Front Panel



Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Select the **REAR CONTL** icon.
2. Adjust the temperature using the temperature control icon.
3. Select the **REAR**  icon to cancel.

### ►► Using the Rear Climate Control System From the Front Panel

The rear climate control system can be used as a heater when the **A/C** icon on the front control panel is off.

The display goes back to the previous screen several seconds later after you have selected **REAR CONTL**. If you want to go back to the previous screen before the time elapses, select **REAR CONTL** again.

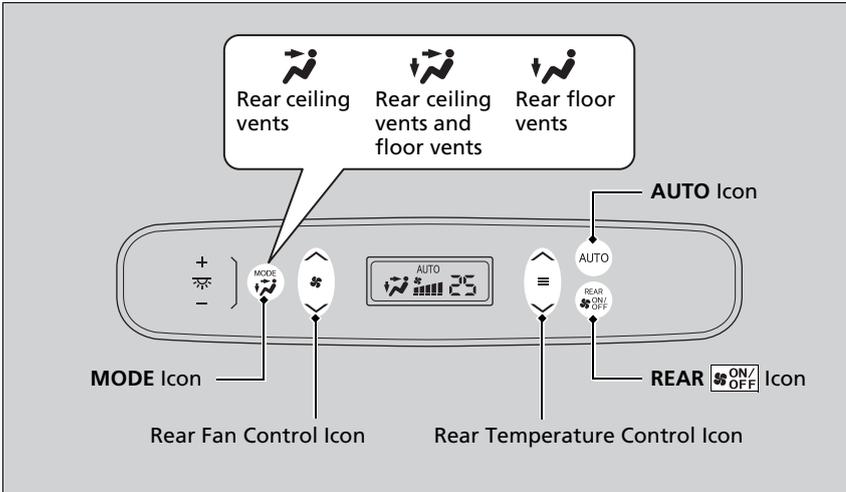
#### Models with Auto Idle Stop

When the rear fan is set to maximum speed, Auto Idle Stop does not activate.

- Auto Idle Stop may not activate under other conditions when the rear climate control system is in use.

## ■ Using the Rear Climate Control System From the Rear Panel

Models with rear touch panel type



Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Select the **AUTO** icon.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the rear temperature control icon.
3. To turn off the rear climate control system, select the **REAR ON/OFF** icon.

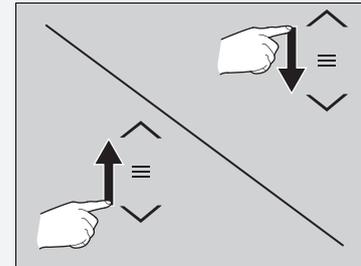
### ▣ Using the Rear Climate Control System From the Rear Panel

If any icons are selected while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the icon that was selected will take priority.

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the icon that was selected will be controlled automatically.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** icon is selected.

You can raise or lower the temperature or fan speed setting flicking either control icon.

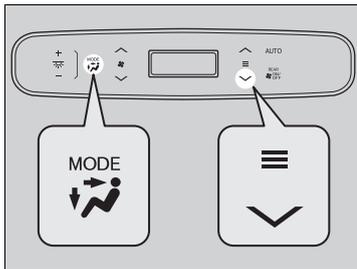


Models with rear touch panel type

## ■ Turning the Rear Panel Beep On and Off

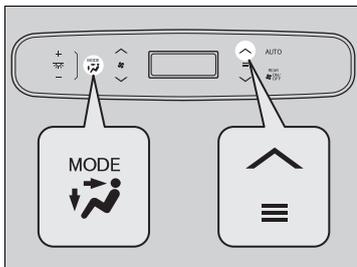
You can select whether to sound a beep every time you operate the rear climate control using the rear panel.

To turn off the sound:



1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. While the **MODE** icon pressed, press  five times.
3. After - - blinks five times in the temperature display, it changes to **OF**.  
► Release your finger from the **MODE** icon.

To turn back the sound on again:

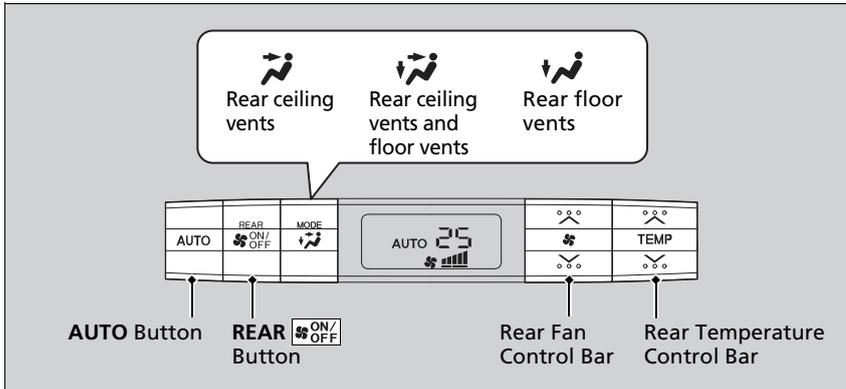


1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. While the **MODE** icon pressed, press  five times.
3. After **OF** blinks five times in the temperature display, it changes to - -.  
► Release your finger from the **MODE** icon.

### ►► Turning the Rear Panel Beep On and Off

Do not press any other icon while changing the beep setting. If you cannot turn on or off the setting after going through the procedure, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK), then go over again.

Models without rear touch panel type



Use the system when the engine is running.

1. Press the **AUTO** button.
2. Adjust the interior temperature using the rear temperature control bar.
3. To turn off the rear climate control system, press the **REAR ON/OFF** button.

Using the Rear Climate Control System From the Rear Panel

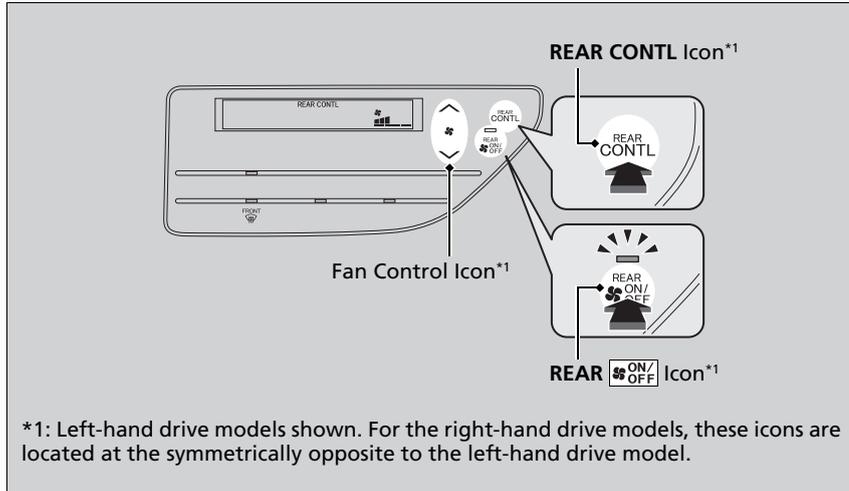
If any buttons/bars are pressed while using the climate control system in auto, the function of the button that was pressed will take priority.

The **AUTO** indicator will go off, but functions unrelated to the button/bar that was pressed will be controlled automatically.

To prevent cold air from blowing in from outside, the fan may not start immediately when the **AUTO** button is pressed.

## Rear Cooling\*

### ■ Using the Rear Cooling From the Front Panel



Operate cooling when the engine is running.

1. Select the **REAR CONTL** icon.
2. Adjust the fan speed using the fan control icon.
3. Select the **REAR ** icon to cancel.

### ►► Using the Rear Cooling From the Front Panel

Only fan speed can be adjusted when the **A/C** icon on the front control panel is off.

You can only use air vents when the **A/C** icon at the front is off.

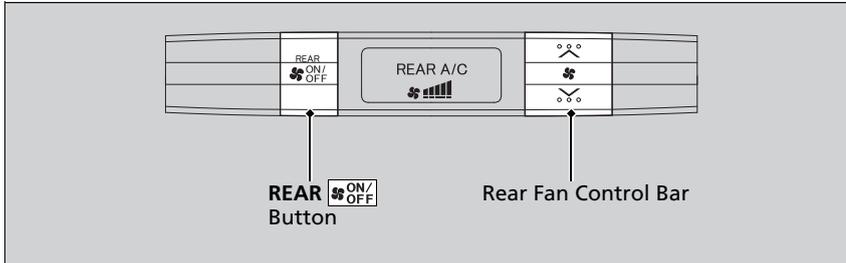
The display goes back to the previous screen several seconds later after you have selected **REAR CONTL**. If you want to go back to the previous screen before the time elapses, select **REAR CONTL** again.

#### Models with Auto Idle Stop

When the rear fan is set to maximum speed, Auto Idle Stop does not activate.

► Auto Idle Stop may not activate under other conditions when the rear cooling is in use.

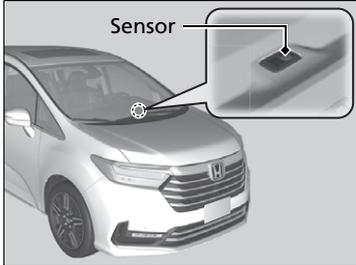
## ■ Using the Rear Cooling From the Rear Panel



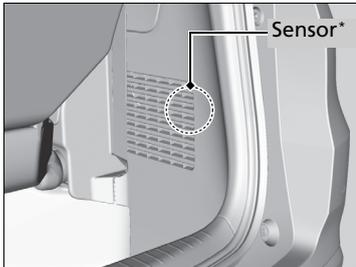
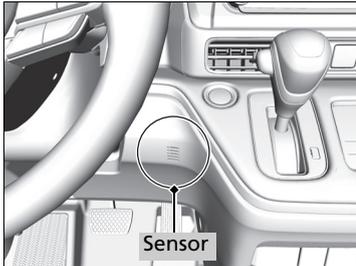
Operate cooling when the engine is running.

1. Press the **REAR**  button.
2. Adjust the fan speed using the rear fan control bar.
3. Press the **REAR**  button to cancel.

## Automatic Climate Control Sensors



The automatic climate control system is equipped with sensors. Do not cover or spill any liquid on them.



# Features

This chapter describes how to operate technology features.

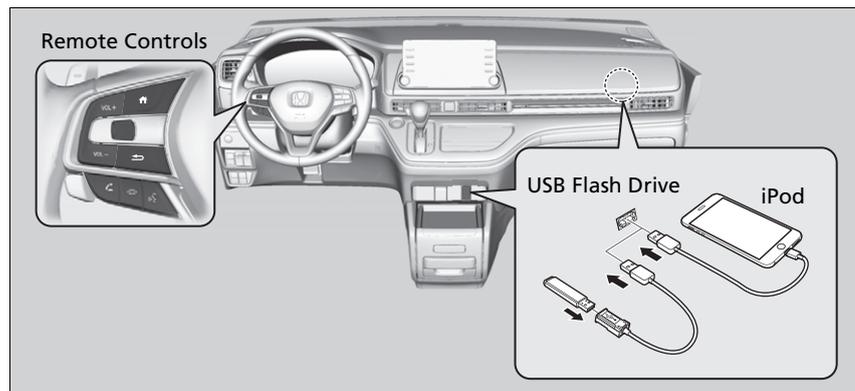
<b>Audio System</b>	
About Your Audio System.....	260
USB Ports.....	261
Audio Remote Controls.....	263
<b>Audio System Basic Operation</b> .....	266
Audio/Information Screen .....	268
Adjusting the Sound .....	280
Display Setup .....	281
Playing AM/FM Radio.....	283
Playing an iPod .....	286
Playing a USB Flash Drive .....	289
Playing <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio.....	292
Smartphone Connection* .....	294
Wi-Fi Connection.....	297
Siri Eyes Free.....	299
Apple CarPlay.....	300
Android Auto .....	305
<b>Audio Error Messages</b> .....	309
<b>General Information on the Audio System</b> .....	311
<b>Customized Features</b> .....	315
<b>Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System</b> .....	335

\* Not available on all models

## About Your Audio System

The audio system features AM/FM radio. It can also play USB flash drives, and iPod, iPhone and *Bluetooth*® devices.

You can operate the audio system from the buttons and knobs on the panel, the remote controls on the steering wheel, or the icons on the touchscreen interface.

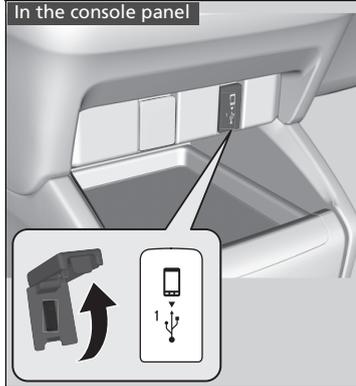


### About Your Audio System

iPod, iPhone and iTunes are trademarks of Apple Inc.

## USB Ports

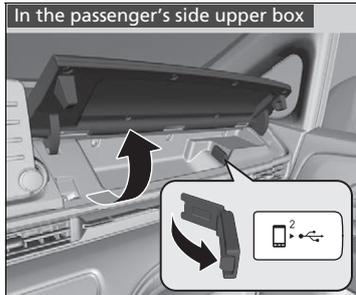
Install the device USB connector or the USB flash drive to the USB port.



### ■ In the console panel

The USB port (2.5A) is for charging devices, playing audio files and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

- ▶ To prevent any potential issues, be sure to use an Apple MFi Certified Lightning Connector for Apple CarPlay, and for Android Auto, the USB cables should be certified by USB-IF to be compliant with USB 2.0 Standard.



### ■ In the passenger's side upper box

The USB port (2.5A) is for charging devices, playing audio files and connecting compatible phones with Apple CarPlay or Android Auto.

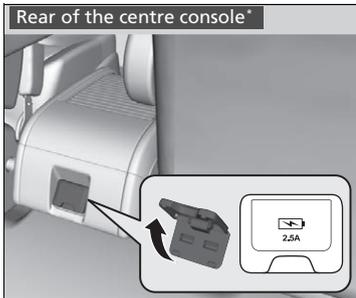
### ⊞ USB Ports

- Do not leave the iPod or USB flash drive in the vehicle. Direct sunlight and high temperatures may damage it.
- We recommend using an extension cable with the USB port.
- Do not connect the iPod or USB flash drive using a hub.
- Do not use a device such as a card reader or hard disk drive, as the device or your files may be damaged.
- We recommend backing up your data before using the device in your vehicle.
- Displayed messages may vary depending on the device model and software version.

### USB charge

The USB port can supply up to 2.5A of power. It does not output 2.5A unless the device requests. For amperage details, read the operating manual of the device that needs to be charged. Set the power mode to ACCESSORY or ON first.

Under certain conditions, a device connected to the port may generate noise in the radio you are listening to.

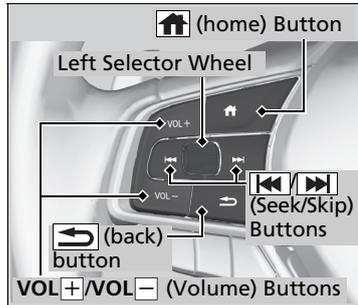


■ **Rear of the centre console\***

The USB ports (2.5A) are only for charging devices.

## Audio Remote Controls

Allow you to operate the audio system while driving. The information is shown on the driver information interface.



### **VOL+**/**VOL-** (Volume) Buttons

**Press VOL+**: To increase the volume.

**Press VOL-**: To decrease the volume.

### **Left Selector Wheel**

- When selecting the audio mode  
Press the **(home) Button**, then roll up or down to select **Audio** on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

### ▶▶ Audio Remote Controls

Some modes appear only when an appropriate device or medium is used.

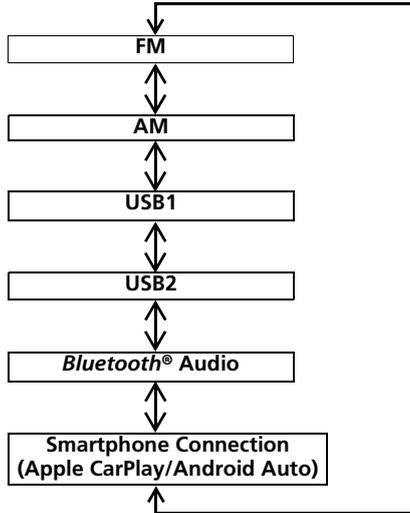
Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some functions may not be operated.

Press the **(back) button** for the driver information interface to go back to the previous screen or cancel a command.

Press the **(home) button** to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

### Roll up or down:

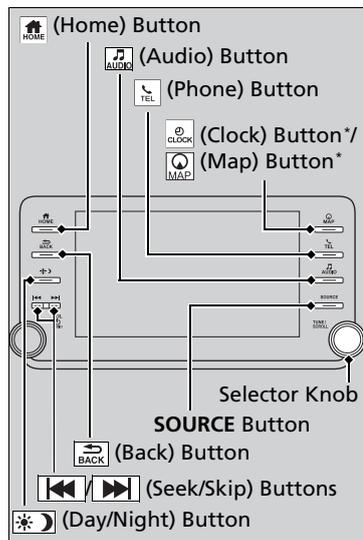
To cycle through the audio modes, roll up or down and then press the left selector wheel:



### (Seek/Skip) Buttons

- When listening to the radio
  - Press **: To select the next preset radio station.
  - Press **: To select the previous preset radio station.
  - Press and hold **: To select the next strong station.
  - Press and hold **: To select the previous strong station.
- When listening to an iPod, USB flash drive, or *Bluetooth*® Audio, or Smartphone Connection
  - Press **: To skip to the next song.
  - Press **: To go back to the beginning of the current or previous song.
- When listening to a USB flash drive
  - Press and hold **: To skip to the next folder.
  - Press and hold **: To go back to the previous folder.

To use the audio system function, the power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON.



**(Home) Button:** Press to go to the home screen.

**Switching the Display** P. 268

**(Back) Button:** Press to go back to the previous display when it is displayed.

**(Seek/Skip) Buttons:** Press to change station, song or file.

**(Clock) Button\*:** Press to display the clock screen.

**(Map) Button\*:** Press to display the map screen.

**(Phone) Button:** Press to display the phone screen.

**(Audio) Button:** Press to display the current audio information.

**SOURCE Button:** Press to display the source select screen.

**Selector Knob:** Rotate left or right to scroll through the available choices.

Press to set your selection.

## Audio System Basic Operation

These indications are used to show how to operate the Selector Knob.

Rotate to select.

Press to enter.

### Selector Knob

When the list is not displayed, songs, frequency, etc. can be changed.

While connected to Apple CarPlay, it changes as follows:

- Pressing the Phone Button, display the Apple CarPlay phone screen.
- Pressing the Audio Button, display the Apple CarPlay audio screen.



 **(Day/Night) Button:** Press to change the audio/information screen brightness. Press  once and select  or  to make an adjustment.

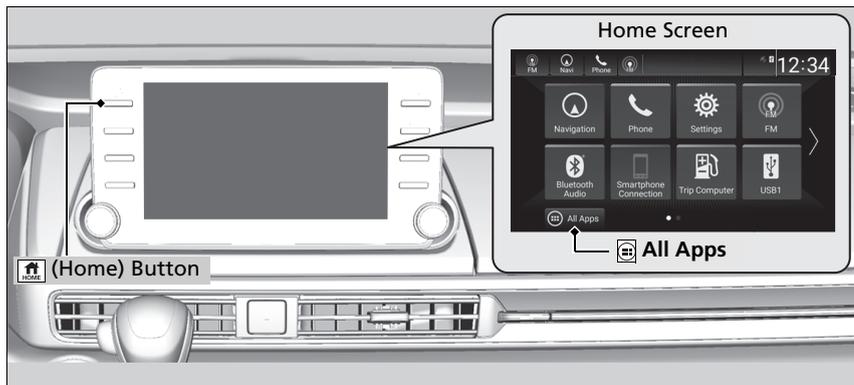
- ▶ Each time you press , the mode switches among the daytime mode, nighttime mode and off mode.

## Audio/Information Screen

Displays the audio status and wallpaper\*. From this display, you can go to various setup options.

### ■ Switching the Display

#### ■ Using the audio/information screen



Press the  button to go to the home screen.

Select the following icons on the home screen or after selecting  **All Apps**.

#### ■ Phone

Displays the HFT information.

▶ **Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System** P. 335

### ▶▶ Audio/Information Screen

#### Touchscreen Operation

- Use simple gestures - including touching, swiping, and scrolling - to operate certain audio functions.
- Some items may be greyed out during driving to reduce the potential for distraction.
- You can select them when the vehicle is stopped.
- Wearing gloves may limit or prevent touchscreen response.

You can change the touchscreen sensitivity setting.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 315

## ■ Trip Computer

Displays the trip computer information.

- **Current Drive** tab: Displays the current trip information.
- **Trip A/Trip B** tab: Displays information for the current and three previous drives.  
The information is stored every time you reset Trip A/B.  
To reset the Trip A/B, select **Settings**, then select **Delete Trip History**.  
To change the setting of how to reset Trip A/B, select **Settings**, then select **“Trip A” Reset Timing** or **“Trip B” Reset Timing**.

## ■ Clock

Displays the clock.

## ■ FM/AM/USB1/USB2/Bluetooth Audio

Displays the audio information for each.

## ■ Settings

Enters the customizing menu screen.

- ☒ **Customized Features** P. 315

## ■ Navigation\*

Displays the navigation screen.

- ☒ **Refer to the Navigation System Manual**

### ■ **Apple CarPlay/Android Auto**

Displays the **Apple CarPlay** or **Android Auto** screen.

➤ **Apple CarPlay** P. 300

➤ **Android Auto** P. 305

### ■ **Smartphone Connection\***

Connects with your smartphone\*<sup>1</sup> and allows some apps on your smartphone to be used on the audio system.

### ■ **Compass\***

Displays the compass screen.

### ■ **TA\***

Turns on and off the traffic information.

### ■ **Camera\***

Displays the multi-view camera system screen.

➤ **Multi-View Camera\*** P. 454

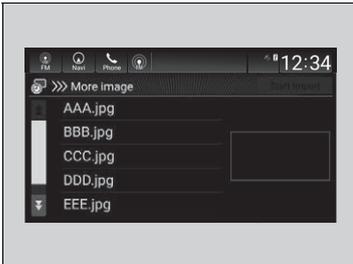
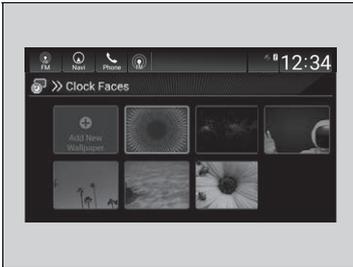
\*1: Available on specific phones only. Ask a dealer for compatible phones for feature details.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Wallpaper Setup\*

You can change, store, and delete the wallpaper on the audio/information screen.

### ■ Import wallpaper



1. Connect the USB flash drive to the USB port in the console panel or passenger's side upper box.

▶ **USB Ports** P. 261

2. Select **Clock**.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Clock Faces**.
5. Select **Add New Wallpaper**.
  - ▶ The **Searching...** screen is displayed.
6. Import a desired picture.
  - ▶ Multiple pictures can be imported at the same time.
7. Select **Start Import**.
  - ▶ The display will return to the **Clock Faces** screen.

## ▶▶ Wallpaper Setup\*

The wallpaper you set up on **Clock Faces** cannot be displayed on the driver information interface.

- When importing wallpaper files, the image must be in the USB flash drive's root directory. Images in a folder cannot be imported.
- The file name must be less than 64 bytes.
- The file format of the image that can be imported is BMP (bmp) or JPEG (jpg).
- If the USB flash drive does not have any pictures, the **No files detected** message appears.
- The individual file size limit is 2 MB.
- Up to five pictures can be imported.
- The maximum image size is 1,920 × 936 pixels. If the image size is less the image is displayed in the middle of the screen with the extra area appearing in black.

### ■ Select wallpaper

1. Select **Clock**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Clock Faces**.
4. Select a desired wallpaper.
5. Select **Set**.
  - ▶ The display will return to the **Clock Faces** screen.

### ■ To view wallpaper once it is set

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Clock**.

### ■ Delete wallpaper

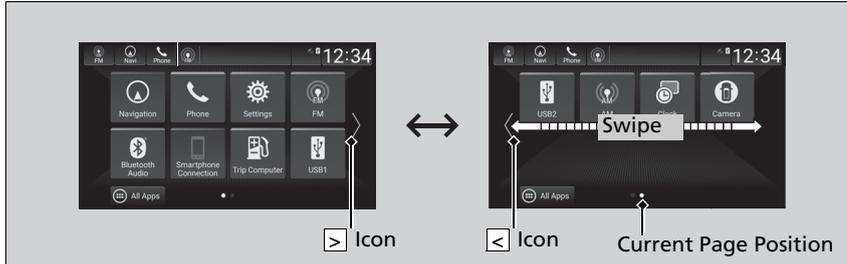
1. Select **Clock**.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Clock Faces**.
4. Select a desired wallpaper.
5. Select **Delete**.
6. Select **Yes**.
  - ▶ The display will return to the **Clock Faces** screen.

### ⌘ Wallpaper Setup\*

You cannot delete the initially imported wallpapers.

## ■ Home Screen

### ■ To change to a next screen



Selecting  or , or swiping the screen left or right changes to the next screen.

## ▶▶ Home Screen

The home screen has 2 pages. You can add up to 7 pages.

Press the  button to go directly back to the first page of the home screen from any page.

## ■ To add app icons on the home screen

App icons can be added on the home screen.



1. Press the  button.
2. Select and hold the home screen.
3. Select **Add**.
4. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
5. Select **Done**.
  - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

## ▶▶ To add app icons on the home screen

You can add app icons by the following procedure.

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **All Apps**.
3. Select **Customise**.
4. Select **Add**.
5. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
6. Select **Done**.
  - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

Pre-installed apps may not start up normally. If this occurs, you need to reset the system.

▶ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 334

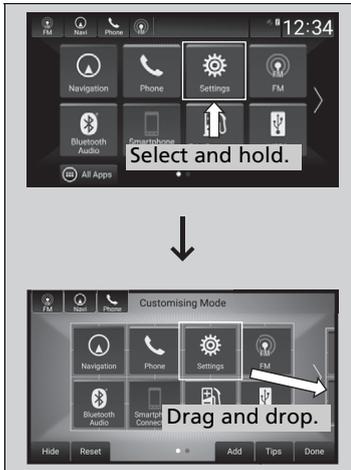
If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it may reset all the settings to their factory default.

▶ **Defaulting All the Settings** P. 334

In case those apps still do not startup normally even after **Factory Data Reset**, contact your dealer.

## ■ To move icons on the home screen

You can change location on the home screen.



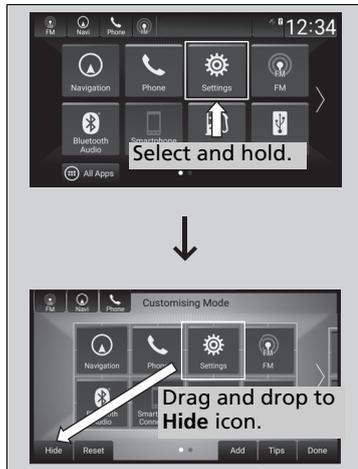
1. Select and hold an icon.
  - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
2. Drag and drop the icon to where you want it to be.
3. Select **Done**.
  - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

### ▶▶ To move icons on the home screen

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

### ■ To remove icons on the home screen

You can delete the icons on the home screen.



1. Select and hold an icon.
  - ▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.
2. Drag and drop the icon you want to remove to the **Hide** icon.
  - ▶ The icon is removed from the home screen.
3. Select **Done**.
  - ▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

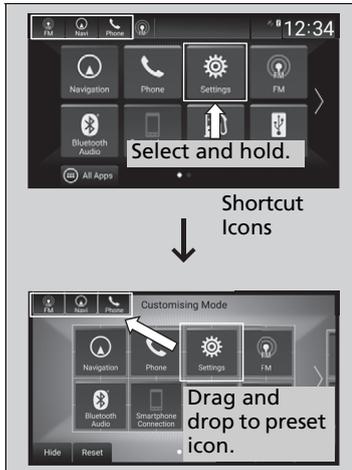
### ▶▶ To remove icons on the home screen

Apps will not be deleted by deleting the icon on the home screen.

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

## ■ To shortcut icons on the home screen

You can store up to three icons on the upper left of the home screen.



1. Select and hold an icon.

▶ The screen switches to the customization screen.

2. Drag and drop the icon you want to store to the upper right\*1 or left\*2 of the home screen.

▶ The icon is shortcut.

3. Select **Done**.

▶ The screen will return to the home screen.

### ▶▶ To shortcut icons on the home screen

Select **Tips** to show tips. To hide them, select it again.

\*1: Right-hand drive models

\*2: Left-hand drive models

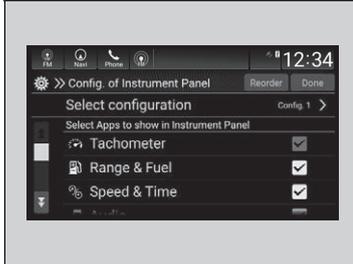
## ■ Status Area



1. Select the system status icon.
  - ▶ The status area appears.
2. Select an item to see the details.
3. Press the  button or select the system status icon to close the area.

## ■ Customizing the Meter

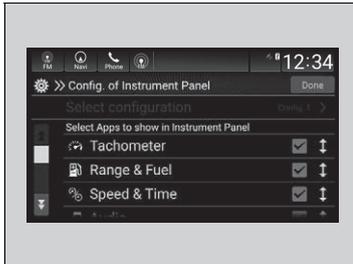
You can edit, show, or hide the meter contents on the driver information interface.



1. Press the button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Config. of Instrument Panel**.
5. Select the content you wish to show or hide.
  - ▶ The checked items are displayed on the driver information interface.
6. Select **Done**.

## ■ Editing order

To change the order of the contents on the driver information interface, first select:

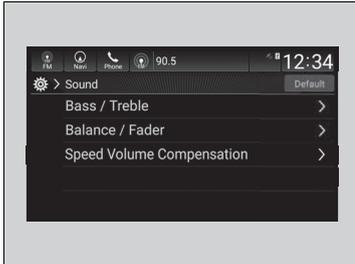
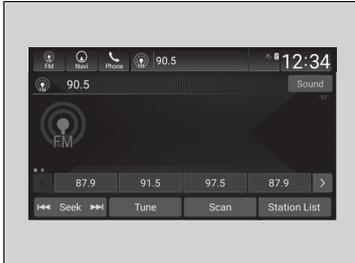


1. Press the button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Config. of Instrument Panel**.
5. Select **Reorder**.
6. Select and hold the contents you want to move.
7. Drag and drop the contents to where you want it to be.
8. Select **Done**.

## ▶▶ Customizing the Meter

You can store up to three customized configurations. To select or customize a configuration, select **Select configuration**.

## Adjusting the Sound



1. Press the  button.
2. Select an audio source icon.
3. Select **Sound**.
4. Select the setting you want.
5. Select **Save**.

Select an item from the following choices:

- **Bass / Treble:** Treble, Midrange, Bass
- **Balance / Fader:** Balance, Fader
- **Speed Volume Compensation:** Speed Volume Compensation (SVC)

### ▶▶ Adjusting the Sound

The SVC adjusts the volume level based on the vehicle speed. As you go faster, audio volume increases. As you slow down, audio volume decreases.

You can also adjust the sound the following procedure.

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Sound**.

To reset each setting for **Bass / Treble**, **Balance / Fader**, and **Speed Volume Compensation**, select **Default**.

## Display Setup

You can change the brightness of the audio/information screen.

### Changing the Screen Brightness



1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Display**.
4. Select **Day Mode** or **Night Mode**.
5. Select the setting you want.
6. Select **Save**.

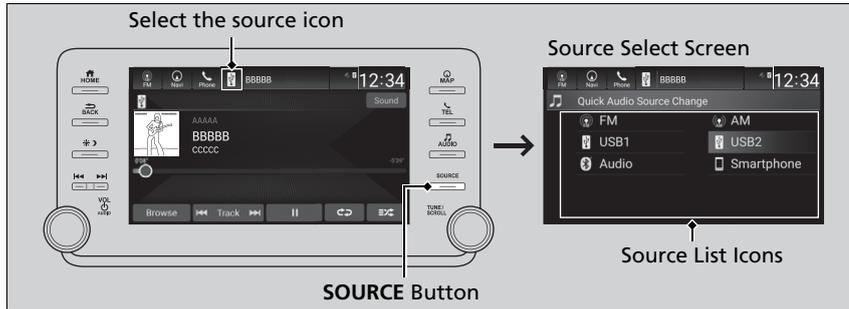
### Changing the Screen Brightness

You can change the **Contrast** and **Black Level** settings in the same manner.

To reset the settings, select **Default**.

*Continued*

## ■ Selecting an Audio Source

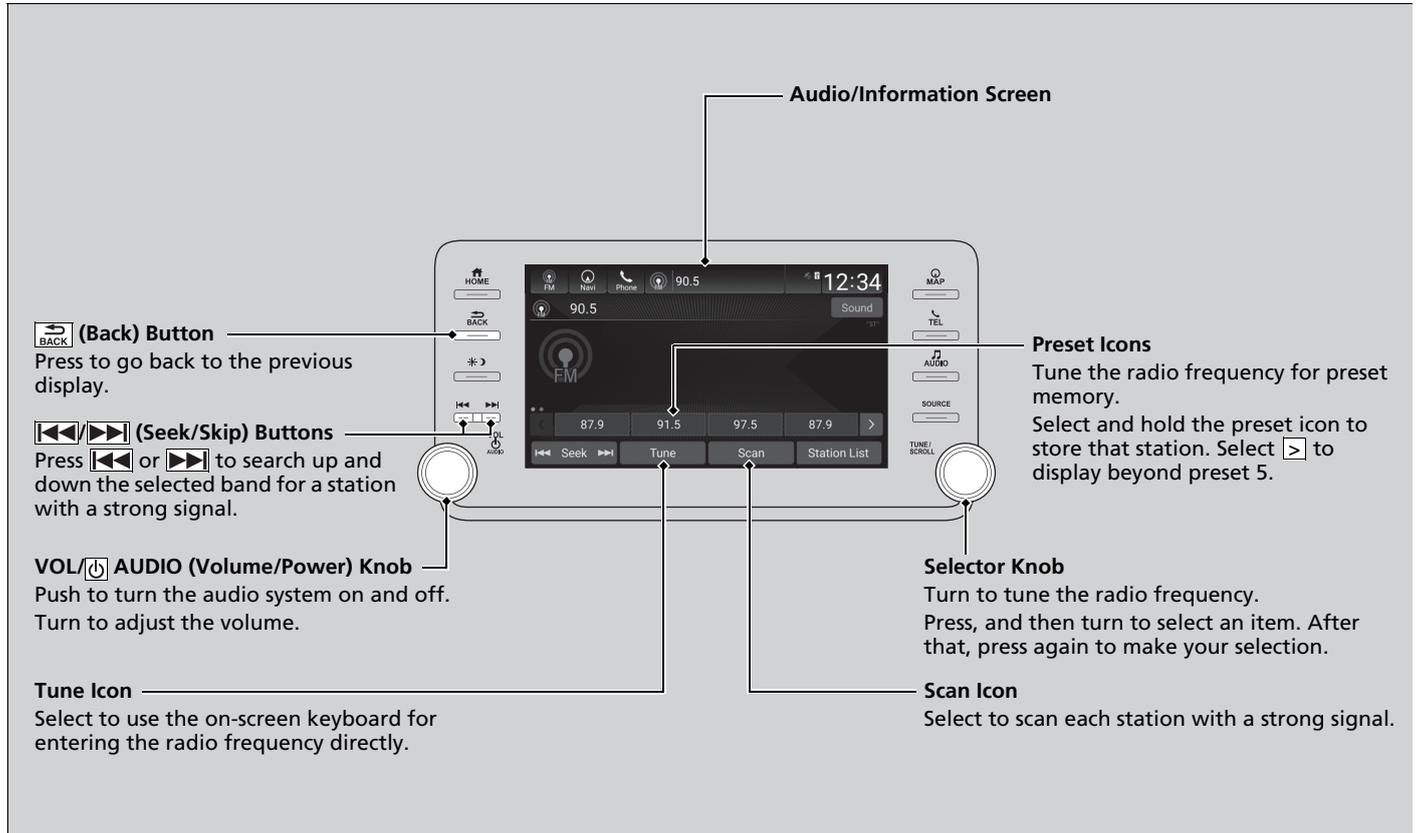


Select the current source icon or press the **SOURCE** button, then select an icon on the source list to switch the audio source.

## ■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

## Playing AM/FM Radio



## ■ Preset Memory

To store a station:

1. Tune to the selected station.
2. Select and hold the preset Icon for the station you want to store.

## ■ Station List\*

Lists the strongest stations on the selected band.

1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
2. Select the station.

### ■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select **Station List** to display a list.
2. Select **Refresh**.

## ▶▶ Preset Memory

The **ST** indicator appears on the display indicating stereo FM broadcasts.  
Stereo reproduction in AM is not available.

Switching the Audio Mode

Roll the left selector wheel or select the audio source icon on the screen.

▶▶ **Audio Remote Controls** P. 263

You can store 12 AM/FM stations into preset memory.

## ■ Scan

Samples each of the strongest stations on the selected band for 10 seconds. To turn off scan, select **Stop** or press the  button.

## ■ Radio Data System (RDS)\*

Provides text data information related to your selected RDS-capable FM station.

### ■ To find an RDS station from Station List

1. Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select the station.

### ■ Manual update

Updates your available station list at any time.

1. Select **Station List** to display a list while listening to an FM station.
2. Select **Refresh**.

### ■ Radio text

Displays the radio text information of the selected RDS station.

### ⌘ Radio Data System (RDS)\*

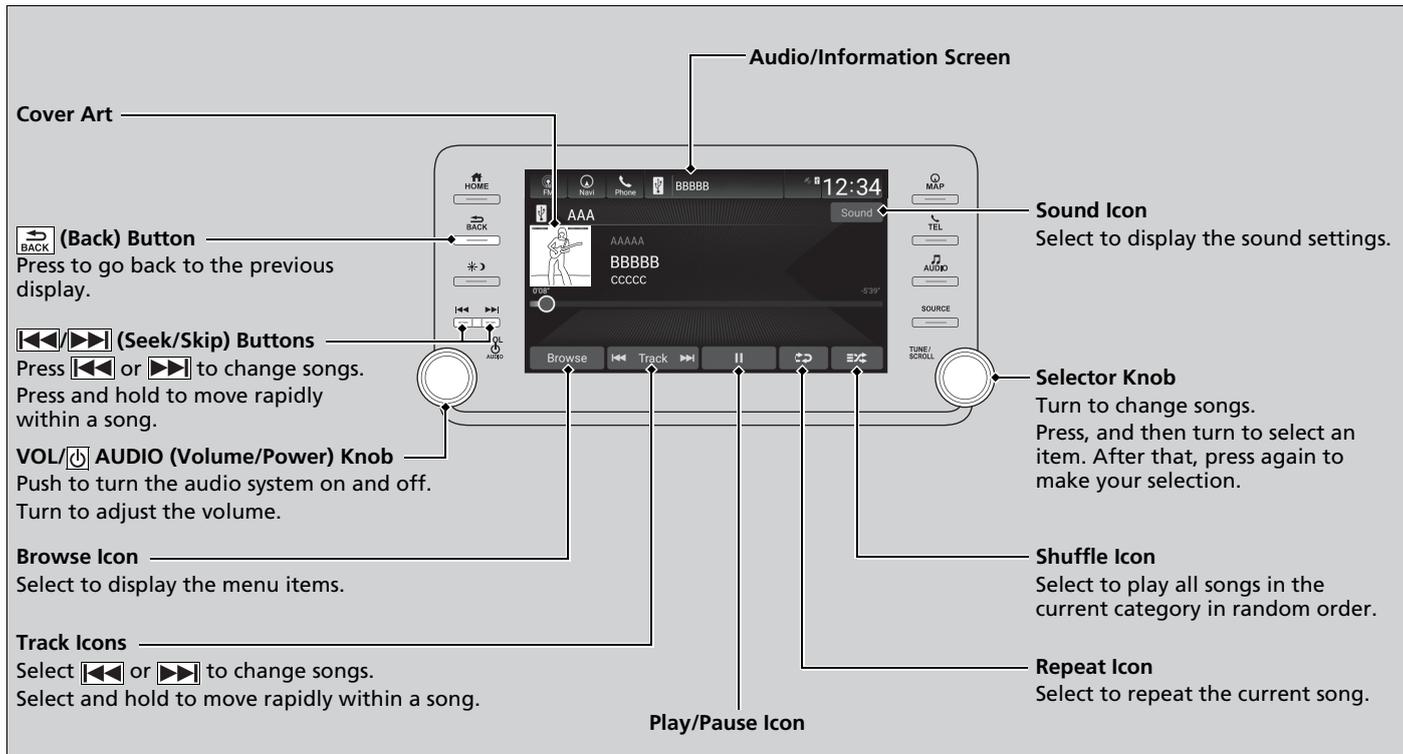
When you select an RDS-capable FM station, the RDS automatically turns on, and the frequency display changes to the station name. However, when the signals of that station become weak, the display changes from the station name to the frequency.

\* Not available on all models

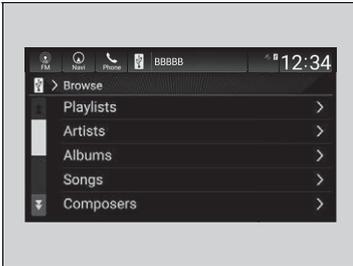
## Playing an iPod

Using your USB connector, connect the iPod to the USB ports, then select the USB mode.

➤ **USB Ports** P. 261



## How to Select a Song from the Music Search List



1. Select **Browse**.
2. Select a search category (e.g., Artists, Albums, etc.).
3. Continue making selections until you find the song of your choice.

## ▶▶ Playing an iPod

Available operating functions vary on models or versions. Some functions may not be available on the vehicle's audio system.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

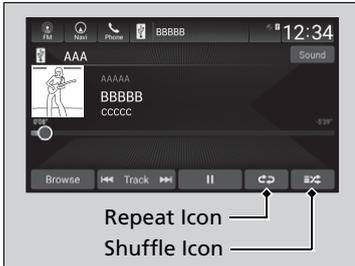
▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 309

If you operate the music app on your iPhone/iPod while the phone is connected to the audio system, you may no longer be able to operate the same app on the audio/information screen. Reconnect the device if necessary.

If an iPhone is connected via Apple CarPlay, the iPod/USB source will be unavailable and audio files on the phone will be playable only within Apple CarPlay.

## ■ How to Select a Play Mode

You can select shuffle and repeat modes when playing a file.



### ■ Shuffle/Repeat

Select shuffle or repeat icon repeatedly until a desired mode.

### ■ To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

## ▶▶ How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

### Shuffle



**Shuffle off:** Shuffle mode to off.



**Shuffle All Songs:** Plays all available songs in a selected list (playlists, artists, albums, songs, genres, or composers) in random order.

### Repeat



**Repeat off:** Repeat mode to off.



**Repeat Song:** Repeats the current song.



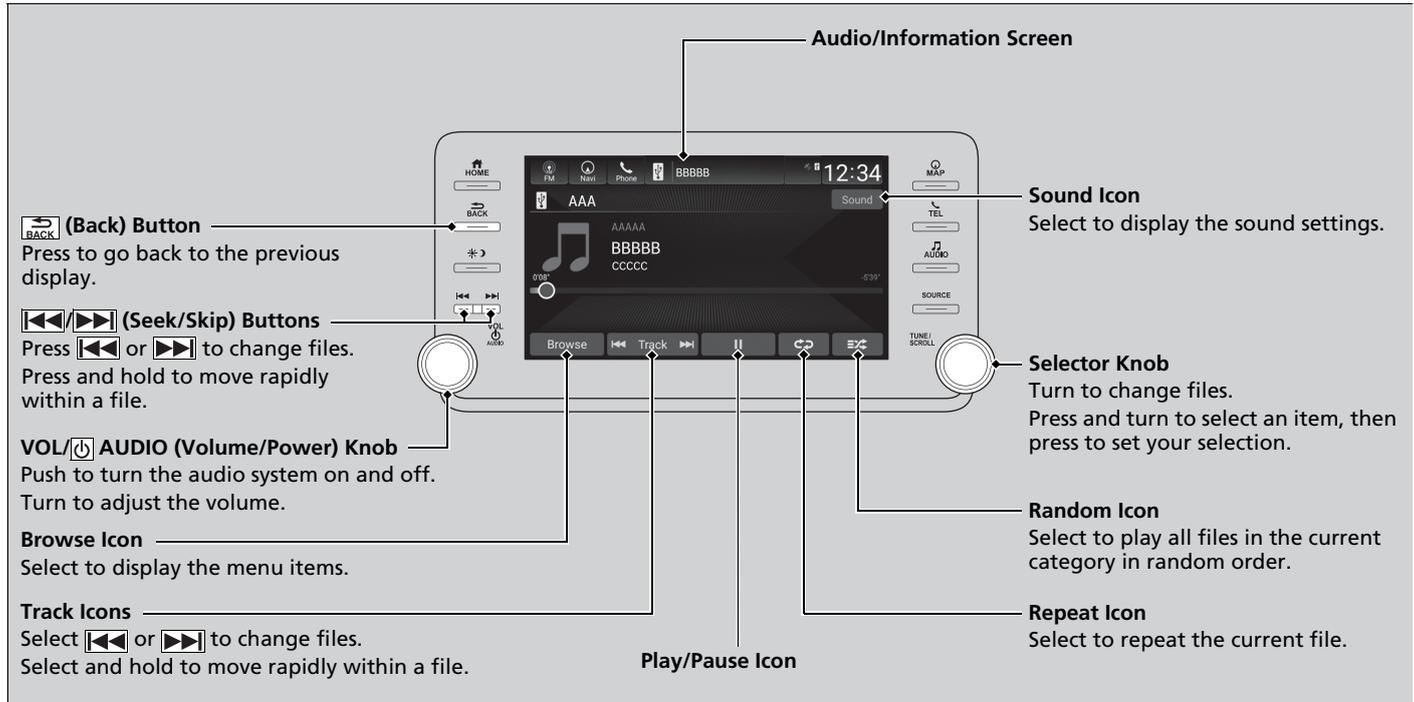
**Repeat all:** Repeats the all songs.

## Playing a USB Flash Drive

Your audio system reads and plays sound and videos\* files on a USB flash drive in either MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, WAV, MP4\*, or AVI\* format.

Connect your USB flash drive to the USB ports, then select the USB mode.

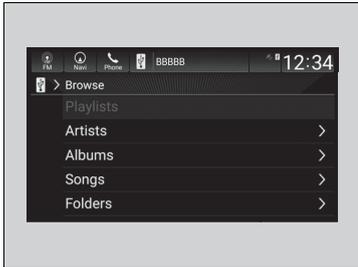
🔗 **USB Ports** P. 261



\*1: Only AAC format files recorded with iTunes are playable on this unit.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ How to Select a File from the Music Search List



1. Select **Browse**.
2. Select **Music** or **Video\***.
3. Continue making selections until you find the song or video of your choice.

## ▶▶ Playing a USB Flash Drive

Use the recommended USB flash drives.

▶ **General Information on the Audio System**  
P. 311

WMA files protected by digital rights management (DRM) cannot be played.

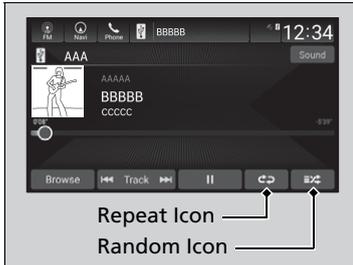
The audio system displays **The selected file cannot be played**, then skips to the next file.

If there is a problem, you may see an error message on the audio/information screen.

▶ **iPod/USB Flash Drive** P. 309

## How to Select a Play Mode

You can select repeat and random modes when playing a file.



### Random/Repeat

Select random or repeat icon repeatedly until a desired mode.

### To turn off a play mode

Select the mode you want to turn off.

## How to Select a Play Mode

Play Mode Menu Items

### Random

**Random off:** Random mode to off.

**Random All Tracks:** Plays all files in random order.

**Random in Folder:** Plays all files in the current folder in random order.

### Repeat

**Repeat off:** Repeat mode to off.

**Repeat track:** Repeats the current folder.

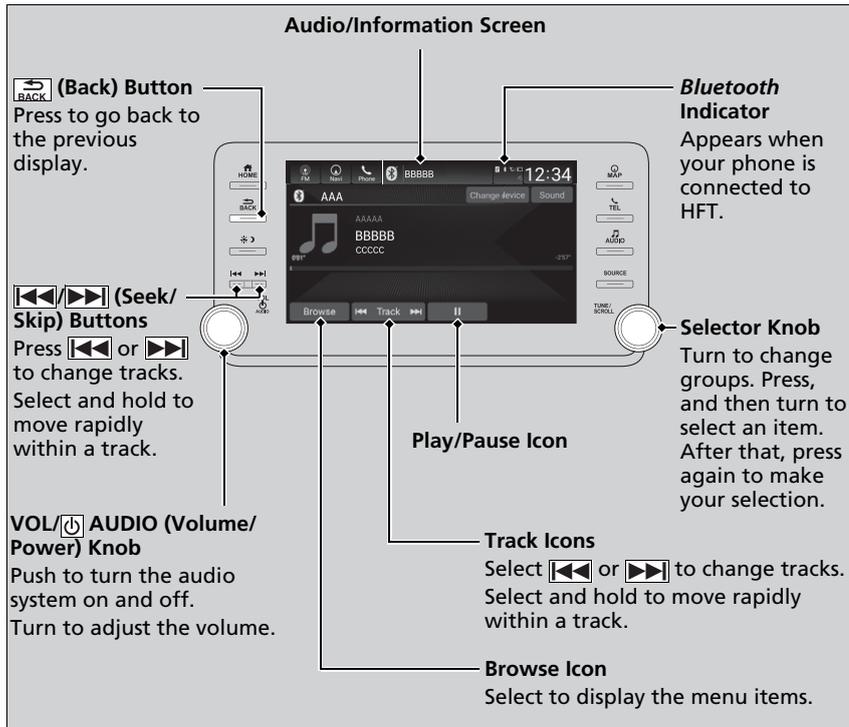
**Repeat all:** Repeats the all files.

## Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Your audio system allows you to listen to music from your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone.

This function is available when the phone is paired and connected to the vehicle's Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

📄 **Phone Setup** P. 340



### ▶▶ Playing *Bluetooth*® Audio

Not all *Bluetooth*-enabled phones with streaming audio capabilities are compatible ask a dealer.

It may be illegal to perform some data device functions while driving.

Only one phone can be used with HFT at a time. When there are more than two paired phones in the vehicle, the first paired phone the system finds is automatically connected.

The connected phone for *Bluetooth*® Audio can be different.

If more than one phone is paired to the HFT system, there may be a delay before the system begins to play.

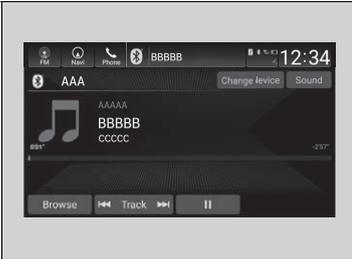
In some cases, the name of the artist, album, or track may not appear correctly.

Some functions may not be available on some devices.

If a phone is currently connected via Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, *Bluetooth*® Audio from that phone will be unavailable. However, you can have a second previously paired phone stream *Bluetooth*® Audio by selecting **🎵** from the *Bluetooth*® device list.

📄 **Phone Setup** P. 340

## ■ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files



1. Make sure that your phone is paired and connected to the system.

➤ **Phone Setup** P. 340

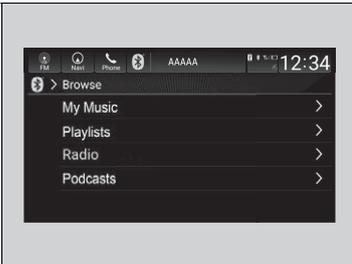
2. Select the *Bluetooth*® Audio mode.

If the phone is not recognised, another HFT-compatible phone, which is not compatible for *Bluetooth*® Audio, may already be connected.

## ■ To pause or resume a file

Select the play/pause icon.

## ■ Searching for Music



1. Select **Browse**.

2. Select a search category (e.g., Albums).

3. Select an item.

▶ The selection begins playing.

## ☒ To Play *Bluetooth*® Audio Files

To play the audio files, you may need to operate your phone. If so, follow the phone maker's operating instructions.

Switching to another mode pauses the music playing from your phone.

You can change the connected phone by selecting **Change device**.

➤ **Phone Setup** P. 340

## ☒ Searching for Music

Depending on the *Bluetooth*® device you connect, some or all of the lists may not be displayed.

## Smartphone Connection\*

Some of your smartphone apps can be displayed and operated on the audio/information screen when the phone is connected to the audio system. You can connect your phone using a cable, or wirelessly.

- **Connecting Your Smartphone** P. 296
- **Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)** P. 297

### Smartphone Connection\*

Park in a safe place before connecting your phone and while operating the displayed apps.

Not all phones are compatible with the system. The system does not display all the available apps on your smartphone, and some apps need to be preinstalled. Ask a dealer for details.

You need to switch the *Bluetooth*® connection to your smartphone if another electronic device is connected.

- **To change the currently paired phone**  
P. 342

The following may vary by phone type:

- Connection method.
- How to connect a smartphone to the system.
- Apps that can be operated on the screen.
- Display response time/update time.

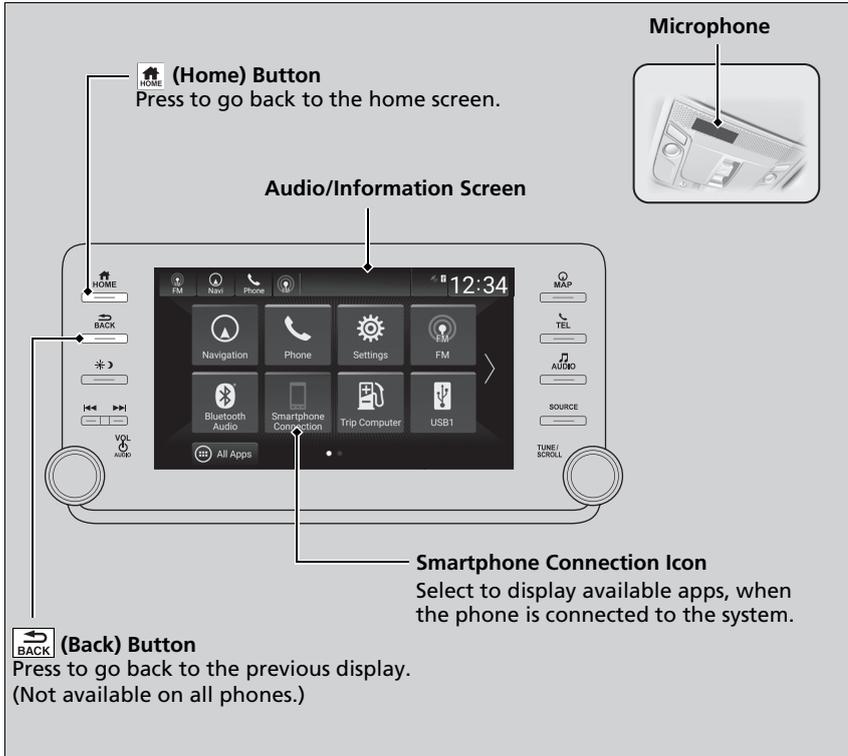
We do not support every app operation on the audio system.

Ask the app provider for any queries on the app's features.

Do not get drawn into the display while operating a vehicle.

To use smartphone connection, you need to first pair your smartphone to the audio system via USB or *Bluetooth®*.

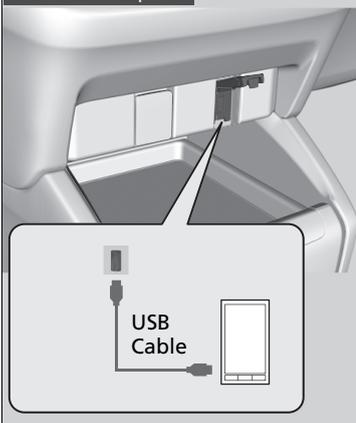
📱 **Phone Setup** P. 340



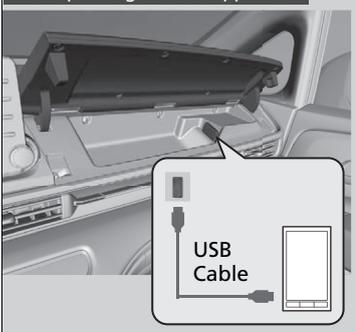
Except iPhone

## ■ Connecting Your Smartphone

In the console panel



In the passenger's side upper box



1. Connect your phone to the audio system via *Bluetooth*®.

▶ **Phone Setup** P. 340

2. Plug in your phone to the USB port.

▶ You may need to operate from the phone.

3. Select **Smartphone Connection** to display the available smartphone apps on the audio/information screen.

4. Select an app you want to operate from the audio/information screen.

▶ To go back to the previous screen, press the  button.

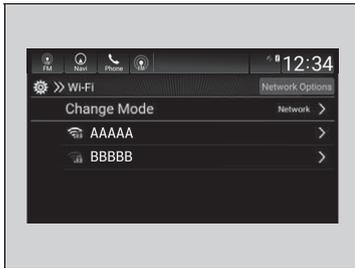
## ⊗ Connecting Your Smartphone

The phone is rechargeable while being connected to the USB port. However, if the phone is overloaded with many operational tasks, the battery level may get lowered.

## Wi-Fi Connection

You can connect the display audio system to the Internet using Wi-Fi on the audio/information screen. If your phone has wireless hotspot capabilities, the system can be tethered to the phone. Use the following steps to setup.

### Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)



1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Wi-Fi**.
5. Select **Change Mode**.
6. Select **Network** or **Hotspot**, then **Confirm**.
  - ▶ To change the Wi-Fi settings, select **Network Options** or **Hotspot Options**.
  - ▶ Select the access point you want to connect to the system.
7. Select **Connect**.
  - ▶ Enter a password for the access point, and select **Done**.
  - ▶ When the connection is successful, the  icon is displayed on the list.
8. Press the  button to go back to the home screen.

### Wi-Fi Connection

Wi-Fi and Wi-Fi Direct a registered trademark of Wi-Fi Alliance®.



### Wi-Fi mode (setting for the first time)

You cannot go through the setting procedure while a vehicle is moving. Park in a safe place to set the audio system in Wi-Fi mode.

Some mobile phone carriers charge for tethering and smartphone data use. Check your phone's data subscription package.

Check your phone manual to find out if the phone has Wi-Fi connectivity.

You can confirm whether Wi-Fi connection is on or off with the  icon on the Wi-Fi network list. Transmission speed and others will not be displayed on this screen.

In case of Wi-Fi connection with your phone, make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

Continued

## ■ Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

Make sure your phone's Wi-Fi setting is in access point (tethering) mode.

## ▶▶ Wi-Fi mode (after the initial setting has been made)

### iPhone users

You may need to go through an initial setup for Wi-Fi connection again after you boot your phone.

## Siri Eyes Free

You can talk to Siri using to press and hold the  (Talk) button on the steering wheel when your iPhone is paired to the Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system.

 **Phone Setup** P. 340

### Siri Eyes Free

Siri is a trademark of Apple Inc.

Check Apple Inc. website for features available for Siri.

While driving we recommend only using Siri through the  button on the steering wheel (Siri Eyes Free).

### Using Siri Eyes Free

Some commands work only on specific phone features or apps.

## Using Siri Eyes Free

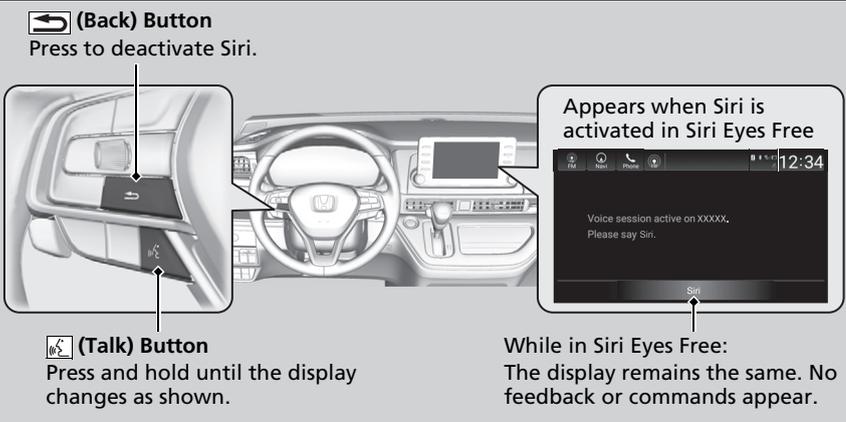
 **(Back) Button**  
Press to deactivate Siri.

Appears when Siri is activated in Siri Eyes Free



 **(Talk) Button**  
Press and hold until the display changes as shown.

While in Siri Eyes Free:  
The display remains the same. No feedback or commands appear.



## Apple CarPlay

If you connect an Apple CarPlay-compatible iPhone to the system via the USB port in the console panel or passenger's side upper box, you can use the audio/information screen, instead of the iPhone display, to make a phone call, listen to music, view maps (navigation), and access messages.

➤ **USB Ports** P. 261



### Apple CarPlay

Only iPhone 5 or newer versions with iOS 8.4 or later are compatible with Apple CarPlay.

Park in a safe place before connecting your iPhone to Apple CarPlay and when launching any compatible apps.

While connected to Apple CarPlay, calls are only made through Apple CarPlay. If you want to make a call with the Hands-Free Telephone system, turn Apple CarPlay off.

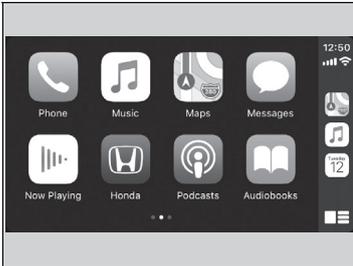
➤ **Setting Up Apple CarPlay** P. 303

When your iPhone is connected to Apple CarPlay, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio or the Hands-Free Telephone system. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Apple CarPlay is connected.

➤ **Phone Setup** P. 340

For details on countries and regions where Apple CarPlay is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Apple homepage.

## Apple CarPlay Menu



- **Phone**  
Access the contact list, make phone calls, or listen to voice mail.
- **Music**  
Play music stored on your iPhone.
- **Maps**  
Display Apple Maps and use the navigation function just as you would on your iPhone.  
**Models with navigation system**  
 Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Apple CarPlay) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be cancelled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.
- **Messages**  
Check and reply to text messages, or have messages read to you.

## Apple CarPlay

### Apple CarPlay Operating Requirements & Limitations

Apple CarPlay requires a compatible iPhone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Apple CarPlay functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Apple CarPlay functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Apple CarPlay performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Apple CarPlay. Refer to the Apple homepage for information on compatible apps.

- **Honda**  
Select the Honda icon to go back to the home screen.
-   
Go back to the Apple CarPlay Dashboard screen.
-   
Go back to the Apple CarPlay menu screen.

## ■ Setting Up Apple CarPlay

After you have connected your iPhone to the system via the USB port, use the following procedure to set up Apple CarPlay. Use of Apple CarPlay will result in the transmission of certain user and vehicle information (such as vehicle location, speed, and status) to your iPhone to enhance the Apple CarPlay experience. You will need to consent to the sharing of this information on the audio/information screen.

## ■ Enabling Apple CarPlay

1. Connect the iPhone to the USB port using the USB cable.
  - ▶  **USB Ports** P. 261
  - ▶ The confirmation screen will be displayed.
2. Select **Enable**.
  - ▶ If you do not want to connect Apple CarPlay, select **Disable**.

You may change the consent settings under the **Connections** settings menu.

### ⌘ Setting Up Apple CarPlay

You can also use the method below to set up Apple CarPlay:

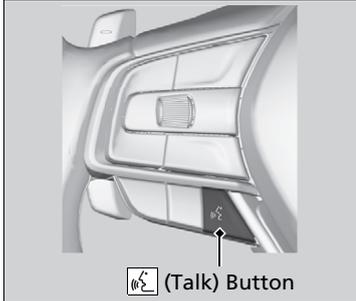
Press the  (home) button → Select Settings → Connections → Smartphone Connection → Apple CarPlay → Select device → Edit Device Permissions

#### Use of user and vehicle information

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your iPhone by Apple CarPlay is governed by the Apple iOS terms and conditions and Apple's Privacy Policy.

## ■ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Press and hold the  (Talk) button to activate Siri.



### (Talk) Button:

Press and hold to activate Siri.

Press again to deactivate Siri.

Press and release to activate voice tag dial.

## ▶▶ Operating Apple CarPlay with Siri

Below are examples of questions and commands for Siri:

- What movies are playing today?
- Call dad at work.
- What song is this?
- How's the weather tomorrow?
- Read my latest email.

For more information, please visit [www.apple.com/ios/siri](http://www.apple.com/ios/siri).

## Android Auto

When you connect an Android phone to the audio system via the USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated. When connected via Android Auto, you can use the audio/information screen to access the Phone, Google Maps (Navigation), Google Play Music, and Google Now functions. When you first use Android Auto, a tutorial will appear on the screen.

We recommend that you complete this tutorial while safely parked before using Android Auto.

➤ **USB Ports** P. 261

➤ **Auto Pairing Connection** P. 307



### NOTE:

Android Auto may not be available in your country or region. For details about Android Auto, please refer to the Google support site.

\* Not available on all models

### Android Auto

Only Android 5.0 (Lollipop) or later versions are compatible with Android Auto. Bluetooth A2DP cannot be used while your phone is connected to Android Auto.

To use Android Auto on a smartphone with Android 9.0 (Pie) or earlier, you need to download the Android Auto app from Google Play to your smartphone.

Park in a safe place before connecting your Android phone to Android Auto and when launching any compatible apps.

To use Android Auto, connect the USB cable to the USB ports located in the console panel or passenger's side upper box. The USB ports located on the rear of the centre console\* will not enable Android Auto operation.

➤ **USB Ports** P. 261

To directly access the Android Auto phone function, press **Phone** on the home screen.

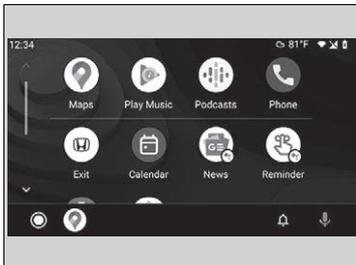
➤ **Auto Pairing Connection** P. 307

When your Android phone is connected to Android Auto, it is not possible to use the *Bluetooth*® Audio. However, other previously paired phones can stream audio via *Bluetooth*® while Android Auto is connected.

➤ **Phone Setup** P. 340

Continued

## Android Auto Menu



- **Maps**

Display Google Maps and use the navigation function just as you would with your Android phone. When the vehicle is in motion, it is not possible to make keyboard entries. Stop the vehicle in a safe location to undertake a search or provide other inputs.

### Models with navigation system

Only one navigation system (pre-installed navigation or Android Auto) can give directions at a time. When you are using one system, directions to any prior destination set on the other system will be cancelled, and the system you are currently using will direct you to your destination.

The audio/information screen shows you turn-by-turn driving directions to your destination.

- **Play Music**

Play Google Play Music and music apps that are compatible with Android Auto. To switch between music apps, press this icon.

- **Phone**

Make and receive phone calls as well as listen to voicemail.

## Android Auto

For details on countries and regions where Android Auto is available, as well as information pertaining to function, refer to the Android Auto homepage.

Screens may differ depending on the version of the Android Auto app you are using.

### Android Auto Operating Requirements & Limitations

Android Auto requires a compatible Android phone with an active mobile connection and data plan. Your carrier's rate plans will apply.

Changes in operating systems, hardware, software, and other technology integral to providing Android Auto functionality, as well as new or revised governmental regulations, may result in a decrease or cessation of Android Auto functionality and services. Honda cannot and does not provide any warranty or guarantee of future Android Auto performance or functionality.

It is possible to use 3rd party apps if they are compatible with Android Auto. Refer to the Android Auto homepage for information on compatible apps.

- **Exit**  
Select the **Exit** icon to go back to the home screen.
-   
Operate Android Auto with your voice.
-   
You can check Android notifications.
-  (**Android Auto Home**)  
Display useful information organized by Android Auto into simple cards that appear just when they're needed.

## ■ Auto Pairing Connection

When you connect an Android phone to the unit via the USB port, Android Auto is automatically initiated.

### ■ Enabling Android Auto

To enable Android Auto after connecting an Android phone to the system, select **Enable** on the screen.

You may change the consent settings under the **Connections** settings menu.

#### ☒ Enabling Android Auto

Only initialize Android Auto when you are safely parked. When Android Auto first detects your phone, you will need to set up your phone so that auto pairing is possible. Refer to the instruction manual that came with your phone.

You can use the method below to change Android Auto settings after you have completed the initial setup:

Press the  (home) button → Select Settings → Connections → Smartphone Connection → Android Auto → Select device → Edit Device Permissions

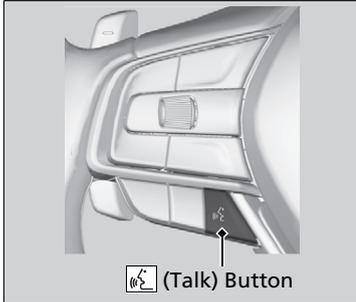
#### **Use of user and vehicle information**

The use and handling of user and vehicle information transmitted to/from your phone by Android Auto is governed by the Google's Privacy Policy.

*Continued*

## ■ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Press and hold the  (Talk) button to operate Android Auto with your voice.



### (Talk) Button:

Press and hold to operate Android Auto with your voice.  
Press and release to activate voice tag dial.

## ▶▶ Operating Android Auto with Voice Recognition

Below are examples of commands you can give with voice recognition:

- Reply to text.
- Call my wife.
- Navigate to Honda.
- Play my music.
- Send a text message to my wife.
- Call flower shop.

For more information, please refer to the Android Auto homepage.

You can also activate the voice recognition function by pressing the  icon in the lower-right corner of the screen.

## iPod/USB Flash Drive

If an error occurs while playing an iPod or USB flash drive, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
<b>USB error</b>	Appears when an incompatible device is connected. Disconnect the device. Then turn the audio system off, and turn it on again. Do not reconnect the device that caused the error.
<b>Connect Retry</b>	Appears when the system does not acknowledge the iPod. Reconnect the iPod.
<b>Unplayable File</b>	Appears when the files in the USB flash drive are copyright protected or an unsupported format. This error message appears for about three seconds, then plays the next song.
<b>No Data</b>	<b>iPod</b> Appears when the iPod is empty. <b>USB flash drive</b> Appears when the USB flash drive is empty. <b>iPod and USB flash drive</b> Check that compatible files are stored on the device.
<b>Unsupported</b>	Appears when an unsupported device is connected. If it appears when a supported device is connected, reconnect the device. Appears when unsupported formats are in the device. Check that compatible files are stored on the device.
<b>Device No Response</b>	Appears when the system does not communicate with a connected device. If it appears when a device is connected, contact your place of device purchase.
<b>USB hub not supported</b>	Appears when only a HUB is connected. If it appears, connect a USB flash drive to the HUB.

## Android/Apps

If an error occurs while using the audio system or apps, you may see the following error messages. If you cannot clear the error message, contact a dealer.

Error Message	Solution
Unfortunately, **** has stopped.* <sup>1</sup>	Error has occurred within app, select <b>OK</b> on the screen to close the app.
**** is not responding. Would you like to close it?*" <sup>1</sup>	App is not responding. Select <b>Wait</b> if you can wait for a response from app a little longer. If it does not respond even if you keep waiting, select <b>OK</b> to close the app and start it up. If the error message continues, perform <b>Factory Data Reset</b> .  <b>Defaulting All the Settings</b> P. 334

\*1:\*\*\*\*part is variable characters, and will change depending upon where an error occurs.

## Compatible iPod, iPhone, and USB Flash Drives

### ■ iPod, and iPhone Model Compatibility

Model
iPod touch (5th to 6th generation) released between 2012 and 2015
iPhone 4s/iPhone 5/iPhone 5s/iPhone 5c/iPhone 6/iPhone 6 Plus/iPhone 6s/ iPhone 6s Plus/iPhone SE/iPhone 7/iPhone 7 Plus/iPhone X/iPhone 8/iPhone 8 Plus/ iPhone XS/iPhone XS Max/iPhone XR/iPhone 11/iPhone 11 Pro/iPhone 11 Pro Max

### ■ USB Flash Drives

- A USB flash drive of 256 MB or higher is recommended.
- Some digital audio players may not be compatible.
- Some USB flash drives (e.g., a device with security lockout) may not work.
- Some software files may not allow for audio play or text data display.
- Some versions of MP3, WMA, AAC, FLAC, WAV, MP4\*, or AVI\* formats may be unsupported.

### ⌘ iPod, and iPhone Model Compatibility

This system may not work with all software versions of these devices.

### ⌘ USB Flash Drives

Files on the USB flash drive are played in their stored order. This order may be different from the order displayed on your PC or device.

\* Not available on all models

## Legal Information on Apple CarPlay/Android Auto

---

### ■ OWNER'S MANUAL LICENSE/LIABILITY STATEMENTS

USE OF APPLE CARPLAY IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE, WHICH ARE INCLUDED AS PART OF THE APPLE iOS TERMS OF USE. IN SUMMARY, THE CARPLAY TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY APPLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF CARPLAY, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE APPLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING APPLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY CARPLAY.

USE OF ANDROID AUTO IS SUBJECT TO YOUR AGREEMENT TO THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE WHICH MUST BE AGREED TO WHEN THE ANDROID AUTO APPLICATION IS DOWNLOADED TO YOUR ANDROID PHONE. IN SUMMARY, THE ANDROID AUTO TERMS OF USE DISCLAIM GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' LIABILITY IF THE SERVICES FAIL TO PERFORM CORRECTLY OR ARE DISCONTINUED, STRICTLY LIMIT GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS' OTHER LIABILITIES, DESCRIBE THE KINDS OF USER INFORMATION (INCLUDING, FOR EXAMPLE, VEHICLE LOCATION, VEHICLE SPEED, AND VEHICLE STATUS) BEING GATHERED AND STORED BY GOOGLE AND ITS SERVICE PROVIDERS, AND DISCLOSE CERTAIN POSSIBLE RISKS ASSOCIATED WITH THE USE OF ANDROID AUTO, INCLUDING THE POTENTIAL FOR DRIVER DISTRACTION. SEE GOOGLE'S PRIVACY POLICY FOR DETAILS REGARDING GOOGLE'S USE AND HANDLING OF DATA UPLOADED BY ANDROID AUTO.

## DISCLAIMER OF WARRANTIES; LIMITATION ON LIABILITY

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF APPLE CARPLAY OR ANDROID AUTO (“THE APPLICATIONS”) IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, AND THAT THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS IS PROVIDED “AS IS” AND “AS AVAILABLE,” WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND HONDA HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE APPLICATIONS AND INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, SATISFACTORY QUALITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, ACCURACY, QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY HONDA OR AN AUTHORISED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL CREATE A WARRANTY. AS EXAMPLES, AND WITHOUT LIMITATION, HONDA DISCLAIMS ANY WARRANTY REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF DATA PROVIDED BY THE APPLICATIONS, SUCH AS THE ACCURACY OF DIRECTIONS, ESTIMATED TRAVEL TIME, SPEED LIMITS, ROAD CONDITIONS, NEWS, WEATHER, TRAFFIC, OR OTHER CONTENT PROVIDED BY APPLE, GOOGLE, THEIR AFFILIATES, OR THIRD PARTY PROVIDERS; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE AGAINST LOSS OF APPLICATION DATA, WHICH MAY BE LOST AT ANY TIME; HONDA DOES NOT GUARANTEE THAT THE APPLICATIONS OR ANY SERVICES PROVIDED THROUGH THEM WILL BE PROVIDED AT ALL TIMES OR THAT ANY OR ALL SERVICES WILL BE AVAILABLE AT ANY PARTICULAR TIME OR LOCATION. FOR EXAMPLE, SERVICES MAY BE SUSPENDED OR INTERRUPTED WITHOUT NOTICE FOR REPAIR, MAINTENANCE, SECURITY FIXES, UPDATES, ETC., SERVICES MAY BE UNAVAILABLE IN YOUR AREA OR LOCATION, ETC. IN ADDITION, YOU UNDERSTAND THAT CHANGES IN THIRD PARTY TECHNOLOGY OR GOVERNMENT REGULATION MAY RENDER THE SERVICES AND/OR APPLICATIONS OBSOLETE AND/OR UNUSABLE.

TO THE EXTENT NOT PROHIBITED BY LAW, IN NO EVENT SHALL HONDA OR ITS AFFILIATES BE LIABLE FOR PERSONAL INJURY, OR ANY INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, DAMAGES FOR LOSS OF PROFITS, CORRUPTION OR LOSS OF DATA, FAILURE TO TRANSMIT OR RECEIVE ANY DATA, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR ANY OTHER COMMERCIAL DAMAGES OR LOSSES, ARISING OUT OF OR RELATED TO THE APPLICATIONS OR YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE APPLICATIONS OR INFORMATION ON THE APPLICATIONS, HOWEVER CAUSED, REGARDLESS OF THE THEORY OF LIABILITY (CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE) AND EVEN IF HONDA WERE ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. SOME REGIONS AND JURISDICTIONS MAY DISALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF LIABILITY FOR DAMAGES, SO THESE LIMITATIONS AND EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU. THE FOREGOING LIMITATIONS WILL APPLY EVEN IF THE ABOVE STATED REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE.

## About Open Source Licences

---

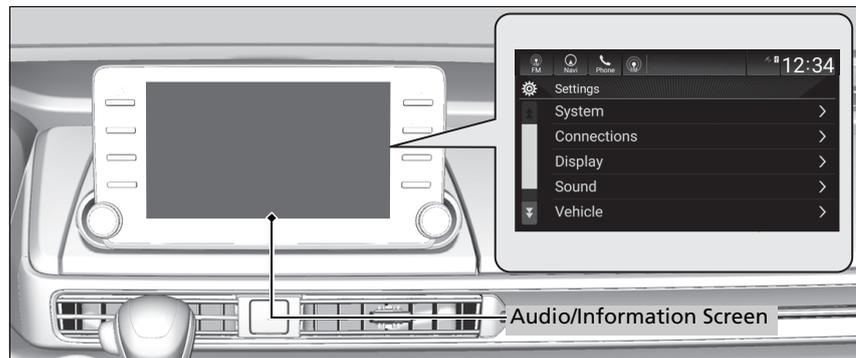
To see the open source licence information, follow these steps.

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **About**.
5. Select **Legal Information**.
6. Select **Licence**.

Use the audio/information screen to customize certain features.

## ■ How to customize

With the power mode in ON, select **Settings**, then select a setting item.



## ☒ Customized Features

When you customize settings:

- Make sure that the vehicle is at a complete stop.
- Shift to [P].

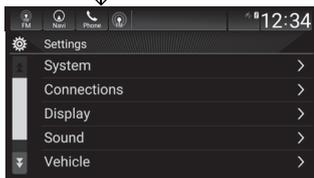
To customize other features, select **Settings**.

➤ **List of customizable options** P. 322

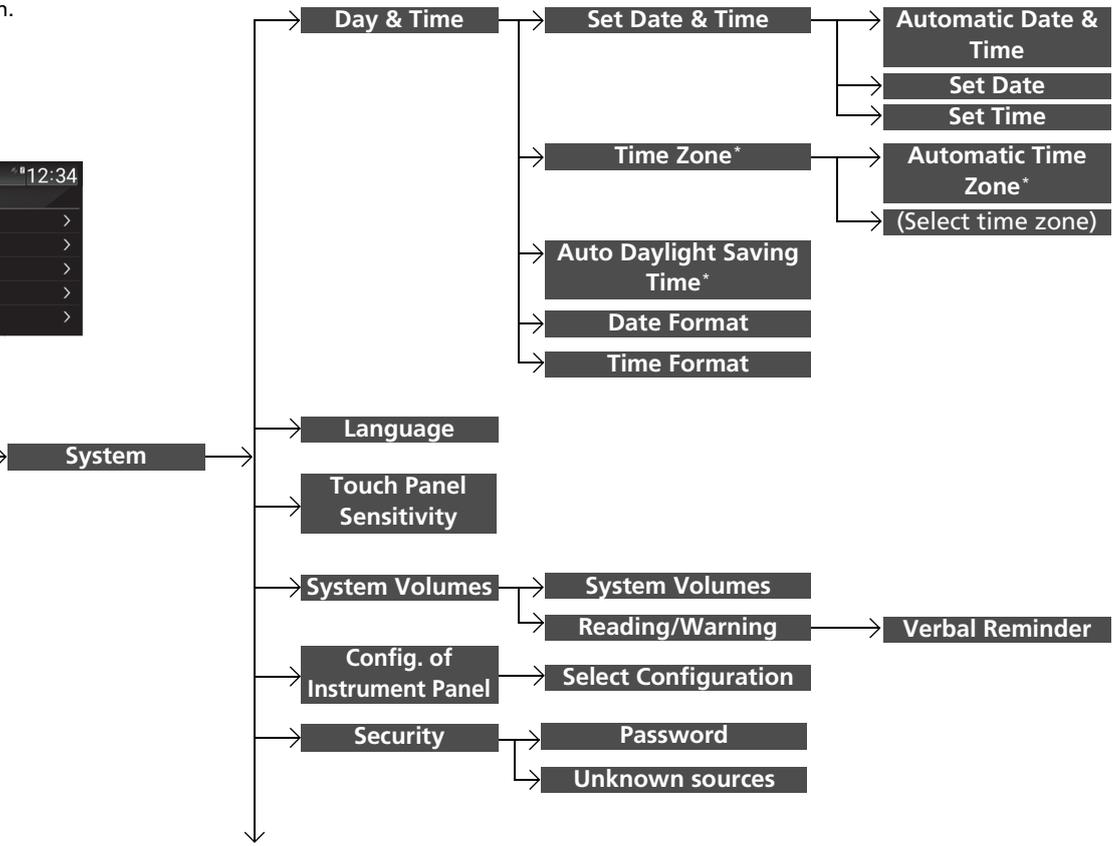
■ Customization flow

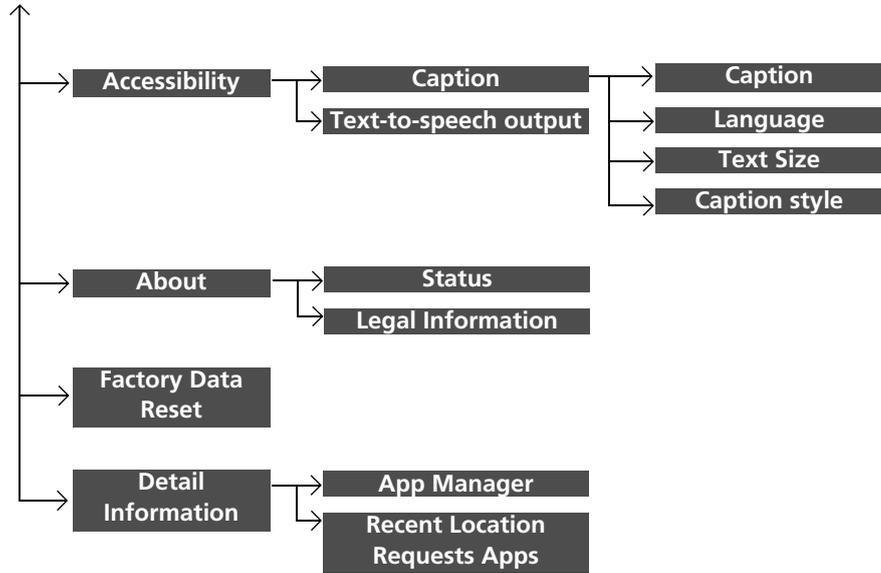
Press the  button.

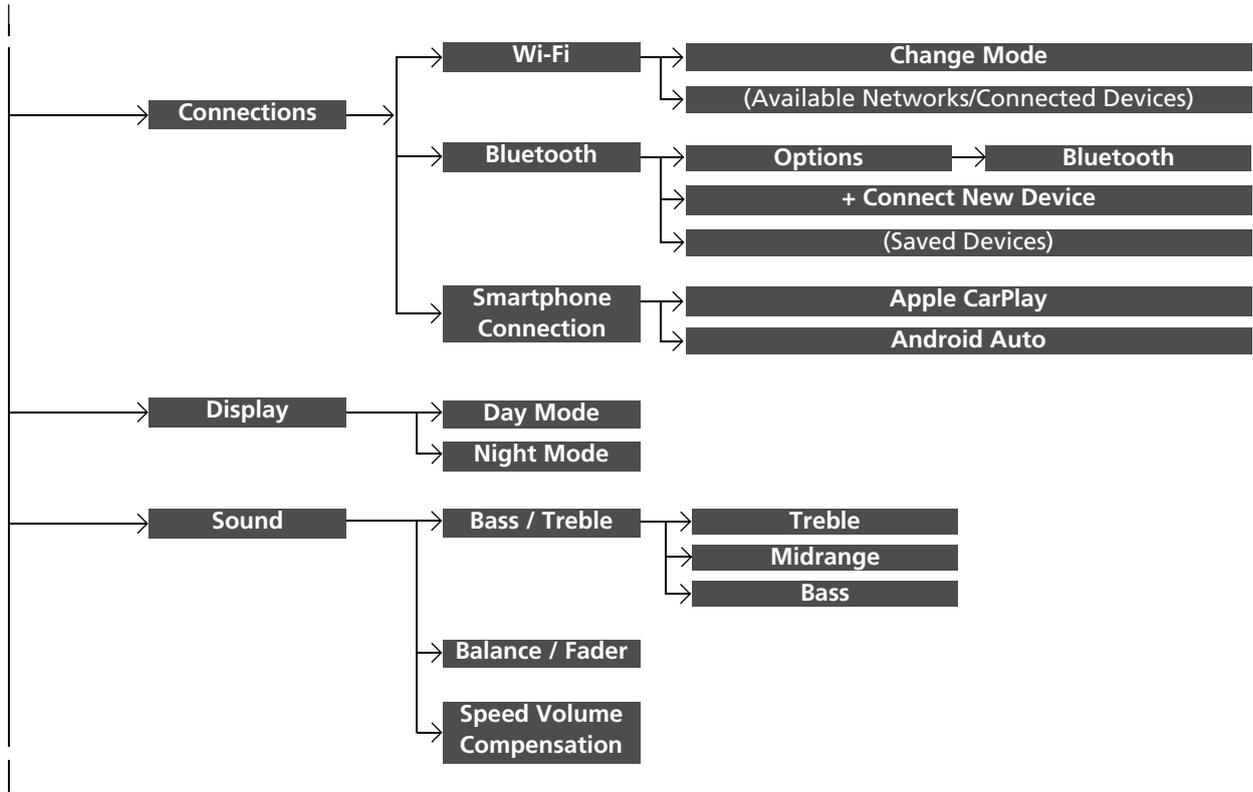
Select **Settings**.

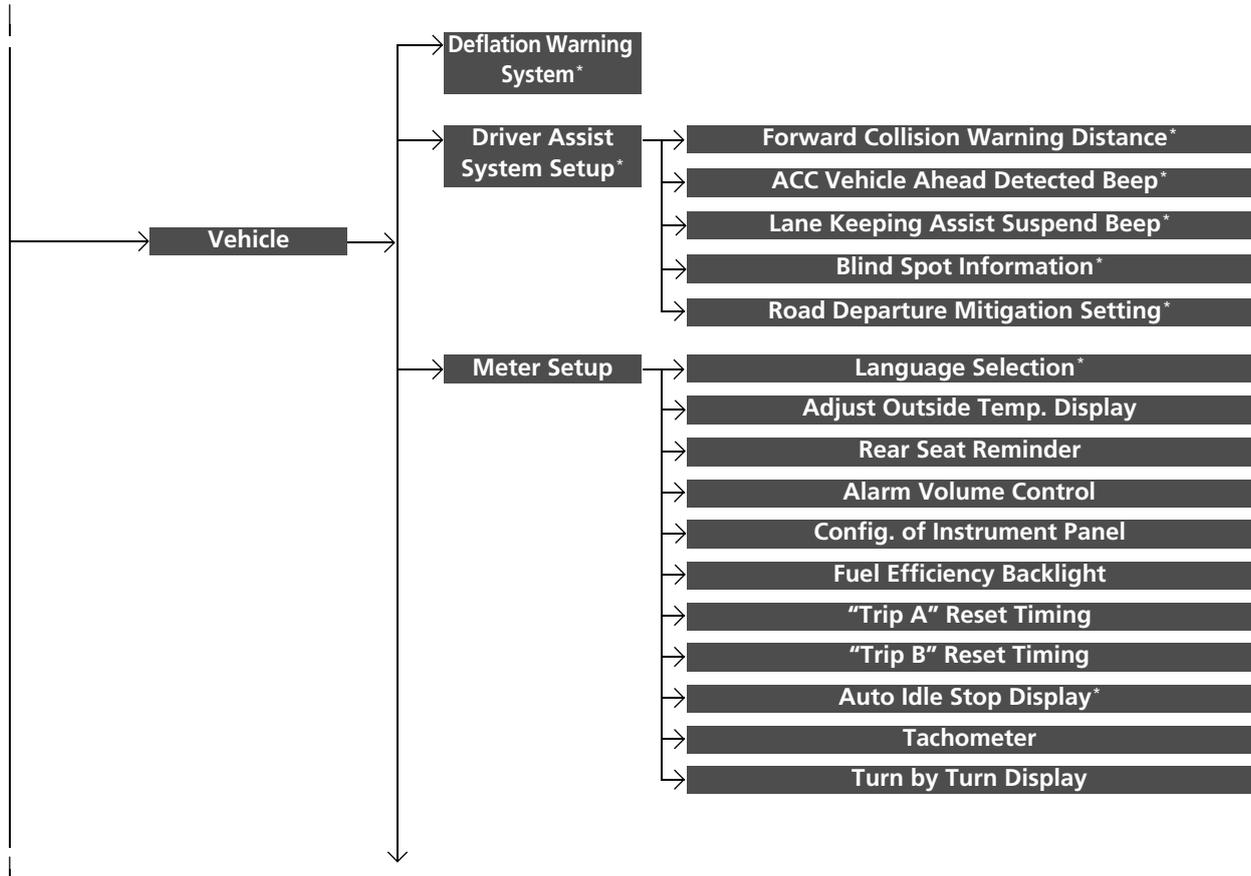


Features

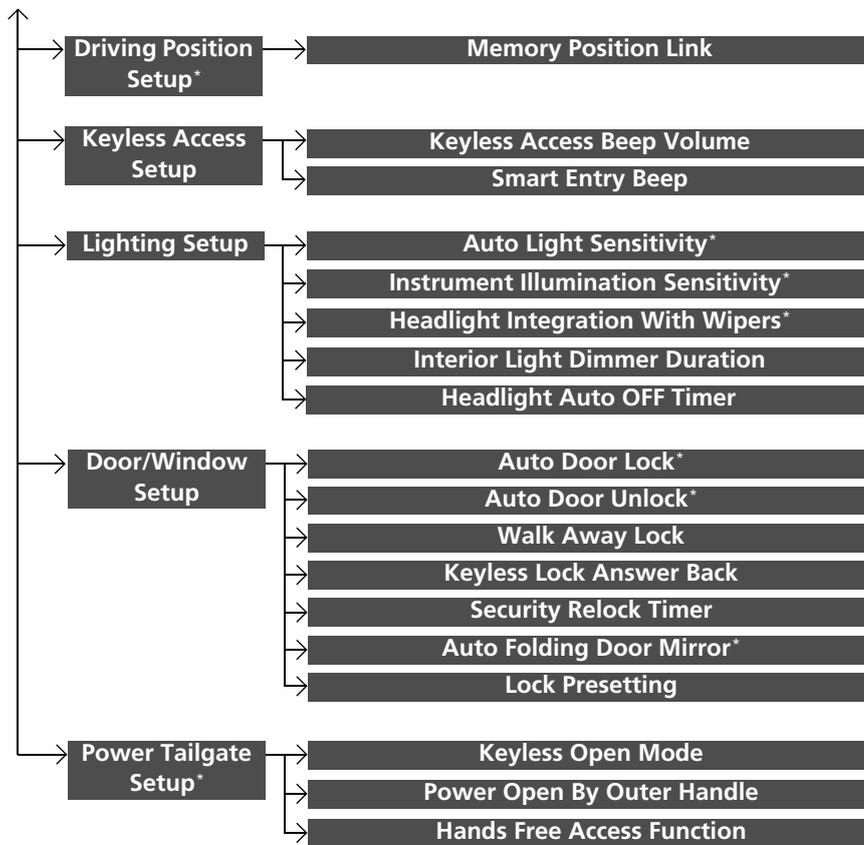


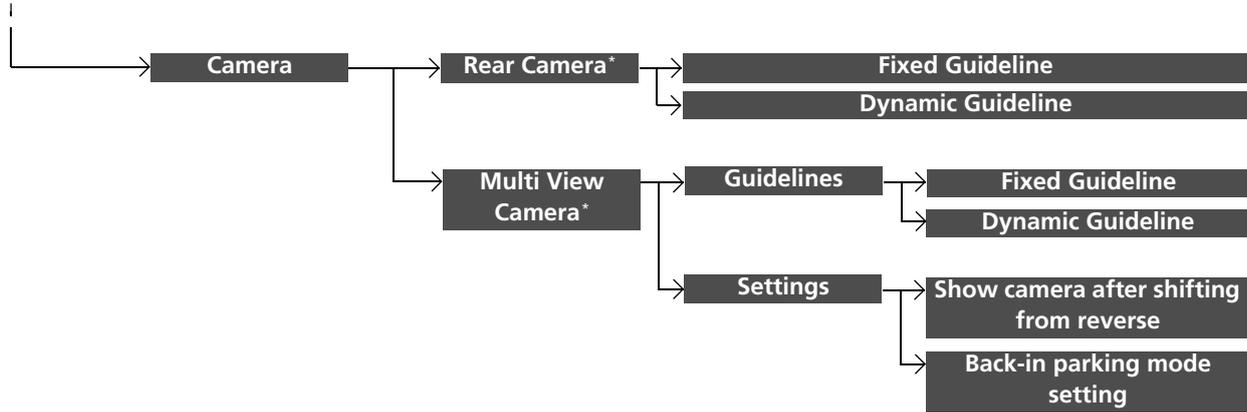






\* Not available on all models





\* Not available on all models

■ List of customizable options

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
System	Day & Time	<b>Automatic Date &amp; Time</b>	Selects <b>ON</b> to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock. Select <b>OFF</b> to cancel this function.	<b>ON*<sup>1</sup>/OFF</b>
		<b>Set Date &amp; Time</b>	Adjusts date. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Adjusting the Clock</b> P. 146	—
		<b>Set Time</b>	Adjusts clock. <input checked="" type="checkbox"/> <b>Adjusting the Clock</b> P. 146	—
	<b>Time Zone*</b>	<b>Automatic Time Zone*</b>	Sets the navigation system to automatically adjust the clock when driving through different time zones.	<b>ON*<sup>1</sup>/OFF</b>
		(Select time zone)	Changes the time zone manually.	—
	<b>Auto Daylight Saving Time*</b>	Select <b>ON</b> to have the GPS automatically adjust the clock to daylight savings time. Select <b>OFF</b> to cancel this function.	<b>ON*<sup>1</sup>/OFF</b>	
	<b>Date Format</b>	Sets the date format.	<b>MM/DD/YYYY/ DD/MM/YYYY*<sup>1</sup>/ YYYY/MM/DD</b>	
	<b>Time Format</b>	Selects the digital clock display from <b>12H</b> to <b>24H</b> .	<b>12H*<sup>1</sup>/24H</b>	

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
System	Language	Changes the display language.	<b>English (United Kingdom)<sup>*2</sup>, Traditional Chinese<sup>*2</sup>, or Arabic<sup>*2</sup></b> See other selectable languages on the screen.	
	Touch Panel Sensitivity	Sets the sensitivity of the touch panel screen.	<b>High/Normal<sup>*1</sup></b>	
	System Volumes	System Volumes	Changes the system sounds volume.	—
		Reading/Warning Verbal Reminder	Turns the verbal reminders on and off.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
	Config. of Instrument Panel	Select Configuration	Selects whether the apps display comes on or not on the driver information interface.	<b>Config.1<sup>*1</sup>/Config.2/ Config.3</b>
	Security	Password	Set the value of password display.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
Unknown sources		—	<b>ON/OFF<sup>*1</sup></b>	

\*1:Default Setting

\*2:The default setting varies depending on the model.

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
System	Accessibility	<b>Caption</b>	Turns the subtitles on and off.	<b>ON/OFF</b> *1
		<b>Language</b>	Change the subtitle language.	<b>Default</b> *1 See other selectable languages on the screen.
		<b>Text Size</b>	Change the subtitle Text Size.	<b>Very small/Small/Normal</b> *1/ <b>Large</b>
		<b>Caption style</b>	Change the subtitle Caption style.	<b>Use app defaults/White on black</b> *1/ <b>Black on white/ Yellow on black/ Yellow on blue/ Custom</b>
		<b>Text-to-speech output</b>	<b>Current TTS engine</b> <b>TtsService</b>	—
	<b>About</b>	<b>Status</b>	Displays the Android setting items.	—
	<b>Legal Information</b>			

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
System	<b>Factory Data Reset</b>	Resets all the settings to their factory default.  <b>Defaulting All the Settings</b> P. 334	<b>Continue/Cancel</b>	
	<b>Detail Information</b>	<b>App Manager</b>	Displays the Android system memory and apps information.	—
		<b>Recent Location Requests Apps</b>	Displays the recent location requests from apps.	—
Connections	<b>Wi-Fi</b>	<b>Change Mode</b>	Changes the Wi-Fi mode.	<b>Network*<sup>1</sup>/Hotspot*<sup>1</sup>/OFF</b>
		(Available Networks/ Connected Devices)	Displays the available network(s) or current connected device(s).	—
	<b>Bluetooth</b>	<b>Options</b> <b>Bluetooth</b>	Turns the <i>Bluetooth</i> ® on and off.	<b>ON*<sup>1</sup>/OFF</b>
		<b>+ Connect New Device</b>	Pairs a new phone to HFT.  <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 340	—
		(Saved Devices)	Connects, disconnects, or deletes a paired phone.  <b>Phone Setup</b> P. 340	—
<b>Smartphone Connection</b>	<b>Apple CarPlay</b>	Sets up the Apple CarPlay connection.	—	
	<b>Android Auto</b>	Sets up the Android Auto connection.	—	

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

Continued

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
<b>Display</b>	<b>Day Mode</b>	Changes between the daytime mode and nighttime mode. ► <b>Display Setup</b> P. 281	—
	<b>Night Mode</b>		
<b>Sound</b>	<b>Treble</b>	Adjusts the settings of the audio speakers' sound. ► <b>Adjusting the Sound</b> P. 280	—
	<b>Bass / Treble</b>		
	<b>Midrange</b>		
	<b>Bass</b>		
	<b>Balance / Fader</b>		
	<b>Speed Volume Compensation</b>		
<b>Vehicle</b>	<b>Deflation Warning System*</b>	Initialise the deflation warning system.	<b>Initialise/Cancel</b>
	<b>Driver Assist System Setup*</b>	<b>Forward Collision Warning Distance*</b>	Changes Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) alert distance. <b>Normal*1/Near/Far</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	<b>ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep*</b>	Causes the system to beep when the system detects a vehicle, or when the vehicle goes out of the ACC range.	<b>ON/OFF*</b> <sup>1</sup>
	<b>Driver Assist System Setup*</b>		
	<b>Lane Keeping Assist Suspend Beep*</b>	Causes the system to beep when Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) is suspended.	<b>ON/OFF*</b> <sup>1</sup>
	<b>Blind Spot Information*</b>	Changes the setting for the blind spot information.	<b>Audible And Visual Alert*</b> <sup>1</sup> / <b>Visual Alert/OFF</b>
	<b>Road Departure Mitigation Setting*</b>	Changes the setting for the Road Departure Mitigation system.	<b>Normal*</b> <sup>1</sup> / <b>Delayed/Warning Only/Early</b>
	<b>Language Selection*</b>	Changes the display language.	<b>Arabic/English (EU)</b>
	<b>Meter Setup</b>		
	<b>Adjust Outside Temp. Display</b>	Adjusts the temperature reading by a few degrees.	<b>-3°C ~ ±0°C*</b> <sup>1</sup> ~ <b>+3°C</b>
	<b>Rear Seat Reminder</b>	Turns the Rear Seat Reminder feature on and off.	<b>ON*</b> <sup>1</sup> / <b>OFF</b>
	<b>Alarm Volume Control</b>	Changes the alarm volume, such as the buzzers, warnings, turn signal sound, and so on.	<b>Max/Mid*</b> <sup>1</sup> / <b>Min</b>
	<b>Config. of Instrument Panel</b>	Selects whether the apps display comes on or not on the driver information interface.	<b>Config.1*</b> <sup>1</sup> / <b>Config.2/Config.3</b>

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	<b>Fuel Efficiency Backlight</b>	Turns the ambient meter feature on and off.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
	<b>“Trip A” Reset Timing</b>	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter A and average fuel economy A.	<b>When Fully Refueled/ Manual Reset<sup>*1</sup>/ When Ignition Is Turned OFF</b>
	<b>“Trip B” Reset Timing</b>	Changes the setting of how to reset trip meter B and average fuel economy B.	<b>When Fully Refueled/ Manual Reset<sup>*1</sup>/ When Ignition Is Turned OFF</b>
	<b>Auto Idle Stop Display*</b>	Selects whether the Auto Idle Stop guidance screens comes on.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
	<b>Tachometer</b>	Selects whether the tachometer come on the driver information interface.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
	<b>Turn by Turn Display</b>	Selects whether the turn-by-turn display comes on during the route guidance.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
<b>Driving Position Setup*</b>	<b>Memory Position Link</b>	Turns the driving position memory system on and off.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Vehicle	Keyless Access Setup	<b>Keyless Access Beep Volume</b>	Changes the beep volume of unlocking /locking the doors.	<b>High<sup>*1</sup>/Low</b>
		<b>Smart Entry Beep</b>	Causes the beeper to sound when you unlock/lock the doors.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
	Lighting Setup	<b>Auto Light Sensitivity<sup>*</sup></b>	Changes the timing for the headlights to come on.	<b>Min/Low/Mid<sup>*1</sup>/High/Max</b>
		<b>Instrument Illumination Sensitivity<sup>*</sup></b>	Changes the sensitivity of the brightness of the instrument panel when the headlight switch is in <b>AUTO</b> .	<b>Min/Low/Mid<sup>*1</sup>/High/Max</b>
		<b>Headlight Integration With Wipers<sup>*</sup></b>	Changes the settings for the wiper operation when the headlights automatically come on while the headlight switch is in the <b>AUTO</b> position.	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
		<b>Interior Light Dimmer Duration</b>	Changes the length of time the interior lights stay on after you close the doors.	<b>15 sec/30 sec<sup>*1</sup>/60 sec</b>
		<b>Headlight Auto OFF Timer</b>	Changes the length of time the exterior lights stay on after you close the driver's door.	<b>0 sec/15 sec<sup>*1</sup>/30 sec/60 sec</b>

\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings	
Vehicle	Door/Window Setup	<b>Auto Door Lock*</b>	Changes the setting for the automatic locking feature.	<b>OFF/With Vehicle Speed*<sup>1</sup>/Shift From P</b>
		<b>Auto Door Unlock*</b>	Changes the setting for when the doors unlock automatically.	<b>OFF/Shift To P*<sup>1</sup>/When Ignition Is Turned OFF</b>
		<b>Walk Away Lock</b>	Changes the settings for the auto lock function when you walk away from the vehicle.	<b>ON/OFF*<sup>1</sup></b>
		<b>Keyless Lock Answer Back</b>	LOCK/UNLOCK- The exterior lights flash.	<b>ON*<sup>1</sup>/OFF</b>
		<b>Security Relock Timer</b>	Changes the time it takes for the doors to relock and the security system to set after you unlock the vehicle without opening any door.	<b>30sec*<sup>1</sup>/60sec/90sec</b>
		<b>Auto Folding Door Mirror*</b>	Changes how you can fold the door mirrors.	<b>Auto Fold With Keyless*<sup>1</sup>/Manual Only</b>
		<b>Lock Presetting</b>	Changes the settings for the Lock Presetting function.	<b>ON*<sup>1</sup>/OFF</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Vehicle	<b>Power Tailgate Setup*</b>		
	<b>Keyless Open Mode</b>	Changes the setting to enable the power tailgate to be opened with the keyless remote at anytime or only when the doors are unlocked.	<b>Anytime/When Unlocked*<sup>1</sup></b>
	<b>Power Open By Outer Handle</b>	Changes the setting to enable or disable the power tailgate open operation when the user presses the outer handle of the power tailgate.	<b>ON (Power/Manual)*<sup>1</sup>/OFF (Manual only)</b>
	<b>Hands Free Access Function</b>	Changes the setting to enable or disable the power tailgate open operation when a kicking motion under the rear bumper is detected.	<b>ON*<sup>1</sup>/OFF</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Camera	Rear Camera *	<p><b>Fixed Guideline</b></p> <p>Selects whether the guidelines come on the rear camera monitor.</p> <p>➤ <b>Multi-View Rear Camera</b> * P. 452</p>	<b>ON*1/OFF</b>
		<p><b>Dynamic Guideline</b></p> <p>Selects whether the guidelines come on the rear camera monitor.</p> <p>➤ <b>Multi-View Rear Camera</b> * P. 452</p>	<b>ON*1/OFF</b>

\*1:Default Setting

Setup Group	Customizable Features	Description	Selectable Settings
Camera	Guidelines	<b>Fixed Guideline</b> Selects whether to turn on the reference line display. 📄 <b>Multi-View Camera</b> * P. 454	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
		<b>Dynamic Guideline</b> Selects whether to turn on the projection line display. 📄 <b>Multi-View Camera</b> * P. 454	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
	Settings	<b>Show camera after shifting from reverse</b> Sets the rear view to be automatically switched to the front view when the transmission is shifted out of <b>R</b> . 📄 <b>Multi-View Camera</b> * P. 454	<b>ON<sup>*1</sup>/OFF</b>
		<b>Back-in parking mode setting</b> Selects the appropriate width according to your parking space when in Back-in Parking mode. 📄 <b>Multi-View Camera</b> * P. 454	<b>Wide area mode<sup>*1</sup>/ Narrow area mode</b>

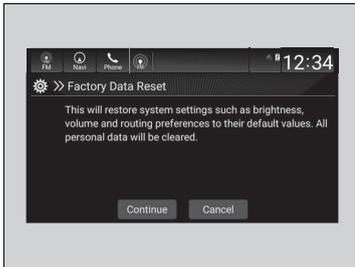
\*1:Default Setting

\* Not available on all models

## Defaulting All the Settings

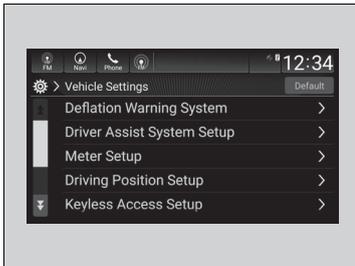
Reset all the menu and customized settings as the factory defaults.

### ■ Defaulting System Settings



1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **System**.
4. Select **Factory Data Reset**.
  - A confirmation message appears on the screen.
5. Select **Continue** to reset the settings.
6. Select **Continue** again to reset the settings.
  - The system will reboot.

### ■ Defaulting Vehicle Settings



1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Vehicle**.
4. Select **Default**.
5. Select **Yes**.

### ►► Defaulting All the Settings

When you transfer the vehicle to a third party, reset all settings to default and delete all personal data.

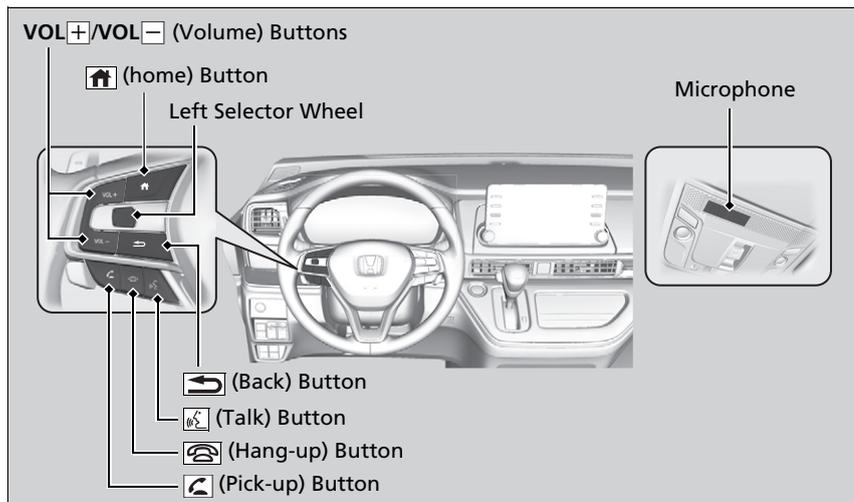
If you perform **Factory Data Reset**, it will reset the preinstalled apps to their factory default.

# Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System

Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) system allows you to place and receive phone calls using your vehicle's audio system, without handling your mobile phone.

## Using HFT

### HFT Buttons



### Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System

Place your phone where you can get good reception.

To use HFT, you need a *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone. For a list of compatible phones, pairing procedures, and special feature capabilities, ask a dealer or your local Honda.

To use the system, the **Bluetooth** setting must be **ON**.

➤ **Phone Setup** P. 340

Voice control tips

- Aim the vents away from the ceiling and close the windows, as noise coming from them may interfere with the microphones.
- Press the  button when you want to call a number using a phonebook name or a number. Speak clearly and naturally after a beep.
- If the microphones pick up voices other than yours, the command may be misinterpreted.

If there is no favourite contact entry in the system, the pop-up notification appears on the screen.

➤ **Favourite Contacts** P. 345

Continued

 **(Pick-up) button:** Press to go directly to the phone menu on the driver information interface, or to answer an incoming call.

 **(Hang-up) button:** Press to end a call.

 **(Back) button:** Press to go back to the previous screen, or cancel a command.

 **(Talk) button:**  
Press to access Voice Portal.

**Left Selector Wheel:** Press the  (home) button, then roll up or down to select **Phone** on the driver information interface, and then press the left selector wheel.

 **(home) button:** Press to go back to the home screen of the driver information interface.

To go to the phone screen of the driver information interface:

1. Press the  (home) button on the steering wheel.
2. Roll up or down the left selector wheel to select **Phone**, then push the left selector wheel.
  - ▶ You can select **Favourite contacts** or **Recent Calls**.

#### Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System

##### *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> Wireless Technology

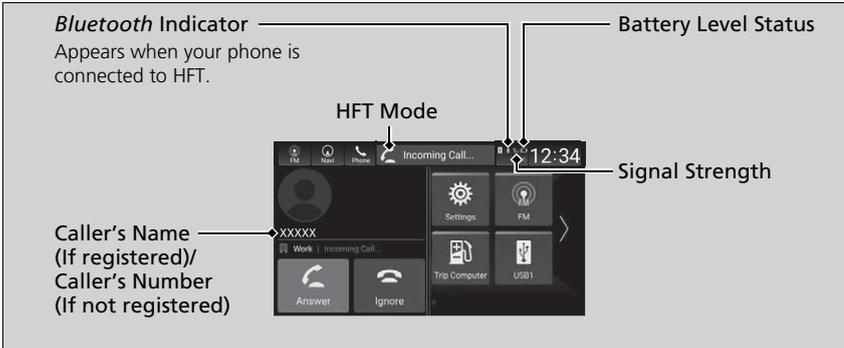
The *Bluetooth*<sup>®</sup> word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by *Bluetooth* SIG, Inc., and any use of such marks by Honda Motor Co., Ltd., is under licence. Other trademarks and trade names are those of their respective owners.

##### HFT Limitations

An incoming call on HFT will interrupt the audio system when it is playing. It will resume when the call is ended.

## ■ HFT Status Display

The audio/information screen notifies you when there is an incoming call.



## ■ Limitations for Manual Operation

Certain manual functions are disabled or inoperable while the vehicle is in motion. You cannot select a grayed-out option until the vehicle is stopped.

Only previously stored phonebook names or numbers can be called using voice commands while the vehicle is in motion.

➤ **Favourite Contacts** P. 345

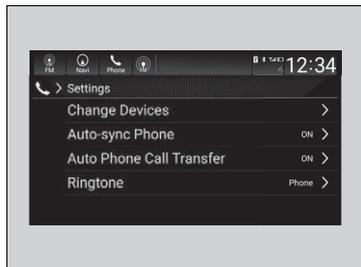
## ▣ HFT Status Display

The information that appears on the audio/information screen varies between phone models.

## HFT Menu

The power mode must be in ACCESSORY or ON to use the system.

### ■ Phone settings screen

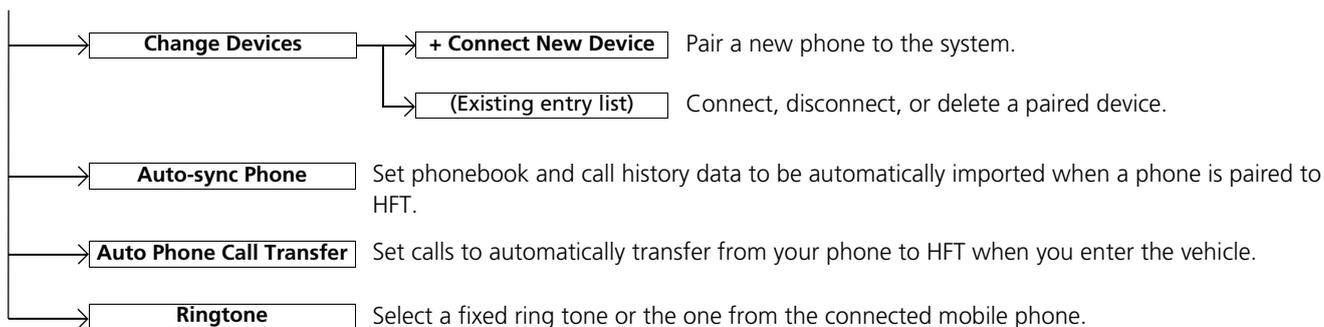


1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Phone**.
3. Select **Settings**.

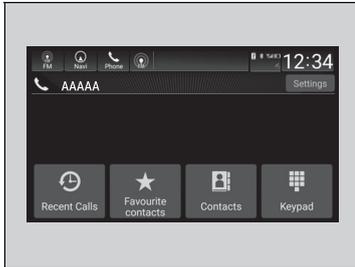
### ▶ HFT Menu

To use HFT, you must first pair your *Bluetooth*-compatible mobile phone to the system while the vehicle is parked.

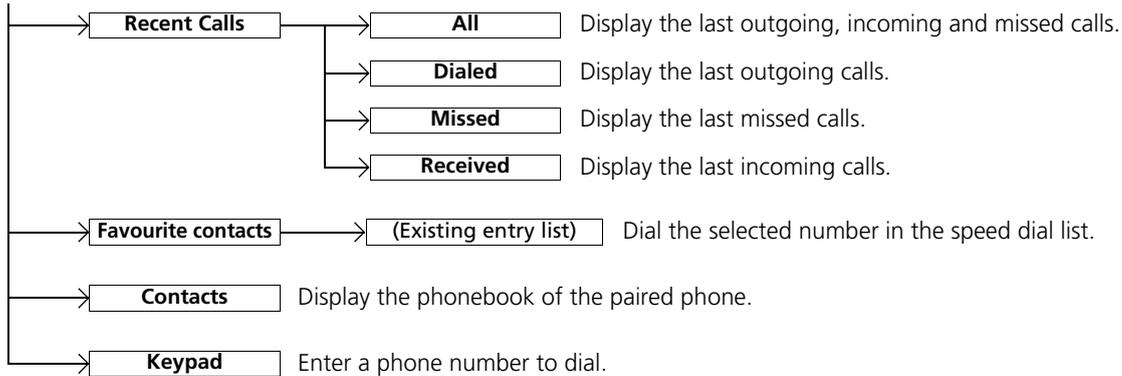
Some functions are limited while driving.



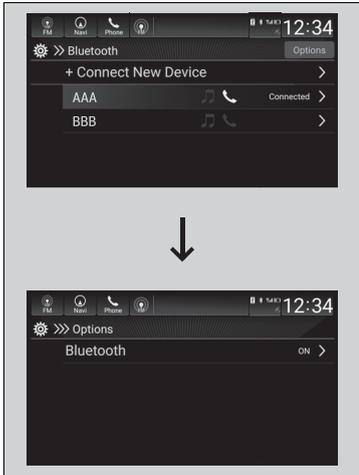
## ■ Phone menu screen



1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Phone**.



## ■ Phone Setup



### ■ **Bluetooth®** setup

You can turn *Bluetooth®* function on and off.

1. Press the  button.
2. Select **Settings**.
3. Select **Connections**.
4. Select **Bluetooth**.
5. Select **Options**.
6. Select **Bluetooth**, then **ON**.



■ **To pair a mobile phone (when there is no phone paired to the system)**

1. Press the button.
2. Select **Phone**.
3. Select **Connect Phone**.
4. Make sure your phone is in search or discoverable mode, then select **+ Connect New Device**.
  - ▶ HFT automatically searches for a *Bluetooth*® device.
5. Select your phone when it appears on the list.
  - ▶ If your phone still does not appear, search for *Bluetooth*® devices using your phone.

From your phone, search for **Honda HFT**.
6. The system gives you a pairing code on the audio/information screen.
  - ▶ Confirm if the pairing code on the screen and your phone match.

This may vary by phone.
7. Select desired functions and then select **Save**.

☒ Phone Setup

Your *Bluetooth*-compatible phone must be paired to the system before you can make and receive hands-free calls.

Phone Pairing Tips:

- You cannot pair your phone while the vehicle is moving.
- Up to six phones can be paired.
- Your phone's battery may drain faster when it is paired to the system.

Once you have paired a phone, you can see it displayed on the screen with one or more icons on the right side.

These icons indicate the following:

- : The phone is compatible with *Bluetooth*® Audio.
- : The phone can be used with HFT.

If there is an active connection to Apple CarPlay pairing of additional Bluetooth compatible devices is unavailable.



■ **To change the currently paired phone**

1. Go to the phone settings screen.
  - ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 338
2. Select **Change Devices**.
3. Select a phone to connect.
  - ▶ HFT disconnects the connected phone and starts searching for another paired phone.
4. Select or .
5. Select **Save**.

■ **To delete a paired phone**

1. Go to the phone settings screen.
  - ▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 338
2. Select **Change Devices**.
3. Select a phone you want to delete.
4. Select **Delete**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

▶▶ To change the currently paired phone

If no other phones are found or paired when trying to switch to another phone, HFT will inform you that the original phone is connected again.

To pair other phones, select **+ Connect New Device** from the **Bluetooth** screen.

## Ring Tone

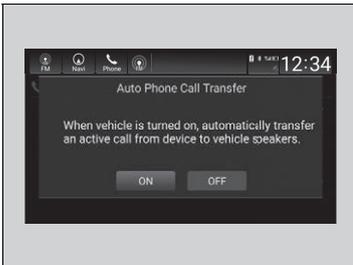
You can change the ring tone setting.



1. Go to the phone settings screen.  
▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 338
2. Select **Ringtone**.
3. Select **Vehicle** or **Phone**.

## Automatic Transferring

If you get into the vehicle while you are on the phone, the call can be automatically transferred to HFT.



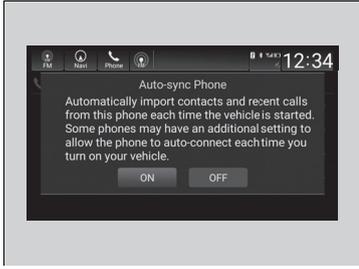
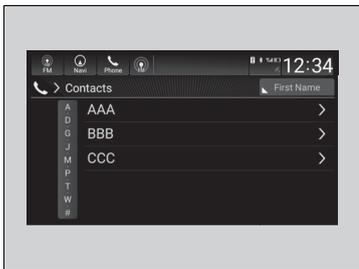
1. Go to the phone settings screen.  
▶ **Phone settings screen** P. 338
2. Select **Auto Phone Call Transfer**.
3. Select **ON** or **OFF**.

## Ring Tone

**Vehicle:** The fixed ring tone sounds from the speakers.

**Phone:** Depending on the make and model of the mobile phone, the ring tone stored in the phone will sound if the phone is connected.

## ■ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History



### ■ When Automatic Phone Sync is set to On:

When your phone is paired, the contents of its phonebook and call history are automatically imported to the system.

### ■ Changing the Automatic Phone Sync setting

1. Go to the phone settings screen.
  - ▶ Phone settings screen P. 338
2. Select **Auto-sync Phone**.
3. Select **ON** or **OFF**.

## ▶▶ Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History

On some phones, it is necessary to set up it enabled to be imported the mobile phonebook.

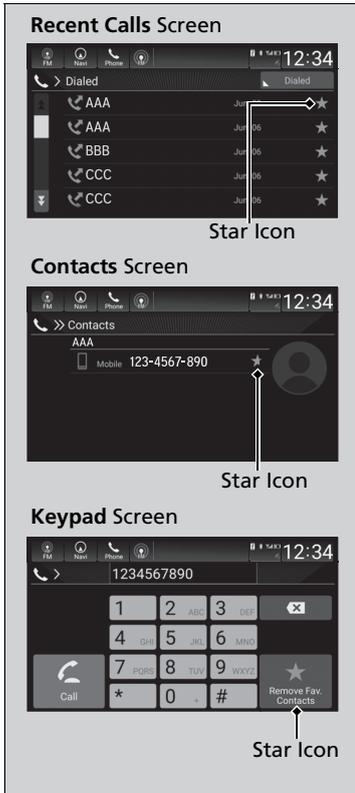
When you select a name from the list in the mobile phonebook, you can see a category icon. The icons indicate what types of numbers are stored for that name.



On some phones, it may not be possible to import the category icons to the system.

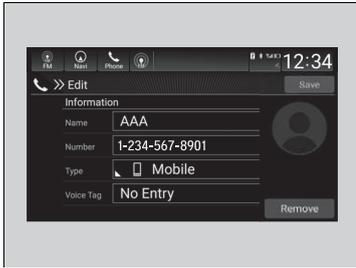
The phonebook is updated after every connection. Call history is updated after every connection or call.

## Favourite Contacts



To store a number as a favourite contact:

1. Go to the phone menu screen.
  - ▶ **Phone menu screen** P. 339
2. Select the **Recent Calls**, **Contacts**, or **Keypad** screen.
3. Select the star icon.
  - ▶ A notification appears on the screen if the favourite contact is successfully stored.
  - ▶ To remove the favourite contact, select the star icon again.



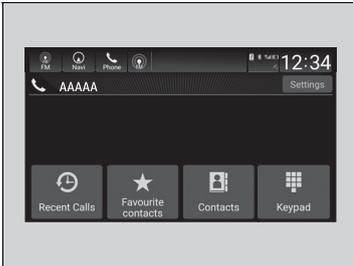
### ■ To edit a favourite contact

1. Go to the phone menu screen.
  - ▶ **Phone menu screen** P. 339
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
3. Select **Edit** on the favourite contact entry you want to edit.
4. Select a setting you want.
5. Select **Save**.

### ■ To delete a favourite contact

1. Go to the phone menu screen.
  - ▶ **Phone menu screen** P. 339
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
3. Select **Edit** on the favourite contact entry you want to delete.
4. Select **Remove**.
5. A confirmation message appears on the screen. Select **Yes**.

## Making a Call



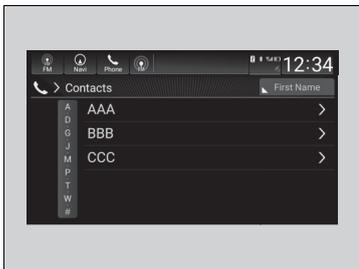
You can make calls by inputting any phone number, or by using the imported phonebook, call history, or favourite contact entries.

## ▶▶ Making a Call

Once a call is connected, you can hear the voice of the person you are calling through the audio speakers.

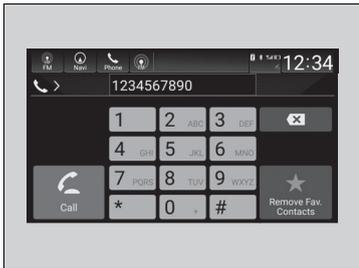
While there is an active connection with Apple CarPlay, phone calls cannot be made with Hands-Free Telephone system and are only made from Apple CarPlay.

*Continued*



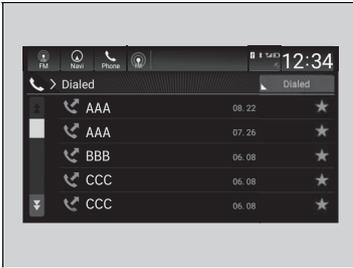
■ **To make a call using the imported phonebook**

1. Go to the phone menu screen.
  - ▶ **Phone menu screen** P. 339
2. Select **Contacts**.
3. Select a name.
  - ▶ You can sort by **First Name** or **Surname**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
4. Select a number.
  - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.



■ **To make a call using a phone number**

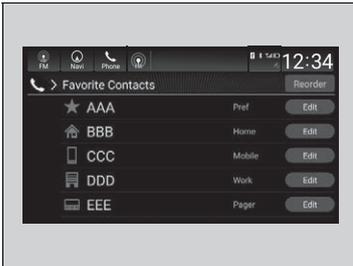
1. Go to the phone menu screen.
  - ▶ **Phone menu screen** P. 339
2. Select **Keypad**.
3. Select a number.
  - ▶ Use the keyboard on the touch screen for entering numbers.
4. Select **Call**.
  - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.



■ **To make a call using the call history**

Call history is stored by **All**, **Dialed**, **Missed**, and **Received**.

1. Go to the phone menu screen.
  - ▶ **Phone menu screen** P. 339
2. Select **Recent Calls**.
  - ▶ You can sort by **All**, **Dialed**, **Missed**, or **Received**. Select the icon on the upper right of the screen.
3. Select a number.
  - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.



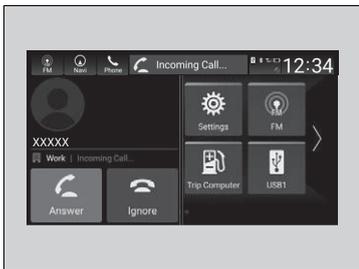
■ **To make a call using a favourite contact entry**

1. Go to the phone menu screen.
  - ▶ **Phone menu screen** P. 339
2. Select **Favourite contacts**.
  - ▶ You can change the order of favourite contact entries by selecting **Reorder**.
3. Select a number.
  - ▶ Dialing starts automatically.

☒ **To make a call using the call history**

The call history appears only when a phone is connected to the system.

## ■ Receiving a Call



When there is an incoming call, an audible notification sounds (if activated) and the **Incoming Call...** screen appears.

Press the  button to answer the call.  
Press the  button to decline or end the call.

## ■ Options During a Call

The following options are available during a call.

**Mute:** Mute your voice.

**Use Handheld:** Transfer a call from the system to your phone.

**Keypad:** Send numbers during a call. This is useful when you call a menu-driven phone system.



The available options are shown on the lower half of the screen.

Select the option.

- ▶ The mute icon appears when **Mute** is selected. Select **Mute** again to turn it off.

## ☒ Receiving a Call

### Call Waiting

Press the  button to put the current call on hold to answer the incoming call.

Press the  button again to return to the current call.

Select **Ignore** to ignore the incoming call if you do not want to answer it.

Press the  button if you want to hang up the current call.

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen instead of the  and  buttons.

## ☒ Options During a Call

You can select the icons on the audio/information screen.

# Driving

This chapter discusses driving and refueling.



<b>Before Driving</b> .....	352
<b>Towing a Trailer</b> .....	356
<b>When Driving</b>	
Starting the Engine .....	361
Precautions While Driving.....	363
Continuously Variable Transmission... ..	364
Shifting.....	365
ECON Mode .....	369
Auto Idle Stop*.....	370
Cruise Control*.....	376
Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System ..	379
Blind spot information System* .....	381
<b>Oceanian models</b>	
Deflation Warning System.....	384

<b>Middle Eastern models</b>	
Deflation Warning System.....	387
<b>Taiwanese models</b>	
Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) ...	390
<b>Honda Sensing*</b> .....	393
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) .....	396
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC).....	407
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) ..	420
Road Departure Mitigation System... ..	428
Front Sensor Camera .....	433
Radar Sensor.....	435
<b>Braking</b>	
Brake System .....	436

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).....	438
Brake Assist System .....	439
Emergency Stop Signal .....	440
<b>Parking Your Vehicle</b>	
When Stopped .....	441
Parking Sensor System* .....	443
Cross Traffic Monitor* .....	448
<b>Multi-View Rear Camera*</b> .....	452
<b>Multi-View Camera*</b> .....	454
<b>Refueling</b> .....	483
<b>Fuel Economy and CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions</b> ....	486

\* Not available on all models

## Driving Preparation

Check the following items before you start driving.

### Exterior Checks

- Make sure there are no obstructions on the windows, door mirrors, exterior lights, or other parts of the vehicle.
  - ▶ Remove any frost, snow, or ice.
  - ▶ Remove any snow on the roof, as this can slip down and obstruct your field of vision while driving. If frozen solid, remove ice once it has softened.
  - ▶ When removing ice from around the wheels, be sure not to damage the wheel or wheel components.
- Make sure the bonnet is securely closed.
  - ▶ If the bonnet opens while driving, your front view will be blocked.
- Make sure the tyres are in good condition.
  - ▶ Check air pressures, and check for damage and excessive wear.
    - ✦ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 513
- Make sure there are no people or objects behind or around the vehicle.
  - ▶ There are blind spots from the inside.

### Exterior Checks

#### NOTICE

When doors are frozen shut, use warm water around the door edges to melt any ice. Do not try to force them open, as this can damage the rubber trim around the doors. When done, wipe dry to avoid further freezing.

Do not pour warm water into the key cylinder. You will be unable to insert the key if the water freezes in the hole.

Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite flammable materials left under the bonnet, causing a fire. If you've parked your vehicle for an extended period, inspect and remove any debris that may have collected, such as dried grass and leaves that have fallen or have been carried in for use as a nest by a small animal. Also check under the bonnet for leftover flammable materials after you or someone else has performed maintenance on your vehicle.

## Interior Checks

- Store or secure all items on board properly.
  - ▶ Carrying too much luggage, or improperly storing it, can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, stopping distance, and tyres, and make it unsafe.
    - 📖 **Load Limit** P. 355
- Do not pile items higher than the seat height.
  - ▶ They can block your view and may be thrown forward in the event of sudden braking.
- Do not place anything in the front seat footwells. Make sure to secure the floor mat.
  - ▶ An object or unsecured floor mat can interfere with your brake and accelerator pedal operation while driving.
- If you have any animals on board, do not let them move around in the vehicle.
  - ▶ They may interfere with driving and a crash could occur.
- Securely close all doors and the tailgate.
- Adjust your seating position properly.
  - ▶ Adjust the head restraint, too.
    - 📖 **Seats** P. 211
    - 📖 **Adjusting the Front and Second Row Outer Head Restraint Positions** P. 224
- Adjust the mirrors and steering wheel properly.
  - ▶ Adjust them while sitting in the proper driving position.
    - 📖 **Mirrors** P. 208
    - 📖 **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** P. 207

## Interior Checks

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area or tow a trailer\*, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

Your vehicle is equipped with the automatic headlight adjusting system that automatically adjusts the vertical angle of the low beam headlights.

\* Not available on all models

- Be sure items placed on the floor behind the front seats cannot roll under the seats.
  - ▶ They can interfere with the driver's ability to operate the pedals, or the operation of the seats.
- Everyone in the vehicle must fasten their seat belt.
  - 📄 **Fastening a Seat Belt** P. 42
- Make sure that the indicators in the instrument panel come on when you start the vehicle, and go off soon after.
  - ▶ Always have a dealer check the vehicle if a problem is indicated.
    - 📄 **Indicators** P. 98

## Load Limit

When you load luggage, the total weight of the vehicle, all passengers, and luggage must not exceed the maximum permissible weight.

➤ **Specifications** P. 572

### Australian and New Zealand models

The load for the front and rear axles also must not exceed the maximum permissible axle weight.

➤ **Specifications** P. 572

### ⚠ Load Limit

## ⚠ WARNING

Overloading or improper loading can affect handling and stability and cause a crash in which you can be hurt or killed.

Follow all load limits and other loading guidelines in this manual.

Except 7-seater models for Australia and New Zealand

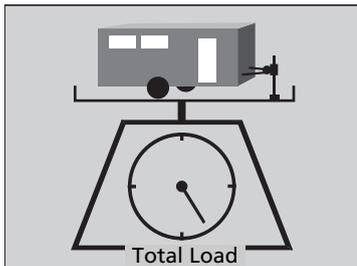
Your vehicle is not designed to tow a trailer. Attempting to do so can void your warranties.

7-seater models for Australia and New Zealand

## Towing Preparation

### Towing Load Limits

Your vehicle can tow a trailer if you carefully observe the load limits, use the proper equipment, and follow the towing guidelines. Check the load limits before driving.



#### ■ Total trailer weight

Do not exceed the maximum towing weight of the trailer and towbar (with/without brakes), luggage and everything in or on it.

Towing loads in excess of the maximum towing weight can seriously affect vehicle handling and performance and can damage the engine and drivetrain.

### » Towing Load Limits

## ⚠ WARNING

Exceeding any load limit or improperly loading your vehicle and trailer can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

**Check the loading of your vehicle and trailer carefully before starting to drive.**

Check if all loads are within limits at a public scale. If a public scale is not available, add the estimated weight of your luggage load to the weight of your trailer (as quoted by the manufacturer), and the towbar down load.

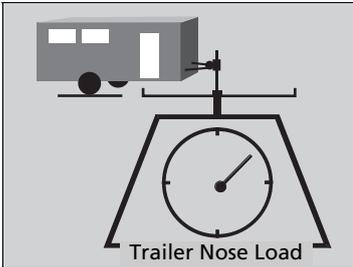
Break-in Period.

Avoid towing a trailer during your vehicle's first 1,000 km.

If you tow a trailer in mountainous conditions, remember to reduce 10% of the combined vehicle and trailer weights from the maximum towing weight for every 1,000 metres of elevation.

Never exceed the maximum towing weight and specified load limit.

➤ **Specifications** P. 572



### ■ Trailer nose load

The trailer nose load should never exceed 50 kg. This is the amount of weight the trailer puts on the towbar when it is fully-loaded. As a rule of thumb for trailer weights of less than 500 kg, the trailer nose load should be 10 percent of the total trailer package.

- Excessive trailer nose load reduces front tyre traction and steering control. Too little trailer nose load can make the trailer unstable and cause it to sway.
- To achieve a proper trailer nose load, start by loading 60% of the load toward the front of the trailer and 40% toward the rear. Readjust the load as needed.

## ■ Towing Equipment and Accessories

Towing equipment varies by the size of your trailer, how much load you are towing, and where you are towing.

### ■ Towbars

The towbar must be of an approved type and properly bolted to the underbody.

### ■ Safety chains

Always use safety chains when you tow a trailer. Leave enough slack to allow the trailer to turn corners easily, but do not allow the chains to drag on the ground.

### ■ Trailer brakes

If you are thinking of getting a trailer that has brakes, be sure they are electronically actuated. Do not attempt to tap into your vehicle's hydraulic system. No matter how successful it may seem, any attempt to attach trailer brakes to your vehicle's hydraulic system will lower braking effectiveness and create a potential hazard.

### ■ Additional towing equipment

There may be laws requiring special outside mirrors when towing a trailer. Even if mirrors are not required in your locale, you should install special mirrors if visibility is restricted in any way.

### ■ Trailer light

Trailer lights and equipment must comply with the regulations of the country where you are driving. Check with your local trailer sales or rental agency for the requirements in the area where you plan to tow.

## ▶ Towing Equipment and Accessories

Make sure that all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and that it meets the regulations of the country where you are driving.

Consult your trailer sales or rental agency if any other items are recommended or required for your towing situation.

Consult your trailer maker for proper installation and setup of the equipment. Improper installation and setup can affect the handling, stability, and braking performance of your vehicle.

The lighting and wiring of trailers can vary by type and brand. If a connector is required, it should only be installed by a qualified technician.

7-seater models for Australia and New Zealand

## Driving Safely with a Trailer

### Things You Need To Know Before Towing a Trailer

- Have the trailer properly serviced and keep it in good condition.
- Make sure that all the weights and load in the vehicle and trailer are within limits.
  - ▣ **Towing Load Limits** P. 356
- Securely attach the towbar, safety chains, and other necessary parts to the trailer.
- Securely store all the items in and on the trailer so that they do not shift while driving.
- Check if the lights and brakes on the trailer are working properly.
- Check the pressure of the trailer tyres, including the spare.
- Check regulations concerning the maximum speed or driving restrictions for vehicles towing trailers. If you are driving across several countries, check each country's requirements before leaving home, because regulations may vary.
- Turn off the Auto Idle Stop system using the Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button. The trailer weight can affect your vehicle's brake effectiveness if Auto Idle Stop is activated on a hill while towing a trailer.

### Driving Safely with a Trailer

Operating speed when towing a trailer must not exceed 100 km/h.

#### Parking

In addition to the normal precautions, place wheel chocks at each of the trailer's tyres.

We recommend you drive uphill of less than 12% slope. Follow the trailer association's recommendations for suitable roads.

Winds caused by passing large vehicles can sway your trailer, keep a constant speed and steer straight ahead.

Always drive slowly and have someone guide you when reversing.

Continued

## ■ Towing Speeds and Gears

- Drive slower than normal.
- Obey posted speed limits for vehicles with trailers.
- Use the **[D]** position when towing a trailer on level roads.

## ■ Turning and Braking

- Turn more slowly and with a wider turning arc than normal.
- Allow more time and distance for braking.
- Do not brake or turn suddenly.

## ■ Driving in Hilly Terrain

- Closely watch your high temperature indicator. If the indicator remains on, turn off the climate control system and reduce speed. Pull to the side of the road safely to cool down the engine if necessary.
- Shift to the **[S]** position and use the paddle shifter to shift down when driving down hills.  
This helps to increase engine braking efficiently and prevent the brake system from overheating.

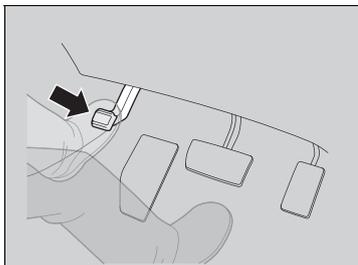
## ▣ Towing Speeds and Gears

When towing a fixed-sided trailer (e.g., camper), do not exceed 88 km/h. At higher speeds, the trailer may sway or affect vehicle handling.

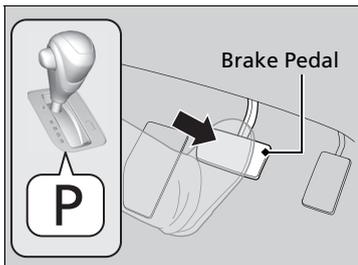
## ▣ Driving in Hilly Terrain

If you use the paddle shifters when driving uphill and downhill, select 3rd, 2nd, or 1st gear, depending on the vehicle speed and road conditions. Do not use 4th and 5th gears.

## Starting the Engine



1. Make sure the parking brake is applied.



2. Check that the shift lever is in **P**, then depress the brake pedal.

▶ Although it is possible to start the vehicle in **N**, it is safer to start it in **P**.



3. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button without depressing the accelerator pedal.

### Starting the Engine

Keep your foot firmly on the brake pedal when starting the engine.

The engine is harder to start in cold weather and in thinner air found at altitudes above 2,400 metres.

When starting the engine in cold weather, turn off all electrical accessories such as the lights, climate control system, and rear demister in order to reduce battery drain.

If the exhaust system sounds abnormal or you can smell exhaust gas inside the vehicle, have your vehicle checked by a dealer. There may be a problem with the engine or exhaust system.

Bring the keyless remote close to the **ENGINE START/STOP** button if the battery in the keyless remote is weak.

▶ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak**  
P. 546

## ■ Starting to Drive

1. Keeping your right foot on the brake pedal, release the parking brake. Check that the parking brake and brake system indicator has gone off.
  - 📄 **Parking Brake** P. 436
2. Put the shift lever in **[D]**. Select **[R]** when reversing.
3. Gradually release the brake pedal and gently depress the accelerator pedal to pull away.

## ■ Hill start assist system

Hill start assist keeps the brake engaged briefly to help to prevent the vehicle from rolling on inclines as you move your foot from the brake pedal to the accelerator.

Put the transmission into **[D]** or **[S]** when facing uphill, or **[R]** when facing downhill, then release the brake pedal.

## ■ Stopping the Engine

You can turn the engine off when the vehicle is completely stopped.

1. Put the transmission into **[P]**.
2. Press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

## 📄 Starting the Engine

The engine may not start if the keyless remote is subjected to strong radio waves.

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button to start the engine.

If the engine does not start, wait at least 30 seconds before starting the engine again.

The immobilizer system protects your vehicle from theft.

If an improperly coded device is used, the engine's fuel system is disabled.

📄 **Immobilizer System** P. 182

## 📄 Hill start assist system

Hill start assist may not prevent the vehicle from rolling downhill on a very steep or slippery slope, and will not operate on small inclines.

Hill start assist is not a replacement for the parking brake.

Hill start assist will operate even when VSA is switched off.

## Precautions While Driving

### ■ In a Fog

Visibility becomes low when it is foggy. When you drive, turn on the low beam headlights even during the daytime. Slow down, using the road line in the centre, guard rails, and the taillights of the vehicle ahead of you as your driving guide.

### ■ In a Strong Wind

If a strong side wind drifts your vehicle while driving, hold the steering wheel tight. Slowly decelerate your vehicle and keep your vehicle in the middle of the road. Be careful with wind gusts especially when your vehicle is exiting a tunnel, driving on a bridge or river bank, and driving through an open area like a quarry, and when a large lorry is passing by.

### ■ In Rain

The road is slippery when raining. Avoid hard braking, rapid acceleration, and abrupt steering and be more cautious when driving. It is likely to experience hydroplaning phenomenon if you are driving on a rutted road with puddles. Do not drive in deep water and on flooded roads. This can damage the engine or driveline, or cause electrical component failure.

### ■ Other Precautions

If there is a strong impact with something under the vehicle, stop in a safe location. Check the underside of the vehicle for damage or any fluid leaks.

#### ⌘ Precautions While Driving

**CAUTION:** Do not drive on the road where water is deep. Driving through deep water will cause damage to the engine and electrical equipment and the vehicle will break down.

#### NOTICE

Do not operate the shift lever while pressing the accelerator pedal. You could damage the transmission.

#### NOTICE

If you repeatedly turn the steering wheel at an extremely low speed, or hold the steering wheel in the full left or right position for a while, the electric power steering (EPS) system heats up. The system goes into a protective mode, and limits its performance. The steering wheel becomes harder and harder to operate. Once the system cools down, the EPS system is restored. Repeated operation under these conditions can eventually damage the system.

If the power mode is set to ACCESSORY while driving, the engine will shut down and all steering and brake power assist functions will stop, making it difficult to control the vehicle.

Do not select **[N]** while driving as you will lose engine braking (and acceleration) performance.

During the first 1,000 km of operation, avoid sudden acceleration or full throttle operation so as not to damage the engine or powertrain.

Avoid hard braking for the first 300 km. You should also follow this when the brake pads are replaced.

## Continuously Variable Transmission

### ■ Creeping

When the engine runs at higher idle speeds, the creeping force increases. Keep the brake pedal firmly depressed when stopped.

### ■ Kickdown

Quickly depressing the accelerator pedal while driving uphill may cause the transmission to drop to a lower ratio, unexpectedly increasing vehicle speed. Depress the accelerator pedal carefully, especially on slippery roads and curves.

### ⌘ Precautions While Driving

#### NOTICE

The following can damage the under spoiler:

- Parking the vehicle by a parking block
- Parallel parking along the road shoulder
- Driving towards the bottom of a hill
- Driving up or down to a different surface level (such as a road shoulder)
- Driving on a rutted or bumpy road
- Driving on a road with potholes

### ⌘ In Rain

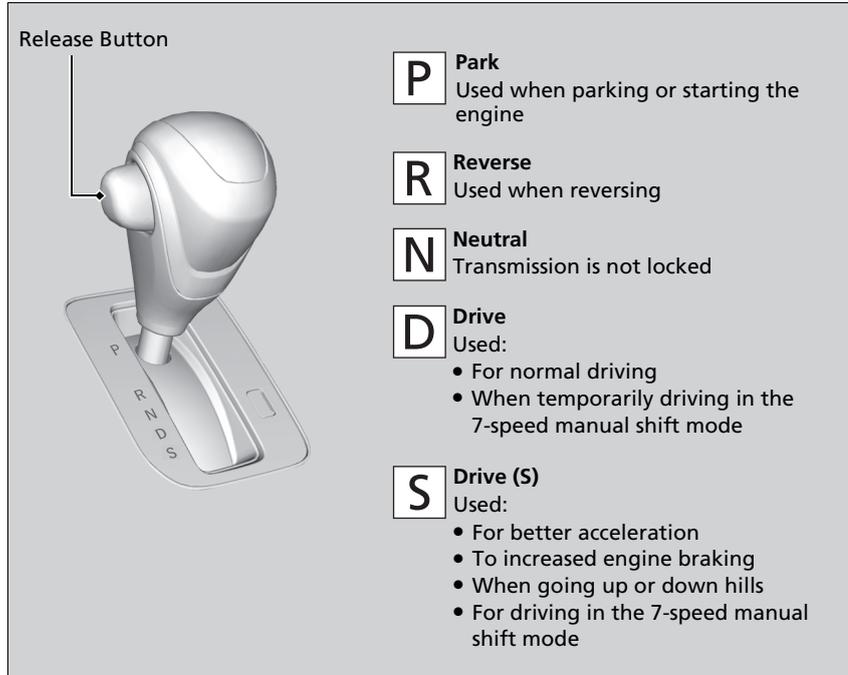
Be careful when hydroplaning phenomenon occurs. When you drive on a road covered with water at excessive speed, a layer of water builds between the tyres and the road surface. If this occurs, the vehicle cannot respond to control inputs such as steering, and braking.

Slowly decelerate when you shift down. If the road is slippery, sudden engine braking can cause the tyres to skid.

## Shifting

Change the shift position in accordance with your driving needs.

### ■ Shift lever positions

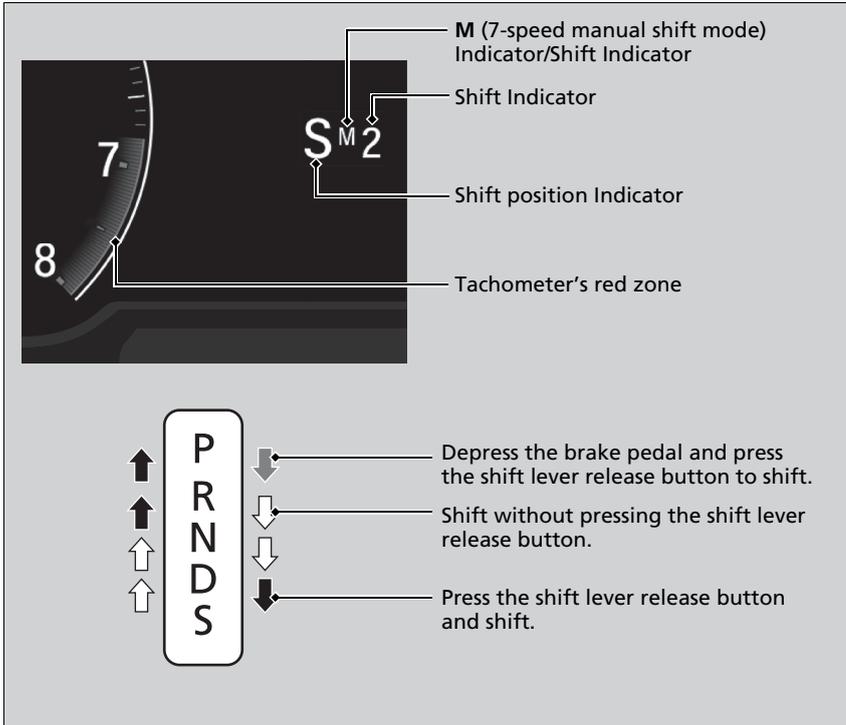


### ☒ Shift lever positions

You cannot change the power mode from ON to VEHICLE OFF unless the shift position is in **P**.

The vehicle may move very slightly even in **N** while the engine is cold.  
Depress the brake pedal firmly and, when necessary, apply the parking brake.

## ■ Shift Lever Operation



## ▶ Shift Lever Operation

### NOTICE

When you change the shift position from **D** to **R** and vice versa, come to a complete stop and keep the brake pedal depressed. Operating the shift lever before the vehicle has come to a complete standstill can damage the transmission.

Use the shift position indicator to check the lever position before pulling away.

Whichever position the shift lever is in when driving, a blinking transmission indicator indicates a transmission problem. Avoid sudden acceleration and have the transmission checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

The fuel supply may be cut off if you drive at engine speeds in or over the tachometer's red zone (engine speed limit). If this happens, you may experience a slight jolt.

It may not be possible to operate the shift lever if the brake pedal is applied while the shift lever release button is held down. Depress the brake pedal first.

When shifting positions in extremely low temperatures (-30°C), there may be a short delay before the shift position is displayed. Always confirm you are in the correct shift position before driving.

## ■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

Use the paddle shifters to change between 1st and 7th speeds without releasing your hands from the steering wheel. The transmission switches to the 7-speed manual shift mode when you pull a paddle shifter while driving. This mode is useful when engine braking is needed.

### ■ When the transmission is in **D**:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode temporarily, and the number is displayed in the shift indicator.

The 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled automatically if you drive at constant speed or accelerate, and the number in the shift indicator goes off.

You can cancel this mode by pulling the **+** paddle shifter for a few seconds.

The 7-speed manual shift mode is especially useful when reducing the vehicle speed temporarily before making a turn.

### ■ When the transmission is in **S**:

The shift mode goes into the 7-speed manual shift mode. The **M** indicator and the speed number are displayed in the shift indicator. As the vehicle speed slows down, the transmission automatically shifts down accordingly. When the vehicle comes to a stop, it automatically shifts down into 1st.

If the vehicle speed increases and the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone, the transmission automatically shifts up.

## ⊞ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode

In the 7-speed manual shift mode, the transmission shifts up or down by operating either paddle shifter under the following conditions:

Shift Up: The engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the higher speed position.

Shift Down: The engine speed reaches the highest threshold of the lower speed position.

When the engine speed reaches near the tachometer's red zone, the transmission shifts up automatically.

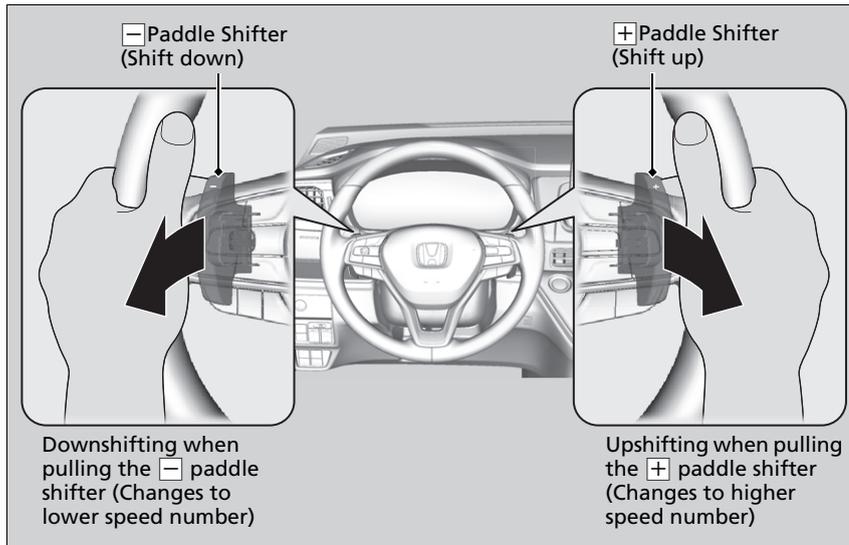
When the engine speed reaches the lowest threshold of the selected speed position, the transmission shifts down automatically.

Operating the paddle shifters on slippery surfaces may cause the tyres to lock up. In this case, the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled and goes back to the normal **D** driving mode.

## ■ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation

You can only pull away in 1st speed.

When cancelling the 7-speed manual shift mode, move the shift lever from **S** to **D**. When the 7-speed manual shift mode is cancelled, the **M** indicator and shift indicator will turn off.



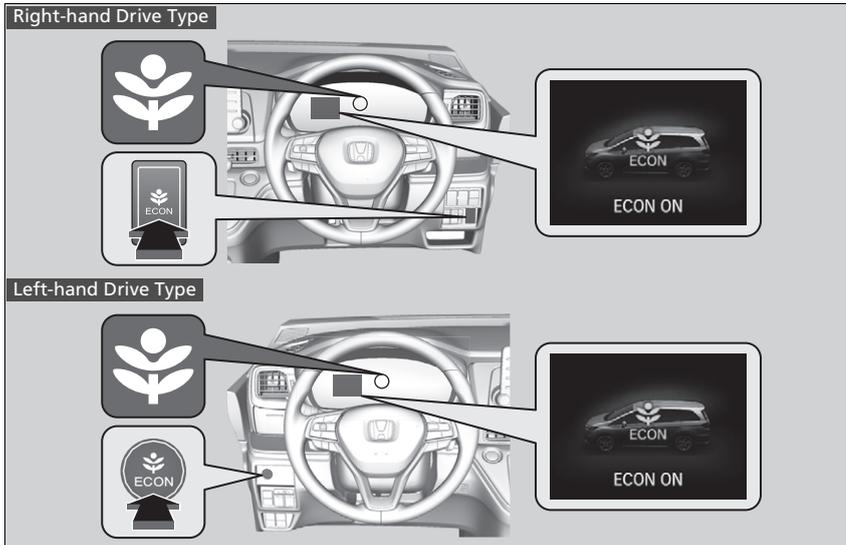
## ⌘ 7-Speed Manual Shift Mode Operation

Each paddle shift operation makes a single speed change.

To change continuously, release the paddle shifter before pulling it again for the next speed.

The shift indicator blinks when you cannot shift up or down. It indicates that your vehicle speed is not in its allowable shifting range. Slightly accelerate to shift up and decelerate to shift down while the indicator is blinking.

## ECON Mode



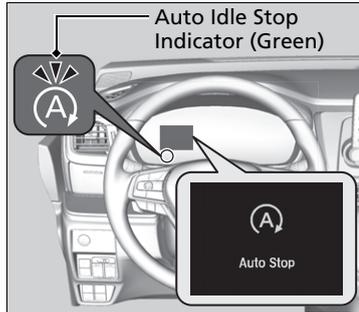
The **ECON** button turns the ECON mode on and off.  
 The ECON mode helps you improve your fuel economy by adjusting the performance of the engine, transmission, and climate control system.

### ⌘ ECON Mode

While in ECON mode, the climate control system has greater temperature fluctuation.

## Auto Idle Stop\*

To help to maximise fuel economy, the engine automatically stops when the vehicle comes to a stop, depending on environmental and vehicle operating conditions. The indicator (green) comes on at this time.



The engine then restarts once the vehicle is about to move again, and the indicator (green) goes off.

➤ **The Engine Automatically Restarts When:**  
P. 374

The environmental and vehicle conditions that impact Auto Idle Stop system operation are varied.

➤ **Auto Idle Stop Activates When:**  
P. 372, 373

If the driver's door is opened while the indicator (green) is on, a buzzer sounds to notify you that the Auto Idle Stop function is in operation.

A message associated with Auto Idle Stop appears on the driver information interface.

➤ **Indicators** P. 98  
➤ **Customized Features** P. 315

### ➤ Auto Idle Stop\*

The 12-volt battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop. Using a 12-volt battery other than this specified type may shorten the 12-volt battery life, and prevent Auto Idle Stop from activating. If you need to replace the 12-volt battery, make sure to select the specified type. Ask a dealer for more details.

➤ **Specifications** P. 572

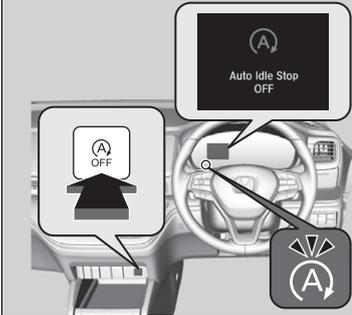
The duration of the Auto Idle Stop operation:

- **Increase** in the ECON mode, compared to when the ECON mode is off, with climate control in use.

➤ **ECON Mode** P. 369

## Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF

Right-hand drive type

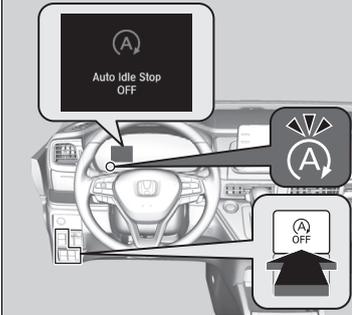


To turn the Auto Idle Stop system off, press this button. The Auto Idle Stop system stops.

- ▶ Auto Idle Stop system will stop and the indicator (amber) will come on.

The Auto Idle Stop system is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

Left-hand drive type



### Auto Idle Stop System ON/OFF

If you turn off the Auto Idle Stop system while it is activated, the engine will restart.

## ■ Auto Idle Stop Activates When:

The vehicle stops with the shift lever in **[D]** and the brake pedal depressed.

**Except 7-seater models for Australia and New Zealand**

When you shift into **[P]** quickly with depressing the brake pedal, the Auto Idle Stop continues to operate, even if the brake pedal is released.

▶ If you change the shift position, the engine may automatically restarts.

## ■ Auto Idle Stop does not activate when:

- The Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button is pressed.
- The driver's seat belt is not fastened.
- The engine coolant temperature is low or high.
- The transmission fluid temperature is low or high.
- The vehicle comes to a stop again before the vehicle speed reaches 5 km/h after the engine starts.
- Stopped on a steep incline.
- The transmission is in a position other than **[D]**.
- The engine is started with the bonnet open.
  - ▶ Turn off the engine. Close the bonnet before you restart the engine to activate Auto Idle Stop.
- The battery charge is low.
- The internal temperature of the battery is 5°C or less.
- The climate control system is in use, and the outside temperature is below -20°C or over 40°C.
- The climate control system is in use, and the temperature is set to **Hi** or **Lo**.
-  is ON (indicator on).
- The rear fan is set to maximum speed.
  - ▶ Auto Idle Stop may not activate under other conditions when the rear climate control system\*/rear cooling\* is in use.

## ⚠ Auto Idle Stop Activates When:

Do not open the bonnet while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated.  
If the bonnet is opened, the engine will not restart automatically.

In this case, restart the engine with the **ENGINE START/STOP** button.

▶ **Starting the Engine** P. 361

Pressing the **ENGINE START/STOP** button causes the engine to no longer restart automatically. Follow the standard procedure to start the engine.

▶ **Starting the Engine** P. 361

**Models with Honda smart parking assist system**

- The Honda smart parking assist system is in operation.

**■ Auto Idle Stop may not activate when:**

- The vehicle is stopped by braking suddenly.
- The steering wheel is operated.
- Altitude is high.
- The vehicle is repeatedly accelerated and decelerated at a low speed.
- The fan speed is high.
- The climate control system is in use, and there is a significant difference between the set temperature and the actual interior temperature.
- The climate control system is in use, and humidity in the interior is high.
- The rear fan is set to maximum speed.
  - ▶ Auto Idle Stop may not activate under other conditions when the rear climate control system\*/rear cooling\* is in use.

### ■ The Engine Automatically Restarts When:

- The brake pedal is released.
- When the transmission is put into **P** from **D** or **N** on a slope.

### ■ The engine restarts even if the brake pedal is depressed when:

- The Auto Idle Stop **OFF** button is pressed.
- The steering wheel is operated.

#### Except 7-seater models for Australia and New Zealand

- The transmission is put into **R**, **S**, and **P**, or taken out of **N** and put into **D**.
  - ▶ If you put the transmission into **P** after the Auto Idle Stop activates, the Auto Idle Stop continues to operate. In this case, the engine restarts when you move the shift lever other than **P**. When operating the shift lever, the brake pedal must be firmly depressed.

#### 7-seater models for Australia and New Zealand

- The transmission is put into **R** or **S**, or when it is set from **N** to **D**.
- The pressure on the brake pedal is reduced and the vehicle starts moving while stopped on an incline.
- The pressure on the brake pedal is repeatedly applied and released slightly during a stop.
- The battery charge becomes low.
- The accelerator pedal is depressed.
- The driver's seat belt is unlatched.
-  is ON (indicator on).
- The climate control system is in use, and the difference between the set temperature and actual interior temperature becomes significant.
- The climate control system is being used to dehumidify the interior.

### ▶▶ The Engine Automatically Restarts When:

If you are using an electronic device during Auto Idle Stop, the device may temporarily be turned off when the engine restarts.

- The rear fan is set to maximum speed.
  - ▶ Auto Idle Stop may not activate under other conditions when the rear climate control system\*/rear cooling\* is in use.

#### Models with Honda smart parking assist system

- The Honda smart parking assist system is started.

### Starting Assist Brake Function

Briefly keeps the brake applied after releasing the brake pedal to restart the engine. This can keep your vehicle from unexpectedly moving while on an incline.

## Cruise Control \*

Maintains a constant vehicle speed without having to keep your foot on the accelerator. Use cruise control on motorways or open roads where you can travel at a constant speed with little acceleration or deceleration.

### When to use

- Vehicle speed for cruise control:  
Desired speed in a range above roughly 40 km/h ~
- Shift positions for cruise control:  
In **D** or **S**

Always keep sufficient distance between you and the vehicle in front of you.

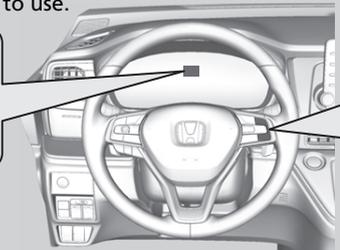


### How to use

**CRUISE MAIN** is on in the driver information interface.

Cruise control is ready to use.

- Press the **CRUISE** button on the steering wheel.



### ⓘ Cruise Control \*

## ⚠ WARNING

Improper use of the cruise control can lead to a crash.

Use the cruise control only when travelling on open motorways in good weather.

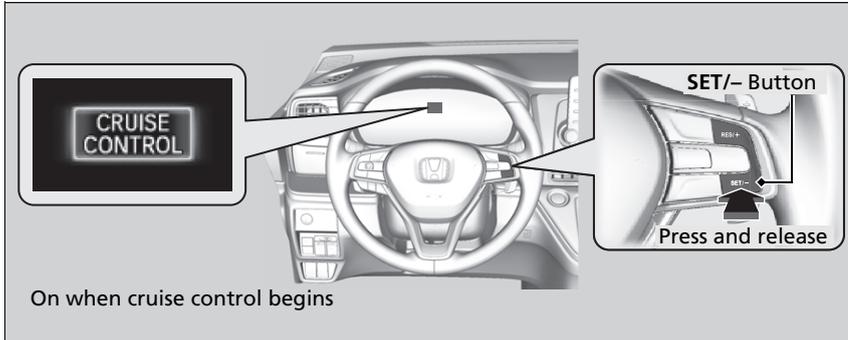
It may not be possible to maintain a constant speed when driving uphill or downhill.

When not using cruise control:

Turn off cruise control by pressing the **CRUISE** button.

While in ECON mode, it may take relatively more time to accelerate to maintain the set speed.

## ■ To Set the Vehicle Speed

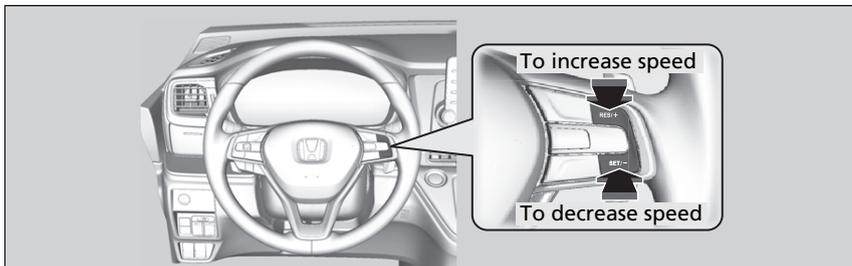


Take your foot off the accelerator pedal and press the **SET/-** button when you reach the desired speed.

The moment you release the **SET/-** button, the set speed is fixed, and cruise control begins. The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator comes on.

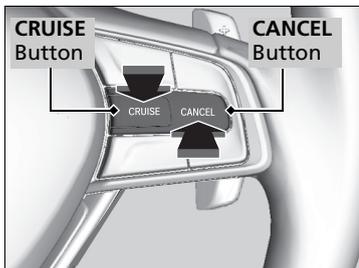
## ■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **SET/-** buttons on the steering wheel.



- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1.6 km/h.
- If you keep the button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases until you release it. This speed is then set.

## ■ To Cancel



To cancel cruise control, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **CRUISE** button.
- Depress the brake pedal.

The **CRUISE CONTROL** indicator goes off.

## ▶▶ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

You can set the vehicle speed using the **SET/-** button on the steering wheel when adjusting the speed with the accelerator and brake pedals.

## ▶▶ To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed:  
After cruise control has been cancelled, you can still resume the prior set speed by pressing the **RES/+** button while driving at a speed of at least 40 km/h or more.

You cannot set or resume in the following situations:

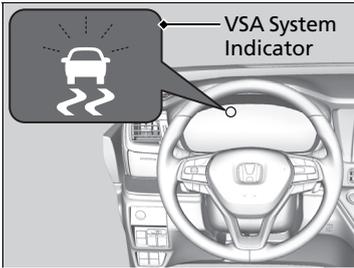
- When vehicle speed is less than 40 km/h
- When the **CRUISE** button is turned off

At vehicle speeds of 35 km/h or less, cruise control is cancelled automatically.

## Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

VSA helps to stabilise the vehicle during cornering if the vehicle turns more or less than what was intended. It also assists in maintaining traction on slippery surfaces. It does so by regulating engine output and selectively applying the brakes.

### ■ VSA Operation



When VSA activates, you may notice that the engine does not respond to the accelerator. You may also notice some noise from the hydraulic brake system. You will also see the indicator blink.

### ⊠ Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

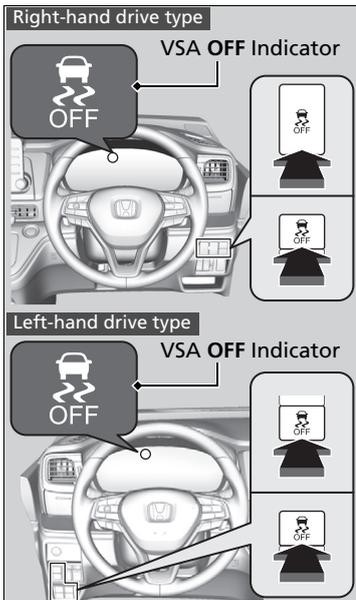
The VSA may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre, and the air pressures as specified.

When the VSA system indicator comes on and stays on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While this may not interfere with normal driving, have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

VSA cannot enhance stability in all driving situations and does not control the entire braking system. You still need to drive and corner at speeds appropriate for the conditions and always leave a sufficient margin of safety.

The main function of the VSA system is generally known as Electronic Stability Control (ESC). The system also includes a traction control function.

## ■ VSA On and Off



This button is on the driver side control panel. To partially disable VSA functionality/features, press and hold it until you hear a beep.

Your vehicle will have normal braking and cornering ability, but traction control function will be less effective.

To restore VSA functionality/features, press the  (VSA **OFF**) button until you hear a beep.

VSA is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

## ▶▶ Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) System

In certain unusual conditions when your vehicle gets stuck in shallow mud or fresh snow, it may be easier to free it with the VSA temporarily switched off.

When the  button is pressed, the traction control function becomes less effective. This allows for the wheels to spin more freely at low speed. You should only attempt to free your vehicle with the VSA off if you are not able to free it when the VSA is on.

Immediately after freeing your vehicle, be sure to switch VSA on again. We do not recommend driving your vehicle with the VSA system switched off.

You may hear a motor sound coming from the engine compartment while system checks are being performed immediately after starting the engine or while driving. This is normal.

## Blind spot information System\*

Is designed to detect vehicles in specified alert zones adjacent to your vehicle, particularly in harder to see areas commonly known as “blind spots.”

When the system detects vehicles approaching from behind in adjacent lanes, the appropriate indicator comes on for a few seconds, providing assistance when you change lanes.

### Blind spot information System\*

## ⚠ WARNING

**Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to change lanes before doing so may result in a crash and serious injury or death.**

**Do not rely only on the blind spot information system when changing lanes.**

**Always look in your mirrors, to either side of your vehicle, and behind you for other vehicles before changing lanes.**

### Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, blind spot information system has limitations. Over reliance on blind spot information system may result in a collision.

The blind spot information system alert indicator may not come on under the following conditions:

- A vehicle does not stay in the alert zone for more than two seconds.
- A vehicle is parked in a side lane.
- The speed difference between your vehicle and the vehicle you are passing is greater than 10 km/h.
- An object not detected by the radar sensors approaches or passes your vehicle.
- A vehicle running in the adjacent lane is a motorcycle or other small vehicle.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ How the system works

- The radar sensors detect a vehicle in the alert zone.

### Middle Eastern models

- Your vehicle speed is above 32 km/h.

### Except Middle Eastern models

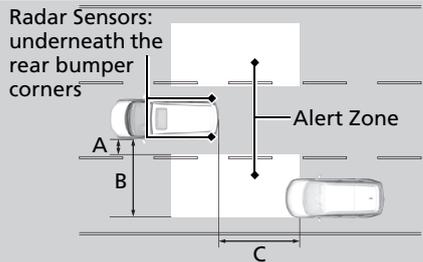
- Your vehicle speed is above 20 km/h.

### Alert zone range

A: Approx. 0.5 m

B: Approx. 3 m

C: Approx. 3 m



## ▶▶ Blind spot information System\*

The system is for your convenience only. Even if an object is within the alert zone, the following situations may occur.

- The blind spot information system alert indicator may not come on due to obstruction (splashes, etc.) even without the **Blind Spot Information Not Available** driver information interface.
- The blind spot information system alert indicator may come on even with the message appearing.

You can change the setting for the blind spot information system.

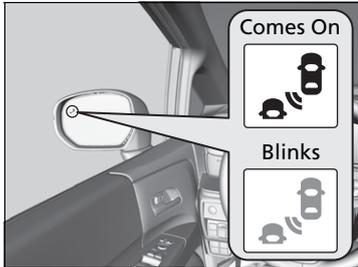
▶ **Customized Features** P. 315

### Australian and New Zealand models

Turn the system off when towing a trailer. The system may not work properly for the following reasons:

- The added mass tilts the vehicle and changes the radar coverage.
- The trailer itself can be detected by the radar sensors, causing the blind spot information system alert indicators to come on.

## ■ When the system detects a vehicle



**Blind spot information System Alert Indicator:** Located on the outside rearview mirror on both sides.

### **Comes on when:**

- A vehicle enters the alert zone from behind to overtake you with a speed difference of no more than 50 km/h from your vehicle.
- You pass a vehicle with a speed difference of no more than 20 km/h.

### **Blinks and a beeper sounds when:**

You move the turn signal lever in the direction of the detected vehicle. The beeper sounds three times.

## ⊠ Blind spot information System\*

Blind spot information system may be adversely affected when:

- Making a turn at an intersection.
- Objects (guard rails, poles, trees, etc.) are detected.
- An object that does not reflect radio waves well, such as a motorcycle, is in the alert zone.
- Driving on a curved road.
- A vehicle is moving from a far lane to the adjacent lane.
- The system picks up external electrical interference.
- The rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed.
- The orientation of the sensors has been changed.
- In bad weather (rain, snow, and fog).
- Driving on a bumpy road.
- Making a short turn that slightly tilts the vehicle.

For a proper blind spot information system operation:

- Always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.
- Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.
- Take your vehicle to a dealer if you need the rear bumper corner area or the radar sensors to be repaired, or the rear bumper corner area is strongly impacted.

\* Not available on all models

Oceanian models

## Deflation Warning System

Monitors tyre revolutions while you are driving over 30 km/h.

When there is a change in tyre revolutions, the system detects a decrease in tyre pressure.

### Deflation Warning System Initialisation

For proper use, initialise the system after the tyres are:

- Inflated to the recommended pressures.
- Changed or rotated.

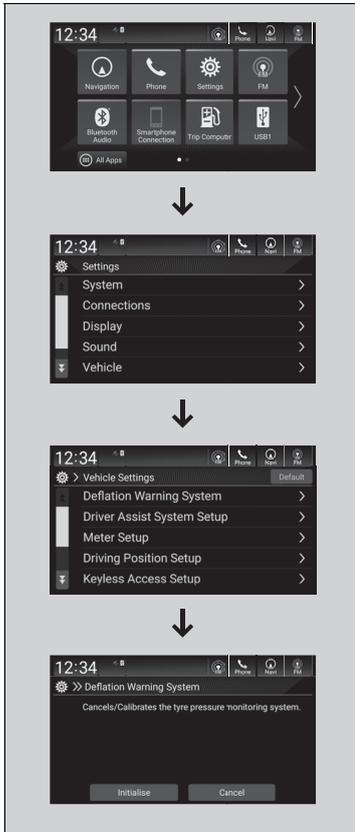
### Deflation Warning System

When a decrease in tyre pressure is detected, the deflation warning system indicator comes on with  on the driver information interface.

➤ **Deflation Warning System Indicator** P. 386

The deflation warning system may not function properly if tyre types and sizes are mixed. Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.

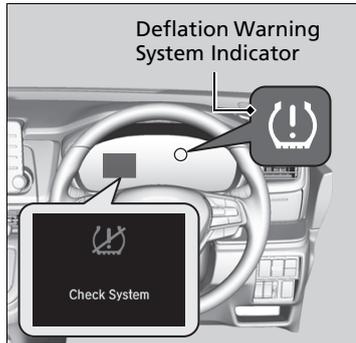
➤ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 513



You can initialise the system from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the  button.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Vehicle**.
5. Select **Deflation Warning System**.
6. Select **Initialise**.
  - If the **Failed** message appears, repeat steps 5-6.
  - The initialisation process finishes automatically.

## ■ Deflation Warning System Indicator



### ■ The indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- Any of the tyre's pressures is low.
- The system has not been initialised.
- A compact spare tyre is used.
- There is a heavier and uneven load on the tyres, such as when towing a trailer, than the condition at initialisation.

### ▶▶ Deflation Warning System Indicator

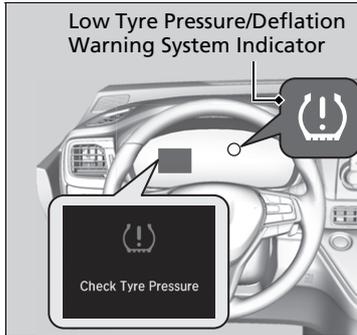
The indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- Two or more tyre's pressure are low.
- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Tyre chains are used.

Middle Eastern models

## Deflation Warning System

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the deflation warning system on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated.



This will cause the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on and a message to appear on the driver information interface.

### Deflation Warning System

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator to come on.

Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:

- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

The deflation warning system may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed.

Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.

➤ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 513

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.
- Tyre chains are used.

## ■ Deflation Warning System Initialisation

You must start deflation warning system initialisation every time you:

- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before initialising the deflation warning system:

- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.

📖 **Checking Tyres** P. 513

Make sure:

- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The shift lever is in **P**.
- The power mode is in ON.

### 📖 Deflation Warning System

The low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- A compact spare tyre is used.
- Tyre chains are used.

### 📖 Deflation Warning System Initialisation

Deflation warning system cannot be initialised if a compact spare tyre is installed.

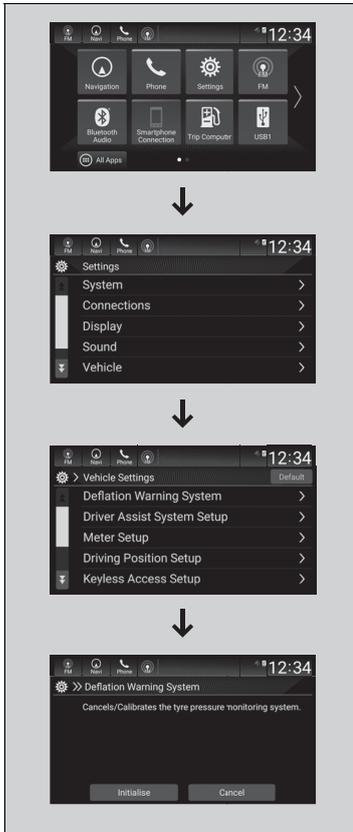
The initialisation process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 40–100 km/h.

During this period, if the power mode is turned on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the initialisation process is not yet complete.

You can initialise the system using the audio/information screen.

📖 **Customized Features** P. 315

If tyre chains are installed, remove them before initialising the deflation warning system.



You can initialise the system from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the  button
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Vehicle**.
5. Select **Deflation Warning System**.
6. Select **Initialise**.

- If the **Failed** message appears, repeat steps 5-6.
- The initialisation process finishes automatically.

#### » Deflation Warning System Initialisation

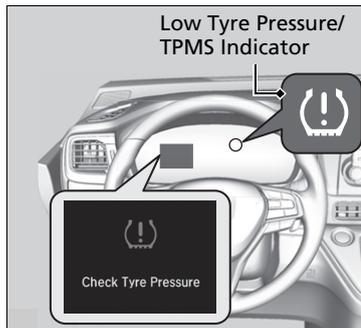
If the low tyre pressure/deflation warning system indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.

Taiwanese models

## Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Instead of directly measuring the pressure in each tyre, the TPMS on this vehicle monitors and compares the rolling radius and rotational characteristics of each wheel and tyre while you are driving to determine if one or more tyres are significantly under-inflated.



This will cause the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator to come on and a message to appear on the driver information interface.

### ▶▶ Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

The system does not monitor the tyres when driving at low speed.

Conditions such as low ambient temperature and altitude change directly affect tyre pressure and can trigger the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator to come on.

Tyre pressure checked and inflated in:

- Warm weather can become under-inflated in colder weather.
- Cold weather can become over-inflated in warmer weather.

The low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator will not come on as a result of over inflation.

The TPMS may not function properly if tyre type and size are mixed.

Make sure to use the same size and type of tyre.

▶▶ **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 513

The low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator may come on with a delay or may not come on at all when:

- You rapidly accelerate, decelerate, or turn the steering wheel.
- You drive on snowy or slippery roads.

The low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator may come on under the following conditions:

- A compact spare tyre is used.

## TPMS Initialisation

You must start TPMS initialisation every time you:

- Adjust the pressure in one or more tyres.
- Rotate the tyres.
- Replace one or more tyres.

Before initialising the TPMS:

- Set the cold tyre pressure in all four tyres.

▣ **Checking Tyres** P. 513

Make sure:

- The vehicle is at a complete stop.
- The shift lever is in **P**.
- The power mode is in ON.

### ▣ TPMS Initialisation

TPMS cannot be initialised if a compact spare tyre is installed.

The initialisation process requires approximately 30 minutes of cumulative driving at speeds between 40–100 km/h.

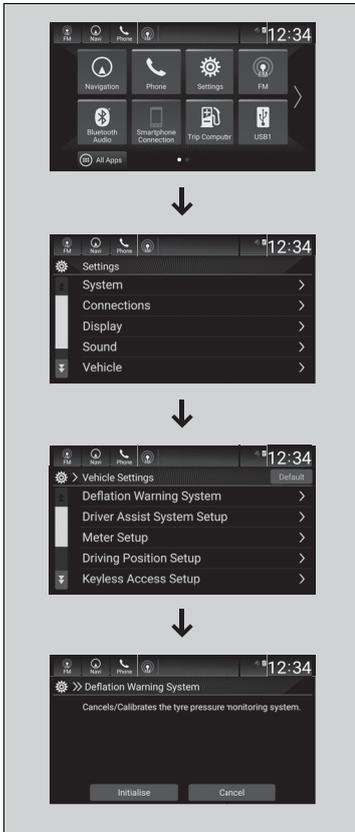
During this period, if the power mode is in on and the vehicle is not moved within 45 seconds, you may notice the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator comes on briefly. This is normal and indicates that the initialisation process is not yet complete.

You can initialise the system using the audio/information screen.

▣ **Customized Features** P. 315

If the low tyre pressure/TPMS indicator comes on even when the properly inflated specified regular tyres are installed, have vehicle checked by a dealer.

We recommend that the tyres be replaced with the same brand, model, and size as the originals. Ask a dealer for details.



You can initialise the system from the customized feature on the audio/information screen.

1. Set the power mode to ON.
2. Press the  button.
3. Select **Settings**.
4. Select **Vehicle**.
5. Select **Deflation Warning System**.
6. Select **Initialise**.
  - If the **Failed** message appears, repeat steps 5-6.
  - The initialisation process finishes automatically.

Honda Sensing is a driver support system which employs the use of two distinctly different kinds of sensors: a radar sensor located in the front grille and a front sensor camera mounted to the interior side of the windscreen, behind the rearview mirror.

Honda Sensing has following functions.

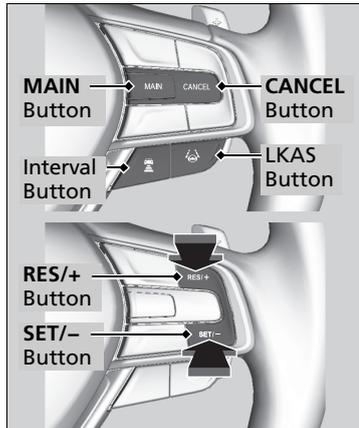
## ■ The functions which do not require switch operations to activate

- Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) 🚗 P. 396
- Road Departure Mitigation System 🚗 P. 428

## ■ The functions which require switch operations to activate

- Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) 🚗 P. 407
- Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) 🚗 P. 420

## ■ Operation Switches for the ACC/LKAS



### ■ MAIN Button

Press to activate standby mode for ACC and LKAS. Or press to cancel these systems.

### ■ LKAS Button

Press to activate standby mode for LKAS. Or press to cancel the system.

### ■ RES/+ and SET/- Button

Press **RES/+** button to resume the ACC or increase the vehicle speed.

Press **SET/-** button to set the ACC or decrease the vehicle speed.

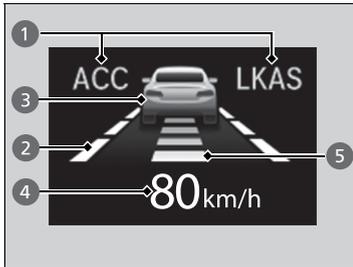
### ■ Interval Button

Press to change the ACC following-interval.

### ■ CANCEL Button

Press to cancel ACC.

## Driver Information Interface Content



You can see the current state of ACC and LKAS.

- ① Indicates that ACC and LKAS are ready to be activated.
- ② Indicates that LKAS is activated and whether or not traffic lane lines are detected.
- ③ Indicates whether or not ACC detected the vehicle ahead.
- ④ Shows vehicle set speed in ACC.
- ⑤ Shows set vehicle interval in ACC.

## Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

Can assist you when there is a possibility of your vehicle colliding with a vehicle or a pedestrian detected in front of yours. The CMBS is designed to alert you when the potential for a collision is determined, as well as to reduce your vehicle speed to help minimise collision severity when a collision is deemed unavoidable.

### Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)

#### Important Safety Reminder

The CMBS is designed to reduce the severity of an unavoidable collision. It does not prevent collisions nor stop the vehicle automatically. It is still your responsibility to operate the brake pedal and steering wheel appropriately according to the driving conditions.

The CMBS may not activate or may not detect a vehicle in front of your vehicle under certain conditions:

➤ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 401

For directions on the proper handling of the radar sensor, refer to the following page.

➤ **Radar Sensor** P. 435

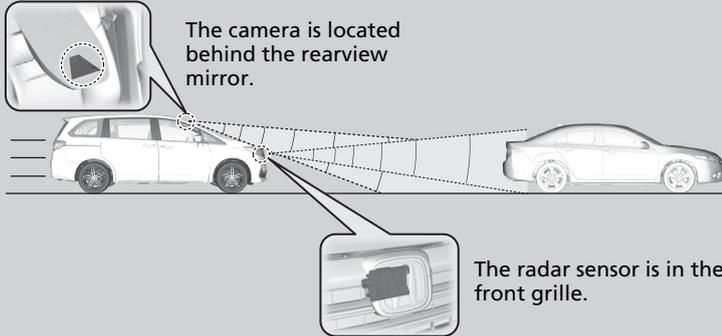
You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

➤ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 433

Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel alert you when the your vehicle speed is between 30 and 100 km/h with an oncoming vehicle detected in front of you.

## ■ How the system works

### When to use



The system starts monitoring the roadway ahead when your vehicle speed is about 5 km/h and there is a vehicle in front of you.

The CMBS activates when:

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian detected in front of you becomes about 5 km/h and over with a chance of a collision.
- Your vehicle speed is about 100 km/h or less and there is a chance of a collision with an oncoming detected vehicle or a pedestrian in front of you.

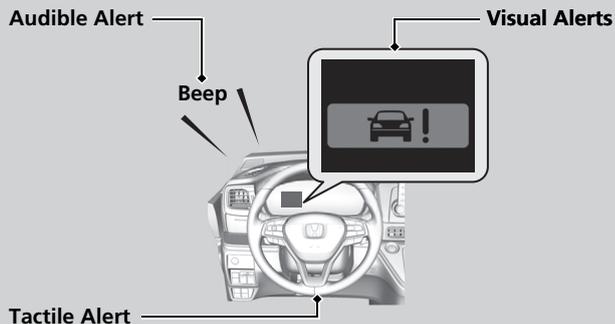
### How the system works

When the CMBS activates, it may automatically apply the brake. It will be cancelled when your vehicle stops or a potential collision is not determined.

## ■ When the system activates

The system provides visual, audible and tactile alerts of a possible collision, and stops if the collision is avoided.

- ▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, change lanes, etc.)



You can change the distance (**Far/Normal/Near**) between vehicles at which the system's earliest collision alert will come on through audio/information screen setting options.

- ▶ **Customized Features** P. 315

## ■ Vibration alert on the steering wheel

When a potential collision to an oncoming detected vehicle is determined, the system alerts you with rapid vibration on the steering wheel, in addition to visual and audible alerts.

- ▶ Take appropriate action to prevent a collision (apply the brakes, operate the steering wheel, etc.).

## ▶ When the system activates

The camera in the CMBS is also designed to detect pedestrians.

However, this pedestrian detection feature may not activate or may not detect a pedestrian in front of your vehicle under certain conditions.

Refer to the ones indicating the pedestrian detection limitations from the list.

- ▶ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 401

## ▶ Vibration alert on the steering wheel

Vibration alert function is disabled when the electric power steering (EPS) system indicator comes on.

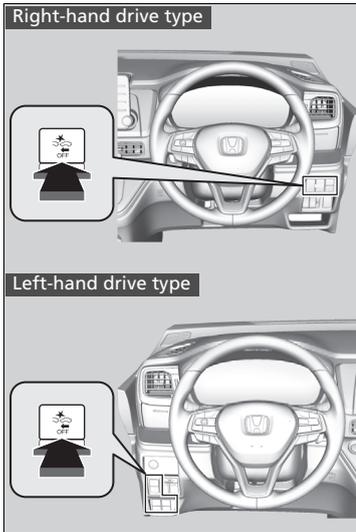
- ▶ **Customized Features** P. 315

## ■ Collision Alert Stages

The system has three alert stages for a possible collision. However, depending on circumstances, the CMBS may not go through all of the stages before initiating the last stage.

Distance between vehicles		CMBS			
		The radar sensor detects a vehicle	Audible & Visual WARNINGS	Steering Wheel	Braking
Stage one		There is a risk of a collision with the vehicle ahead of you.	When in <b>Far</b> , visual and audible alerts come on at a longer distance from a vehicle ahead than in <b>Normal</b> setting, and in <b>Near</b> , at a shorter distance than in <b>Normal</b> .	If an oncoming vehicle is detected, rapid vibration is provided.	—
Stage two		The risk of a collision has increased, time to respond is reduced.	Visual and audible alerts.	—	Lightly applied
Stage three		The CMBS determines that a collision is unavoidable.			Forcefully applied

## ■ CMBS On and Off



Press and hold the button until the beeper sounds to switch the system on or off.

When the CMBS is off:

- The CMBS indicator in the instrument panel comes on.
- A message on the driver information interface reminds you that the system is off.

The CMBS is turned on every time you start the engine, even if you turned it off the last time you drove the vehicle.

## ▶▶ CMBS On and Off

The CMBS may automatically shut off, and the CMBS indicator will come and stay on under certain conditions:

▶▶ **CMBS Conditions and Limitations** P. 401

## ■ CMBS Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the CMBS indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the CMBS functions.

📷 **Front Sensor Camera** P. 433

📷 **Radar Sensor** P. 435

### ■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between objects and the background.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as vehicles and pedestrians.
- Reflections on the interior of the windshield.
- Driving at night or in a dark condition such as a tunnel.

### ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on curvy, winding, or undulating roads.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.

## 📷 CMBS Conditions and Limitations

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

### ■ Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre, etc.).
- When tyre chains\* are installed.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- Driving with the parking brake applied.
- When the radar sensor in the front grille gets dirty.

#### 7-seater models for Australia and New Zealand

- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

### ■ Detection limitations

- A vehicle or pedestrian suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The distance between your vehicle and the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- When you accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle or pedestrian ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, or other small vehicle.
- When there are animals in front of your vehicle.
- When you drive on a curved, winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.

- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle or pedestrian in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Another vehicle suddenly comes in front of you at an intersection, etc.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.
- When driving through a narrow iron bridge.
- When the lead vehicle suddenly slows down.

**Limitations applicable to pedestrian detection only**

- When there is a group of people in front of your vehicle walking together side by side.
- Surrounding conditions or belongings of the pedestrian alter the pedestrian's shape, preventing the system from recognizing that the person is a pedestrian.
- When the pedestrian is shorter than about 1 metre or taller than about 2 metres in height.
- When a pedestrian blends in with the background.
- When a pedestrian is bent over or squatting, or when their hands are raised or they are running.
- When several pedestrians are walking ahead in a group.
- When the camera cannot correctly identify that a pedestrian is present due to an unusual shape (holding luggage, body position, size).

### ■ Automatic shutoff

The CMBS may automatically shut itself off and the CMBS indicator comes and stays on when:

- The temperature inside the system is high.
- You drive off-road or on a mountain road, or curved and winding road for an extended period.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected (wrong tyre size, flat tyre, etc.).
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.

Once the conditions that caused CMBS to shut off improve or are addressed (e.g., cleaning), the system comes back on.

## ■ With Little Chance of a Collision

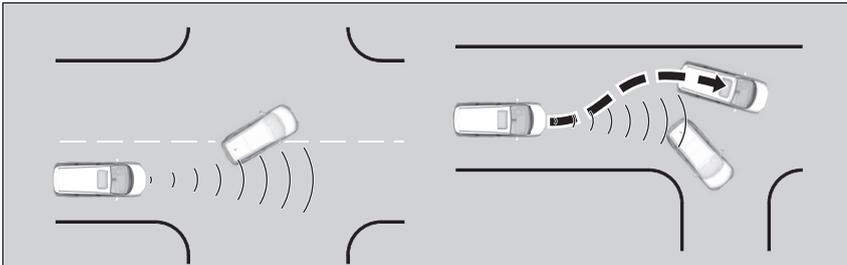
The CMBS may activate even when you are aware of a vehicle ahead of you, or when there is no vehicle ahead. Some examples of this are:

### ■ When Passing

Your vehicle approaches another vehicle ahead of you and you change lanes to pass.

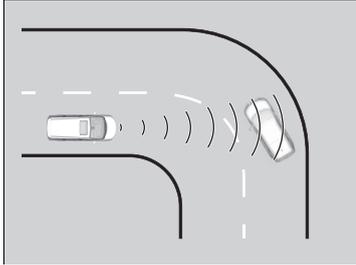
### ■ At an intersection

Your vehicle approaches or passes another vehicle that is making a left or right turn.



■ **On a curve**

When driving through curves, your vehicle comes to a point where an oncoming vehicle is right in front of you.

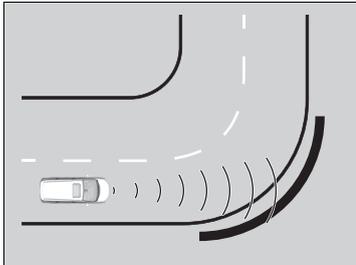


■ **Through a low bridge at high speed**

You drive under a low or narrow bridge at high speed.

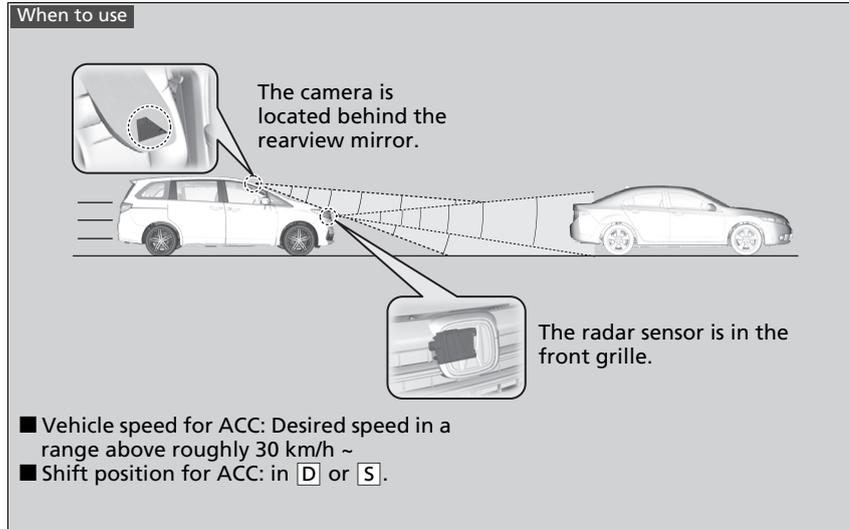
■ **Speed bumps, road work sites, train tracks, roadside objects, etc.**

You drive over speed bumps, steel road plates, etc., or your vehicle approaches train tracks or roadside objects (such as a traffic sign and guard rail) on a curve or, when parking, stationary vehicles and walls.



## Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

Helps maintain a constant vehicle speed and a set following-interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of yours, without you having to keep your foot on the brake or the accelerator.



### Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

#### **⚠ WARNING**

Improper use of ACC can lead to a crash.

Use ACC only when driving on motorways and in good weather conditions.

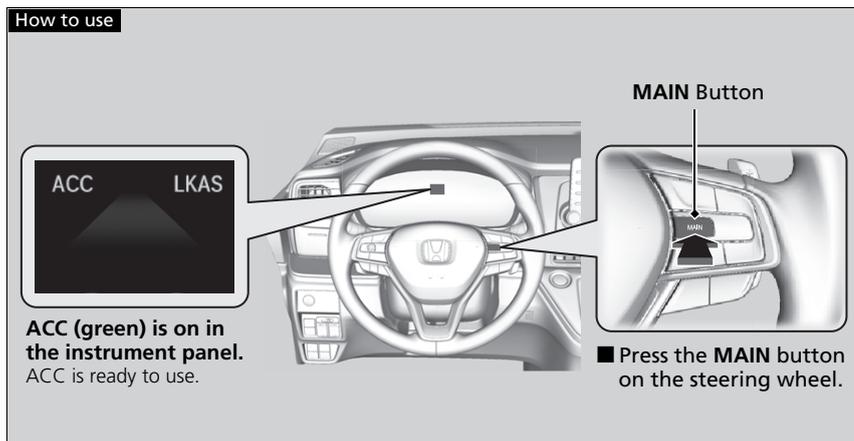
#### **⚠ WARNING**

ACC has limited braking capability. When your vehicle speed drops below 25 km/h, ACC will automatically cancel and no longer will apply your vehicle's brakes. Always be prepared to apply the brake pedal when conditions require.

#### **Important Reminder**

As with any system, there are limits to ACC. Use the brake pedal whenever necessary, and always keep a safe interval between your vehicle and other vehicles.

## ■ How to activate the system



### ▶ Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC)

For directions on the proper handling of the radar sensor, refer to the following page.

▶ Radar Sensor P. 435

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

▶ Front Sensor Camera P. 433

ACC may not work properly under certain conditions.

▶ ACC Conditions and Limitations P. 412

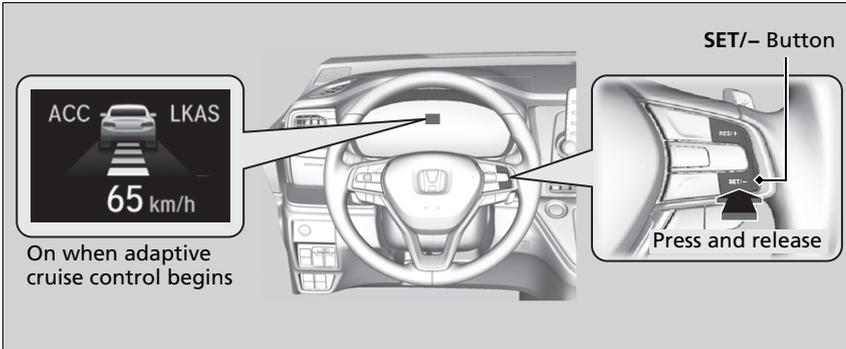
When not using ACC: Turn off adaptive cruise by pressing the **MAIN** button. This also will turn off the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS).

When the **MAIN** button is pressed, both ACC and the Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) are either turned on or off.

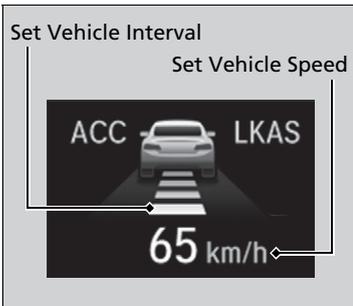
Do not use ACC under the following conditions:

- On roads with heavy traffic or while driving in continuous stop and go traffic.
- On roads with sharp turns.
- On roads with steep downhill sections, as the set vehicle speed can be exceeded by coasting. In such cases, ACC will not apply the brakes to maintain the set speed.
- On roads with toll collection facilities or other objects between lanes of traffic, or in parking areas, or facilities with drive through access.

## ■ To Set the Vehicle Speed



Take your foot off the pedal and press the **SET/-** button when you reach the desired speed.



The moment you release the **SET/-** button, the set speed is fixed, and ACC begins.

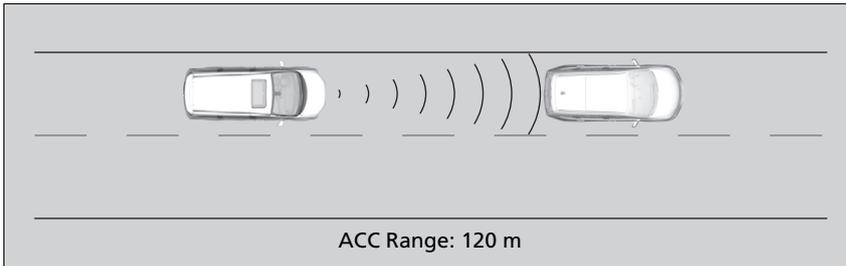
When ACC starts operating, the vehicle icon, interval bars and set speed appear on the driver information interface.

## ■ When in Operation

### ■ There is a vehicle ahead

ACC monitors if a vehicle ahead of you enters the ACC range. If a vehicle is detected doing so, the ACC system maintains or decelerates your vehicle's set speed in order to keep the vehicle's set following-interval from the vehicle ahead.

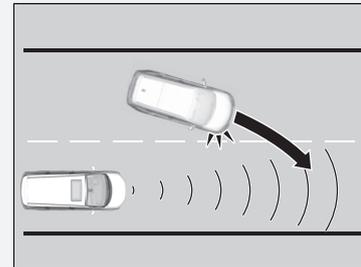
➤ **To Set or Change Following-interval** P. 416



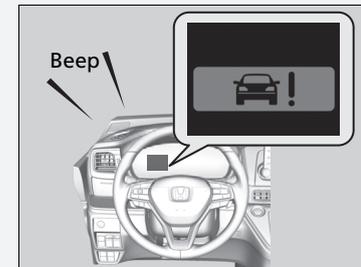
When a vehicle whose speed is slower than your set speed comes in or cuts in front of you and is detected by the radar and the camera, your vehicle starts to slow down.

## ⊠ When in Operation

If the vehicle detected ahead of you slows down abruptly, or if another vehicle is detected cutting in front of you, a beeper sounds, and a message appears on the driver information interface.



Depress the brake pedal, and keep an appropriate interval from the vehicle ahead.



## ■ There is no vehicle ahead



A vehicle icon with dotted-line contour appears on the driver information interface

Your vehicle maintains the set speed without having to keep your foot on the brake or accelerator pedal.

If there previously was a vehicle detected ahead that kept your vehicle from travelling at the set speed, ACC accelerates your vehicle to the set speed, and then maintains it.

## ■ When you depress the accelerator pedal

You can temporarily increase the vehicle speed. In this case, there is no audible or visual alert even if a vehicle is in the ACC range.

ACC stays on unless you cancel it. Once you release the accelerator pedal, the system resumes an appropriate speed for keeping the following-interval while a vehicle ahead is within the ACC range.

## ⌘ When in Operation

Even if the interval between your vehicle and the vehicle detected ahead is short, ACC may start accelerating your vehicle under the following circumstances:

- The vehicle ahead of you is going at almost the same speed as, or faster than, your vehicle.
- A vehicle that cuts in front of you is going faster than your vehicle, gradually increasing the interval between the vehicles.

You can also set the system to beep when a vehicle detected in front of you comes in and goes out of the ACC detecting range. Change the **ACC Vehicle Ahead Detected Beep** setting.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 315

## Limitations

You may need to use the brake to maintain a safe interval when using ACC.

Additionally, ACC may not work properly under certain conditions.

▶ **ACC Conditions and Limitations** P. 412

## ■ ACC Conditions and Limitations

The system may automatically shut off and the **ACC** indicator will come on under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below. Other conditions may reduce some of the ACC functions.

➤ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 433

➤ **Radar Sensor** P. 435

### ■ Environmental conditions

Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).

### ■ Roadway conditions

Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).

### ■ Vehicle conditions

- The outside of the windscreen is blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (Wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre, etc.).
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- The parking brake is applied.
- The front grille is dirty.
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- Tyre chains\* are installed.

## ⓘ ACC Conditions and Limitations

The radar sensor for ACC is shared with the Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS).

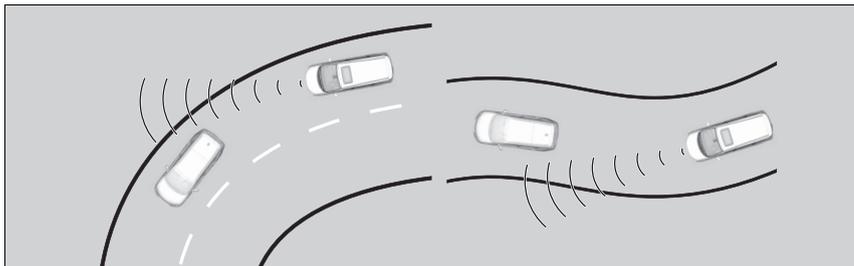
### ➤ Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS) P. 396

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by pressing the **MAIN** button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

Have your vehicle checked by a dealer if you find any unusual behavior of the system (e.g., the warning message appears too frequently).

**■ Detection limitations**

- A vehicle suddenly crosses in front of you.
- The interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead of you is too short.
- A vehicle cuts in front of you at a slow speed, and it brakes suddenly.
- You accelerate rapidly and approach the vehicle ahead of you at high speed.
- The vehicle ahead of you is a motorcycle, bicycle, mobility scooter, three-wheeled vehicle, or other small vehicle.
- There are animals in front of your vehicle.
- You drive on a curved or winding or undulating road that makes it difficult for the sensor to properly detect a vehicle in front of you.

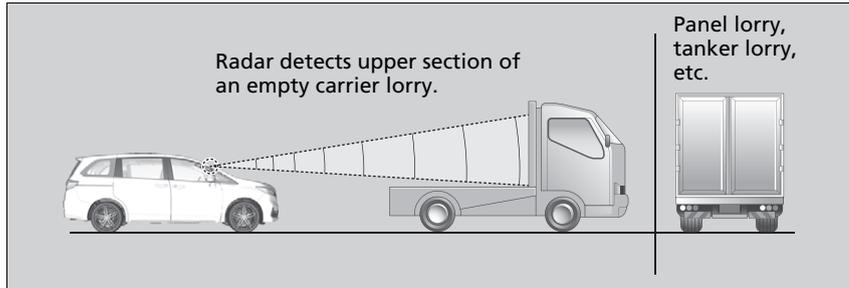


- The speed difference between your vehicle and a vehicle in front of you is significantly large.
- An oncoming vehicle suddenly comes in front of you.
- Your vehicle abruptly crosses over in front of an oncoming vehicle.

- Driving through a metal bridge.



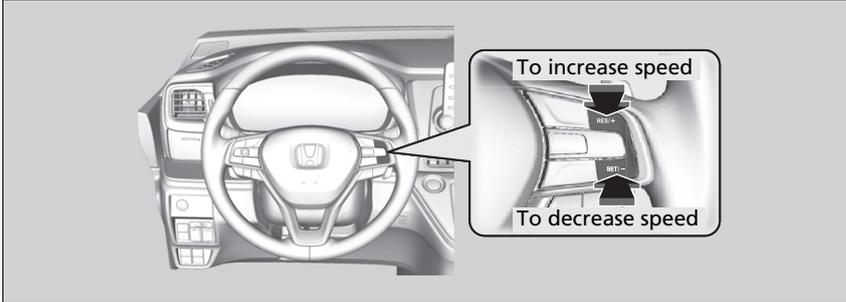
- The vehicle ahead of you brakes suddenly.
- The vehicle ahead of you has a unique shape.



- Your vehicle or the vehicle ahead of you is driving on one edge of the lane.

## ■ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

Increase or decrease the vehicle speed using the **RES/+** or **SET/-** buttons on the steering wheel.

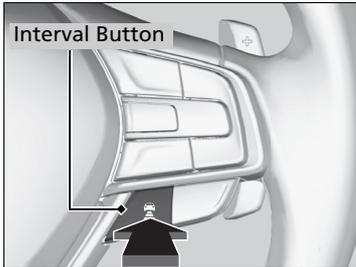


- Each time you press the button, the vehicle speed is increased or decreased by about 1 km/h accordingly.
- If you keep the button pressed, the vehicle speed increases or decreases by about 10 km/h accordingly.

## ☒ To Adjust the Vehicle Speed

If a vehicle detected ahead is going at a speed slower than your increased set speed, ACC may not accelerate your vehicle. This is to maintain the set interval between your vehicle and the vehicle ahead.

## ■ To Set or Change Following-interval



Press the interval button to change ACC following-interval.

Each time you press the button, the following-interval (the interval behind a vehicle detected ahead of you) setting cycles through extra long, long, middle, and short following-intervals.

Determine the most appropriate following-interval setting based on your specific driving conditions. Be sure to adhere to any following-interval requirements set by local regulation.

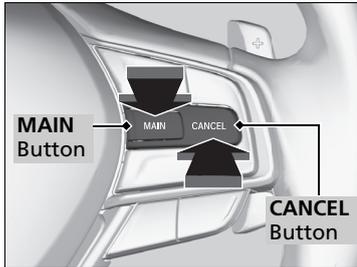
The higher your vehicle's following-speed is, the longer the short, middle, long or extra long following-interval becomes. See the following examples for your reference.

Following-interval		When the Set Speed is:	
		80 km/h	104 km/h
Short		25 metres 1.1 sec	31.5 metres 1.1 sec
Middle		33 metres 1.5 sec	43.4 metres 1.5 sec
Long		47 metres 2.1 sec	60.8 metres 2.1 sec
Extra Long		62 metres 2.8 sec	87 metres 2.8 sec

⚠ To Set or Change Following-interval

The driver must in all circumstances preserve a sufficient braking interval from the vehicle which precedes it and be aware that minimum intervals or times of spacing can be provided by the provisions of the Motorway Code locally applicable and that it is the driver's responsibility to respect those laws.

## ■ To Cancel



To cancel ACC, do any of the following:

- Press the **CANCEL** button.
- Press the **MAIN** button.
  - ▶ **ACC** indicator goes off.
- Depress the brake pedal.

## ☞ To Cancel

Resuming the prior set speed: After you have cancelled ACC, you can resume the prior set speed while it is still displayed. Press the **RES/+** button when driving at a speed of at least 30 km/h or more.

The set speed cannot be set or resumed when ACC has been turned off using the **MAIN** button. Press the **MAIN** button to activate the system, then set the desired speed.

## ■ Automatic cancellation

The beeper sounds and a message appears on the driver information interface when ACC is automatically cancelled. Any of these conditions may cause the ACC to be automatically cancelled.

- Bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.)
- When the radar sensor in the front grille gets dirty.
- The vehicle ahead of you cannot be detected.
- An abnormal tyre condition is detected, or the tyres are skidding.
- Driving on a mountainous road, or driving off road for extended periods.
- Abrupt steering wheel movement.
- When the ABS, VSA or CMBS is activated.
- When the ABS or VSA system indicator comes on.
- When you manually apply the parking brake.
- When the detected vehicle within the ACC range is too close to your vehicle.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windscreen, gets dirty.

### ⌘ Automatic cancellation

Even though ACC has been automatically cancelled, you can still resume the prior set speed. Wait until the condition that caused ACC to cancel improves, then press the **SET/−** button.

## Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

Provides steering input to help to keep the vehicle in the middle of a detected lane and provides tactile and visual alerts if the vehicle is detected drifting out of its lane.

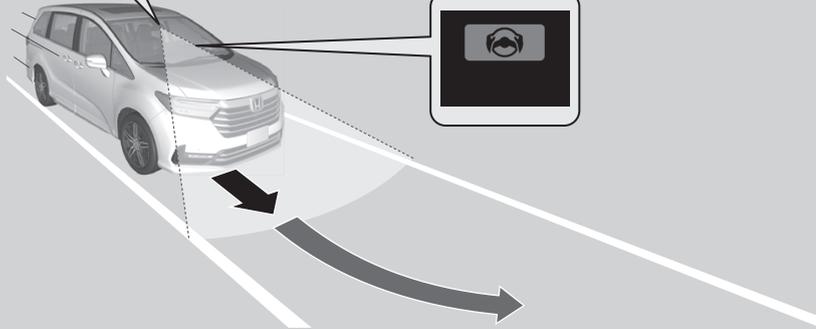
### ■ Steering input assist

The system applies torque to the steering to keep the vehicle between the left and right lane lines. The applied torque becomes stronger as the vehicle gets closer to either of the lane lines.



■ Front Sensor Camera  
Monitors the lane lines

■ Tactile and visual alerts  
Rapid vibrations on the steering wheel and a warning display alert you that the vehicle is drifting out of a detected lane.



When you operate the turn signals to change lanes, the system is suspended, and resumes after the signals are off.  
If you make a lane change without operating the turn signals, the LKAS alerts activate, and torque is applied to the steering.

### ▶ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

#### Important Safety Reminders

The LKAS is for your convenience only. It is not a substitute for your vehicle control. The system does not work if you take your hands off the steering wheel or fail to steer the vehicle.

#### ▶ Driver Information Interface Warning and Information Messages P. 117

Do not place objects on the instrument panel. Objects may reflect on the windscreen and prevent correct detection of the traffic lanes.

The LKAS only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The LKAS may not detect all lane markings or lane departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed, and lane marker condition.

It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

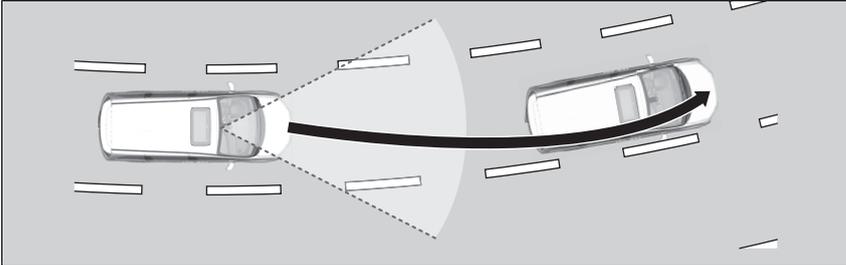
The LKAS is convenient when it is used on motorways or a dual carriage way.

The LKAS may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

#### ▶ LKAS Conditions and Limitations P. 425

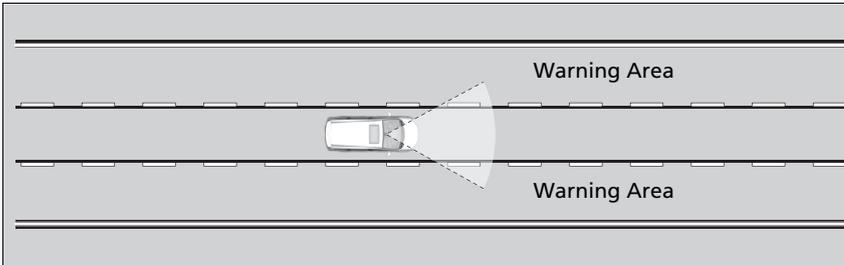
## ■ Lane Keep Support Function

Provides assistance to keep the vehicle in the centre of the lane. When the vehicle nears a white or yellow line, steering force of the electric power steering will become stronger.



## ■ Lane Departure Warning Function

When the vehicle enters the warning area, the LKAS alerts you with slight steering wheel vibration as well as a warning display.



## ☒ Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

▶ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 433

The LKAS may not function as designed while driving in frequent stop and go traffic, or on roads with sharp curves.

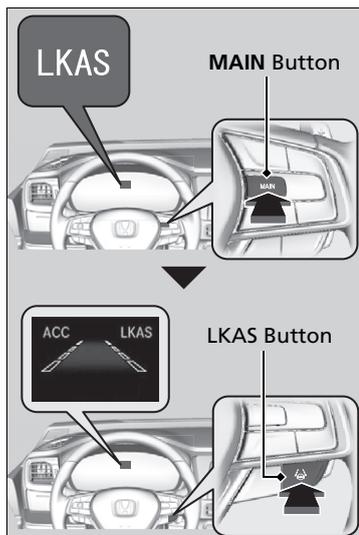
When it fails to detect lanes, the system will temporarily be cancelled. When a lane is detected, the system will recover automatically.

## ■ When the System can be Used

The system can be used when the following conditions are met.

- The lane in which you are driving has detectable lane markers on both sides, and your vehicle is in the centre of the lane.
- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.
- You are driving on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in high speed operation.

## ■ How to activate the system



### 1. Press the **MAIN** button.

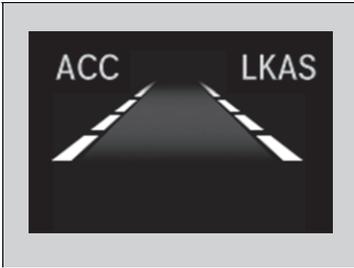
- ▶ The LKAS is on in the driver information interface.  
The system is ready to use.

### 2. Press the LKAS button.

- ▶ Lane outlines appear on the driver information interface.  
The system is activated.

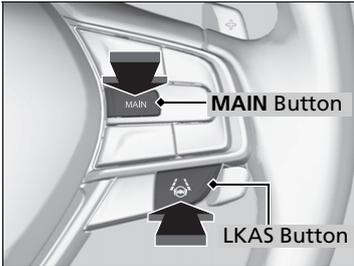
## ⌘ When the System can be Used

If the vehicle drifts toward either left or right lane line due to the system applying torque, turn off the LKAS and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.



3. Keep your vehicle near the centre of the lane while driving.
  - ▶ The dotted outer lines change to solid ones once the system starts operating after detecting the left and right lane markings.

## ■ To Cancel

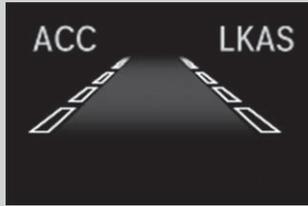


Press the **MAIN** or LKAS button.

The LKAS is turned off every time you stop the engine, even if you turned it on the last time you drove the vehicle.

## ▶▶ To Cancel

Pressing the **MAIN** button also turns ACC on and off.



When the LKAS is suspended, the lane lines on the driver information interface change to contour lines, and the beeper sounds (if activated).

■ **The system operation is suspended if you:**

- Turning the wipers to continuous high speed operation.
  - ▶ Both **LO** and **INT** mode or **OFF** will resume LKAS.
- Decrease the vehicle speed to 64 km/h or less.
  - ▶ Increasing the vehicle speed to 72 km/h or more resumes the LKAS.
- Depress the brake pedal.
  - ▶ The LKAS resumes and starts detecting the lane lines again once you release the brake pedal.

■ **The LKAS may automatically be suspended when:**

- The system fails to detect lane lines.
  - The steering wheel is quickly turned.
  - You fail to steer the vehicle.
  - Driving through a sharp curve.
  - Driving at a speed in excess of approximately 180 km/h.
- Once these conditions no longer exist, the LKAS automatically resumes.

▶▶ The system operation is suspended if you:

You can change the setting for the LKAS. LKAS suspended beep **ON** and **OFF** can be selected.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 315

**■ The LKAS may automatically be cancelled when:**

- The camera temperature gets extremely high or low.
- The camera behind the rearview mirror, or the area around the camera, including the windshield, gets dirty.
- The ABS or VSA system engages.

The beeper sounds if the LKAS is automatically cancelled.

**■ LKAS Conditions and Limitations**

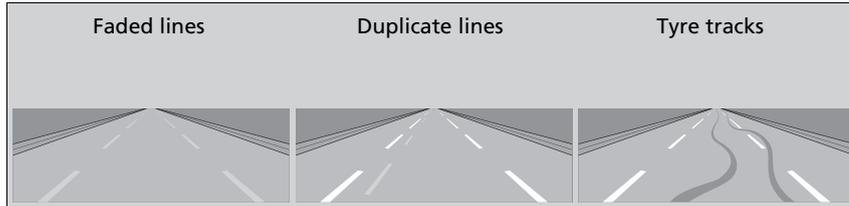
The system may not detect lane markings and therefore may not keep the vehicle in the middle of a lane under certain conditions, including the following:

**■ Environmental conditions**

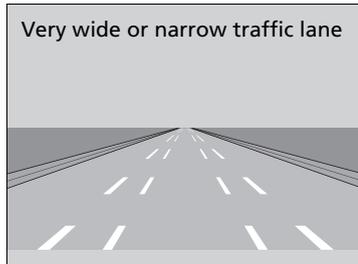
- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the windshield.
- Driving at night or in a dark condition such as a tunnel.

### ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.

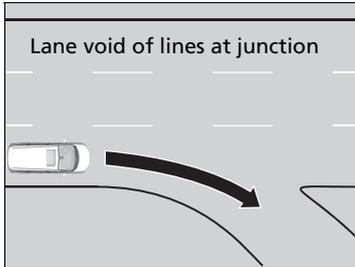


- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.



- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.

- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on roads with double lines.



#### ■ Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.

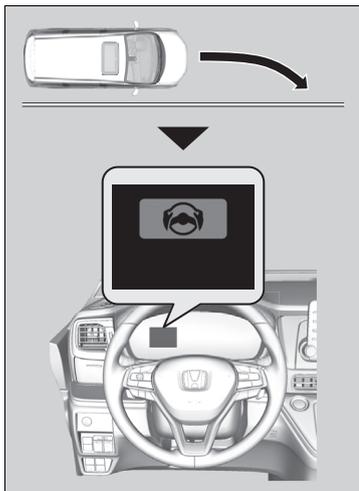
#### 7-seater models for Australia and New Zealand

- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

## Road Departure Mitigation System

Alerts and helps to assist you when the system detects a possibility of your vehicle unintentionally crossing over detected lane markings and/or leaving the roadway altogether.

### ■ How the System Works



The front camera behind the rearview mirror monitors left and right lane markings (in white or yellow). If your vehicle is getting too close to detected lane markings without a turn signal activated, the system, in addition to a visual alert, applies steering torque and alerts you with rapid vibrations on the steering wheel, to help you remain within the detected lane.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 315

As a visual alert,  message appears on the driver information interface.

If the system determines that its steering input is insufficient to keep your vehicle on the roadway, it may apply braking.

▶ Braking is applied only when the lane markings are solid continuous lines.

The system cancels assisting operations when you turn the steering wheel to avoid crossing over detected lane markings.

If the system operates several times without detecting driver response, the system beeps to alert you.

### ▶ Road Departure Mitigation System

#### ▶ Important Safety Reminder

Like all assistance systems, the Road Departure Mitigation system has limitations.

Over-reliance on the Road Departure Mitigation system may result in a collision. It is always your responsibility to keep the vehicle within your driving lane.

The Road Departure Mitigation system only alerts you when lane drift is detected without a turn signal in use. The Road Departure Mitigation system may not detect all lane markings or lane or roadway departures; accuracy will vary based on weather, speed and lane marker condition. It is always your responsibility to safely operate the vehicle and avoid collisions.

You can read about handling information for the camera equipped with this system.

▶ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 433

The Road Departure Mitigation system may not work properly or may work improperly under the certain conditions:

▶ **Road Departure Mitigation Conditions and Limitations** P. 431

There are times when you may not notice Road Departure Mitigation functions due to your operation of the vehicle, or road surface conditions.

## How the System Activates

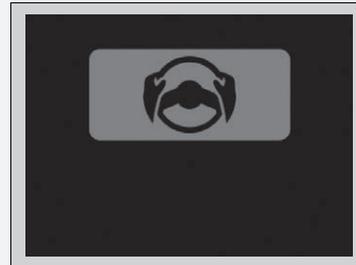
The system becomes ready to start searching for lane markings when all the following conditions are met:

- The vehicle is travelling between about 72 and 180 km/h.
- The vehicle is on a straight or slightly curved road.
- The turn signals are off.
- The brake pedal is not depressed.
- The wipers are not in high speed operation.
- The vehicle is not accelerating or braking, and the steering wheel is not being turned.
- The system makes a determination that the driver is not actively accelerating, braking or steering.

## Road Departure Mitigation System

If LKAS is off and you have selected **Early** from the customized options using the audio/information screen, the message below will appear in case the system determines a possibility of your vehicle crossing over detected lane markings.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 315



## How the System Activates

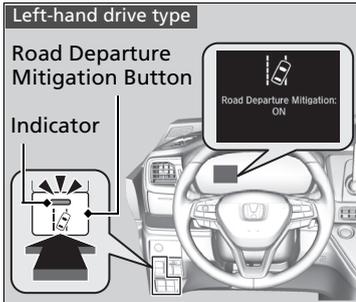
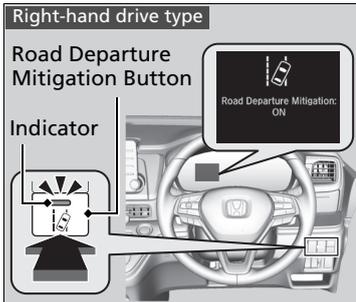
The Road Departure Mitigation system may automatically shut off and the  indicator comes and stays on.

▶ **Indicators** P. 98

Road Departure Mitigation system function can be impacted when the vehicle is:

- Not driven within a traffic lane.
- Driven on the inside edge of a curve, or outside of a lane.
- Driven in a narrow lane.

## ■ Road Departure Mitigation On and Off



Press the Road Departure Mitigation button to turn the system on and off.

- ▶ The indicator in the button comes on and the message appears on the driver information interface when the system is on.

## ▣ Road Departure Mitigation On and Off

When you have selected **Warning Only** from the customized options using the audio/information screen, the system does not operate the steering wheel and braking.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 315

## ■ Road Departure Mitigation Conditions and Limitations

The system may not properly detect lane markings and the position of your vehicle under certain conditions. Some examples of these conditions are listed below.

### ■ Environmental conditions

- Driving in bad weather (rain, fog, snow, etc.).
- Sudden changes between light and dark, such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.
- There is little contrast between lane lines and the roadway surface.
- Driving into low sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk).
- Strong light is reflected onto the roadway.
- Driving in the shadows of trees, buildings, etc.
- Shadows of adjacent objects are parallel to lane markings.
- Roadway objects or structures are misinterpreted as lane markers.
- Reflections on the interior of the windscreen.
- Driving at night or in a dark condition such as a tunnel.

### ■ Roadway conditions

- Driving on a snowy or wet roadway (obscured lane marking, vehicle tracks, reflected lights, road spray, high contrast).
- Driving on a road with temporary lane markings.
- Faint, multiple, or varied lane markings are visible on the roadway due to road repairs or old lane markings.
- The roadway has merging, split, or crossing lines (e.g., such as at an intersection or crosswalk).
- The lane markings are extremely narrow, wide, or changing.
- The vehicle in front of you is driving near the lane lines.
- The road is hilly or the vehicle is approaching the crest of a hill.
- Driving on rough or unpaved roads, or over bumpy surfaces.
- When objects on the road (curb, guard rail, pylons, etc.) are recognised as white lines (or yellow lines).
- Driving on roads with double lines.

### ■ Vehicle conditions

- Headlight lenses are dirty or the headlights are not properly adjusted.
- The outside of the windscreen is streaked or blocked by dirt, mud, leaves, wet snow, etc.
- The inside of the windscreen is fogged.
- The camera temperature gets too high.
- An abnormal tyre or wheel condition (wrong sized, varied size or construction, improperly inflated, compact spare tyre, etc.).
- The vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load or suspension modifications.
- When tyre chains\* are installed.

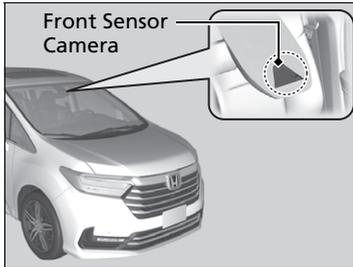
#### 7-seater models for Australia and New Zealand

- The vehicle is towing a trailer.

## Front Sensor Camera

The camera, used in systems such as Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS), Road Departure Mitigation System, Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC), and Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS), is designed to detect an object that triggers any of the systems to operate its functions.

### ■ Camera Location and Handling Tips



This camera is located behind the rearview mirror.

To help to reduce the likelihood that high interior temperatures will cause the camera's sensing system to shut off, when parking, find a shady area or face the front of the vehicle away from the sun. If you use a reflective sun shade, do not allow it to cover the camera housing. Covering the camera can concentrate heat on it.

### ⊠ Front Sensor Camera

Never apply a film or attach any objects to the windshield, the bonnet, or the front grille that could obstruct the camera's field of vision and cause the system to operate abnormally.

Scratches, nicks, and other damage to the windshield within the camera's field of vision can cause the system to operate abnormally. If this occurs, we recommend that you replace the windshield with a genuine Honda replacement windshield. Making even minor repairs within the camera's field of vision or installing an aftermarket replacement windshield may also cause the system to operate abnormally.

After replacing the windshield, have a dealer recalibrate the camera. Proper calibration of the camera is necessary for the system to operate properly.

Do not place an object on the top of the instrument panel. It may reflect onto the windshield and prevent the system from detecting lane lines properly.

📷 Front Sensor Camera

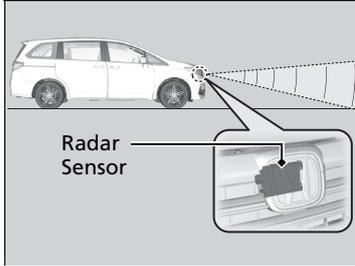
If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Camera Temperature Too High** message appears:

- Use the climate control system to cool down the interior and, if necessary, also use demister mode with the airflow directed towards the camera.
- Start driving the vehicle to lower the windscreen temperature, which cools down the area around the camera.

If the **Some Driver Assist Systems Cannot Operate: Clean Front Windscreen** message appears:

- Park your vehicle in a safe place, and clean the windscreen. If the message does not disappear after you have cleaned the windscreen and driven for a while, have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## Radar Sensor



The radar sensor is in the front grille.

### ▣ Radar Sensor

Avoid strong impacts to the radar sensor cover.

For the CMBS to work properly:

- Always keep the radar sensor cover clean.
- Never use chemical solvents or polishing powder for cleaning the sensor cover. Clean it with water or a mild detergent.
- Do not put a sticker on the radar sensor cover or replace the radar sensor cover.

If you need the radar sensor to be repaired, or removed, or the radar sensor cover is strongly impacted, turn off the system by using the CMBS **OFF** button and take your vehicle to a dealer.

▣ **CMBS On and Off** P. 400

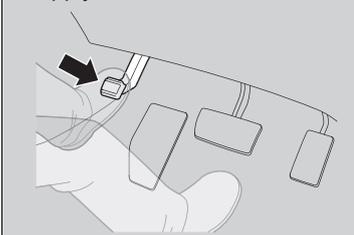
If the vehicle is involved in any of the following situations, the radar sensor may not work properly. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer:

- Your vehicle is involved in a frontal collision.
- Your vehicle drives through deep water or is submerged in deep water.
- Your vehicle strongly strikes a bump, curb, chock, or embankment that could jar the radar sensor.

## Brake System

### ■ Parking Brake

To apply



Use the parking brake to keep the vehicle stationary when parking.

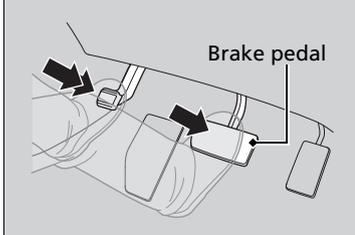
#### To apply:

Depress the parking brake pedal down with your foot.

#### To release:

1. Depress the brake pedal.
2. Depress the parking brake.

To release



### ▣ Parking Brake

#### NOTICE

Release the parking brake fully before driving. The rear brakes and axle can be damaged if you drive with the parking brake applied.

If you start driving without fully releasing the parking brake, a buzzer sounds as a warning, and **Release Parking Brake** appears on the driver information interface.

Always apply the parking brake when parking.

## Foot Brake

Your vehicle is equipped with disc brakes at all four wheels. A vacuum power assist helps reduce the effort needed on the brake pedal. The brake assist system increases the stopping force when you depress the brake pedal hard in an emergency situation. The anti-lock brake system (ABS) helps you retain steering control when braking very hard.

➤ **Brake Assist System** P. 439

➤ **Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** P. 438

### Foot Brake

Check the brakes after driving through deep water, or if there is a buildup of road surface water. If necessary, dry the brakes by lightly depressing the pedal several times.

If you hear a continuous metallic friction sound when applying the brakes, the brake pads need to be replaced. Have the vehicle checked by a dealer.

Constantly using the brake pedal while going down a long hill builds up heat, which reduces the brake effectiveness. Apply engine braking by taking your foot off the accelerator pedal and downshifting to a speed position.

Do not rest your foot on the brake pedal while driving, as it will lightly apply the brakes and cause them to lose effectiveness over time and reduce pad life. It will also confuse drivers behind you.

## Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

### ■ ABS

Helps to prevent the wheels from locking up, and helps you to retain steering control by pumping the brakes rapidly, much faster than you can.

The electronic brake distribution (EBD) system, which is part of the ABS, also balances the front-to-rear braking distribution according to vehicle loading.

You should never pump the brake pedal. Let the ABS work for you by always keeping firm, steady pressure on the brake pedal. This is sometimes referred to as "stomp and steer."

### ■ ABS operation

The brake pedal may pulsate slightly when the ABS is working. Depress the brake pedal and keep holding the pedal firmly down. On dry pavement, you will need to press on the brake pedal very hard before the ABS activates. However, you may feel the ABS activate immediately if you are trying to stop on snow or ice.

ABS may activate when you depress the brake pedal when driving on:

- Wet or snow covered roads.
- Roads paved with stone.
- Roads with uneven surfaces, such as potholes, cracks, manholes, etc.

When the vehicle speed goes under 10 km/h, the ABS stops.

### ⓘ Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

#### NOTICE

The ABS may not function correctly if you use a tyre of the wrong size or type.

If the **ABS** indicator comes on while driving, there may be a problem with the system. While normal braking will not be affected, there is a possibility that the ABS will not be operating. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

The ABS is not designed for the purpose of reducing the time or distance it takes for a vehicle to stop: It is designed to limit brake lockup which can lead to skidding and loss of steering control.

In the following cases, your vehicle may need more distance to stop than a vehicle without the ABS:

- You are driving on rough or uneven road surfaces, such as gravel or snow.
- The tyres are equipped with tyre chains\*.

The following may be observed with the ABS system:

- Motor sounds coming from the engine compartment when the brakes are applied, or when system checks are being performed after the engine has been started and while the vehicle accelerates.
- Brake pedal and/or the vehicle body vibration when ABS activates.

These vibrations and sounds are normal to ABS systems and are no cause for concern.

## Brake Assist System

---

Is designed to assist the driver by generating greater braking force when you depress the brake pedal hard during emergency braking.

### ■ Brake assist system operation

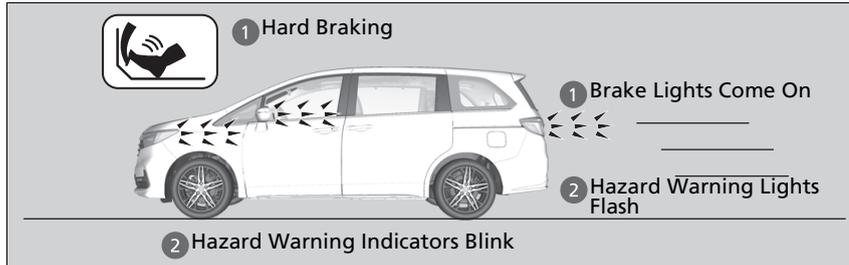
Press the brake pedal firmly for more powerful braking.

When brake assist operates, the pedal may wiggle slightly and an operating noise may be heard. This is normal. Keep holding the brake pedal firmly down.

## Emergency Stop Signal

Activates when you brake hard while driving at 60 km/h or above to alert drivers behind you about sudden braking by rapidly flashing hazard warning lights. This may help to alert drivers behind you to take appropriate means to avoid a possible collision with your vehicle.

### ■ When the system activates:



The hazard warning lights stop flashing when:

- You release the brake pedal.
- The ABS is deactivated.
- Your vehicle's decelerating speed becomes moderate.
- You press the hazard warning button.

### ⓘ Emergency Stop Signal

The emergency stop signal is not a system that can prevent a possible rear-end collision caused by your hard braking. It flashes the hazard warning lights at the time you are braking hard. It is always recommended to avoid hard braking unless it is absolutely necessary.

The emergency stop signal does not activate with the hazard warning button pressed in.

If the ABS stops working for a certain period during braking, the emergency stop signal may not activate at all.

## When Stopped

1. Depress the brake pedal firmly.
2. Apply the parking brake.
3. Change the shift position to **P**.
4. Turn off the engine.

Always set the parking brake, in particular if you are parked on an incline.

### ▣ Parking Your Vehicle

#### **⚠ WARNING**

The vehicle can roll away if left unattended without confirming that Park is engaged.

A vehicle that rolls away could cause a crash resulting in serious injury or death.

Always keep your foot on the brake pedal until you have confirmed that **P** is shown on the shift position indicator.

Do not park your vehicle near flammable objects, such as dry grass, oil, or timber. Heat from the exhaust can cause a fire.

*Continued*

» When Stopped

**NOTICE**

The following can damage the transmission:

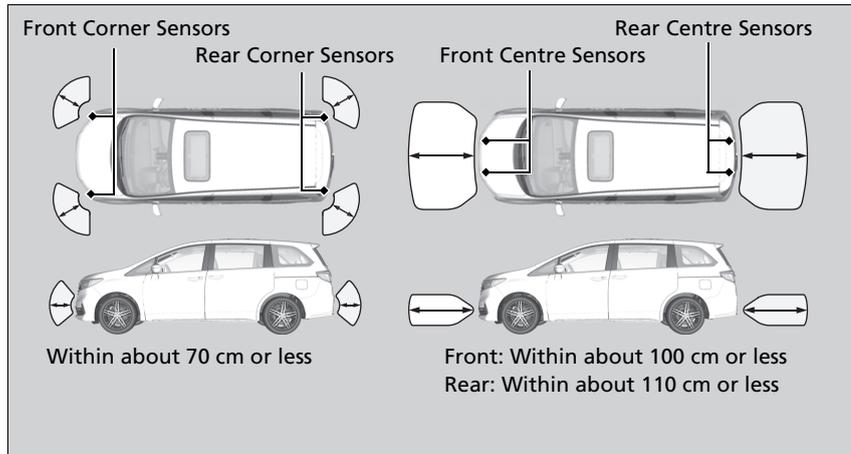
- Depressing the accelerator and brake pedals simultaneously.
- Holding the vehicle in place when facing uphill by depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Moving the shift lever into **P** before the vehicle stops completely.

In extremely cold temperatures, the parking brake may freeze up if applied. If such temperatures are expected, do not apply the parking brake but, if parking on a slope, either turn the front wheels so they will contact the curb if the vehicle rolls down the slope or block the wheels to keep the vehicle from moving. If you do not take either precaution, the vehicle may roll unexpectedly, leading to a crash.

## Parking Sensor System\*

The corner and centre sensors monitor obstacles around your vehicle, and the beeper, driver information interface and audio/information screen let you know the approximate distance between your vehicle and the obstacle.

### ■ The sensor location and range



### ⊠ Parking Sensor System\*

Even when the system is on, always confirm if there is no obstacle near your vehicle before parking.

The system may not work properly when:

- The sensors are covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- The vehicle is on uneven surface, such as grass, bumps, or a hill.
- The vehicle has been out in hot or cold weather.
- The system is affected by devices that emit ultrasonic waves.
- Driving in bad weather.

The system may not sense:

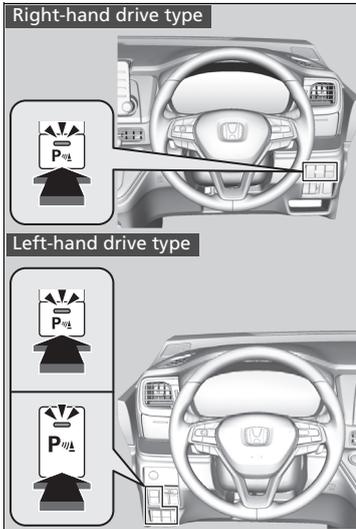
- Thin or low objects.
- Sonic-absorptive materials, such as snow, cotton, or sponge.
- Objects directly under the bumper.

Do not put any accessories on or around the sensors.

\* Not available on all models

Continued

## ■ Parking sensor system on and off



With the power mode in ON, press the parking sensor system button to turn on or off the system. The indicator in the button comes on when the system is on.

The front corner and front centre sensors start to detect an obstacle when the shift lever is in any position other than **P** or **R**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

The front corner, rear corner and rear centre sensors start to detect an obstacle when the shift lever is in **R**, and the vehicle speed is less than 8 km/h.

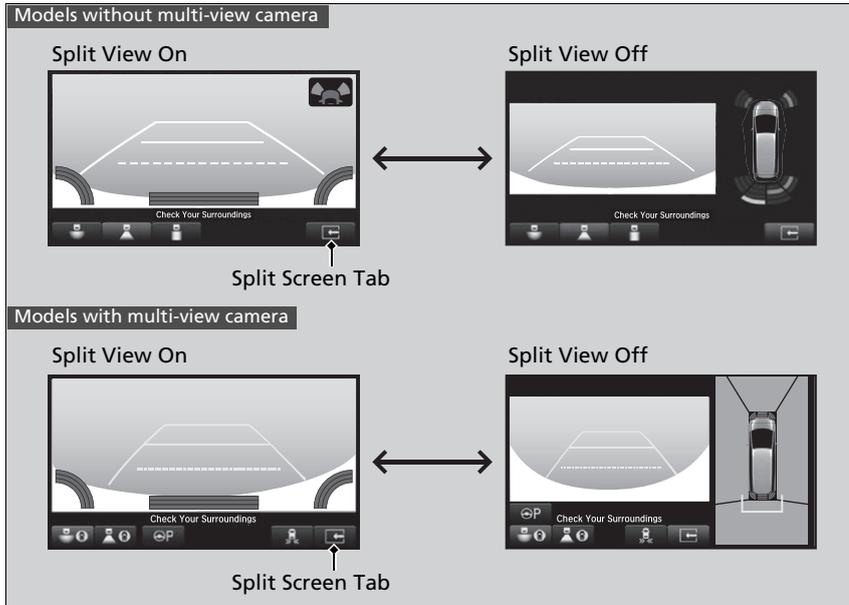
## ▶▶ Parking sensor system on and off

When you set the power mode to ON, the system will be in the previously selected condition.

### Models with Honda smart parking assist system

When you start the Honda smart parking assist system, the parking sensor system will automatically turn ON.

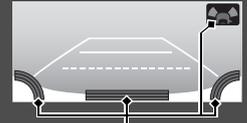
## ■ Screen Operation



The split screen tab disappears, and the split view returns to the last camera view mode under the following conditions:

- If the parking sensor system is turned off.
- If there is a malfunction in the system.

■ When the distance between your vehicle and obstacles becomes shorter

Interval between beeps	Distance between the Bumper and Obstacle		Indicator	Audio/information screen/ Driver information interface
	Corner Sensors	Centre Sensors		
Moderate	—	Front: About 100-60 cm Rear: About 110-60 cm	Blinks in Yellow*1	<div> <p>Audio/information screen</p> </div>  <div> <p>Indicators light up where the sensor detects an obstacle</p> </div>
Short	About 70-45 cm	About 60-45 cm	Blinks in Amber	<div> <p>Driver information interface</p> </div>  <div> <p>Indicators light up where the sensor detects an obstacle</p> </div>
Very short	About 45-35 cm	About 45-35 cm		
Continuous	About 35 cm or less	About 35 cm or less	Blinks in Red	

\*1: At this stage, only the centre sensors detect obstacles.

## ■ Turning off All Rear Sensors

1. Make sure that the parking sensor system is not activated. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).
2. Press and hold the parking sensor system button, and set the power mode to ON.
3. Keep pressing the button for 10 seconds. Release the button when the indicator in the button flashes.
4. Press the button again. The indicator in the button goes off.
  - ▶ The beeper sounds twice. The rear sensors are now turned off.

To turn the rear sensors on again, follow the above procedure. The beeper sounds three times when the rear sensors come back on.

### ☒ Turning off All Rear Sensors

When you set the shift position to **[R]**, the indicator in the parking sensor system button blinks as a reminder that the rear sensors have been turned off.

## Cross Traffic Monitor\*

Monitors the rear corner areas using the radar sensors when reversing, and alerts you if a vehicle approaching from a rear corner is detected.

The system is convenient especially when you are getting out of a parking space backwards.

### ⓘ Cross Traffic Monitor\*

#### CAUTION

Cross Traffic Monitor cannot detect all approaching vehicles and may not detect an approaching vehicle at all.

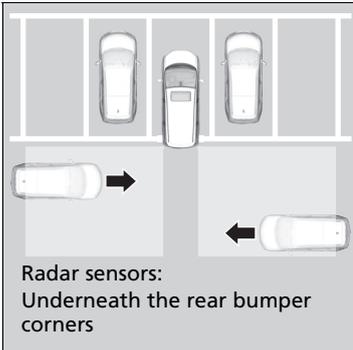
Failure to visually confirm that it is safe to back up the vehicle before doing so may result in a collision.

Do not solely rely on the system when reversing; always also use your mirrors, and look behind and to the sides of your vehicle before reversing.

#### Models with parking sensor system

The parking sensor system's alerting buzzer overrides the cross traffic monitor buzzer when the sensors are detecting obstacles at the closest range.

## ■ How the System Works



The system activates when:

- The power mode is in ON.
- The Cross Traffic Monitor is turned on.
  - ▶ **Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off** P. 451
- The shift lever is in **R**.
- Your vehicle is moving at 5 km/h or lower.

When a vehicle is detected approaching from a rear corner, Cross Traffic Monitor alerts you with a buzzer and a displayed warning.

The system will not detect a vehicle that approaches from directly behind your vehicle, nor will it provide alerts about a detected vehicle when it moves directly behind your vehicle.

The system does not provide alerts for a vehicle that is moving away from your vehicle, and it may alert for pedestrians, bicycles, or stationary objects.

## ⊠ Cross Traffic Monitor\*

Cross Traffic Monitor may not detect or may delay detecting an approaching vehicle, or may alert detection without an approaching vehicle under the following conditions:

- An obstacle, such as another vehicle and a wall, near your vehicle's rear bumper, is blocking the radar sensor's scope.
- Your vehicle is moving at the speed of about 5 km/h or higher.
- A vehicle is approaching at the speed other than between about 10 km/h and 25 km/h.
- The system picks up external interference such as other radar sensors from another vehicle or strong radio wave transmitted from a facility nearby.
- Either corner of the rear bumper is covered with snow, ice, mud or dirt.
- When there is bad weather.
- Your vehicle is on an incline.
- Your vehicle is tilted due to a heavy load in the rear.
- Your vehicle is reversing towards a wall, a pole, a vehicle, and so on.

The rear bumper or the sensors have been improperly repaired or the rear bumper has been deformed. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

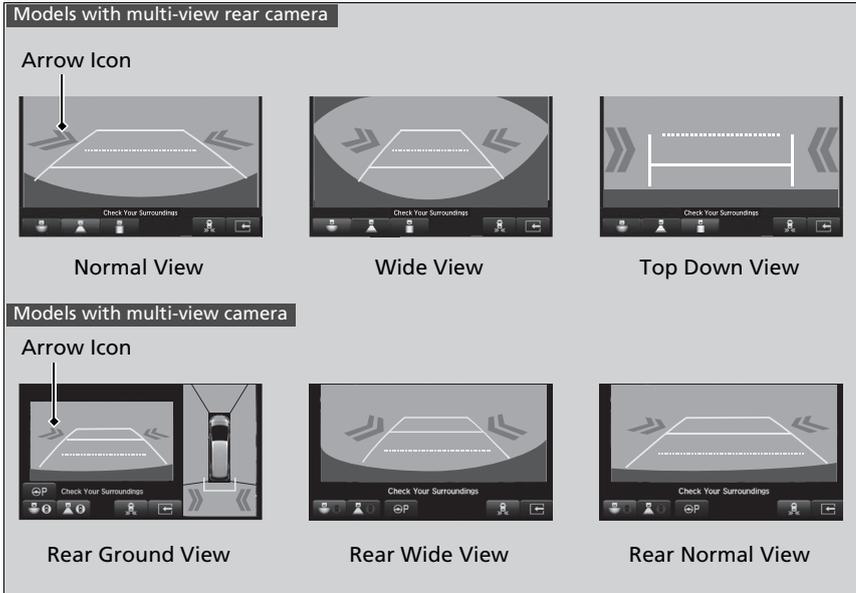
For proper operation, always keep the rear bumper corner area clean.

Do not cover the rear bumper corner area with labels or stickers of any kind.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ When the System Detects a Vehicle

An arrow icon appears on the side a vehicle is approaching on the audio/information screen.

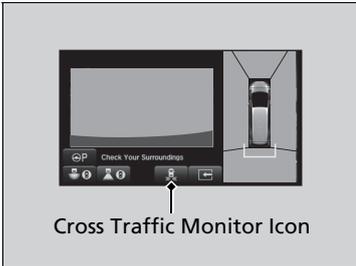


## ▶▶ When the System Detects a Vehicle

If the comes on when the transmission is in **R**, there may be a problem with the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

If the display remains the same with the shift position in **R**, there may be a problem with the rear camera system and the Cross Traffic Monitor system. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

## ■ Cross Traffic Monitor On and Off

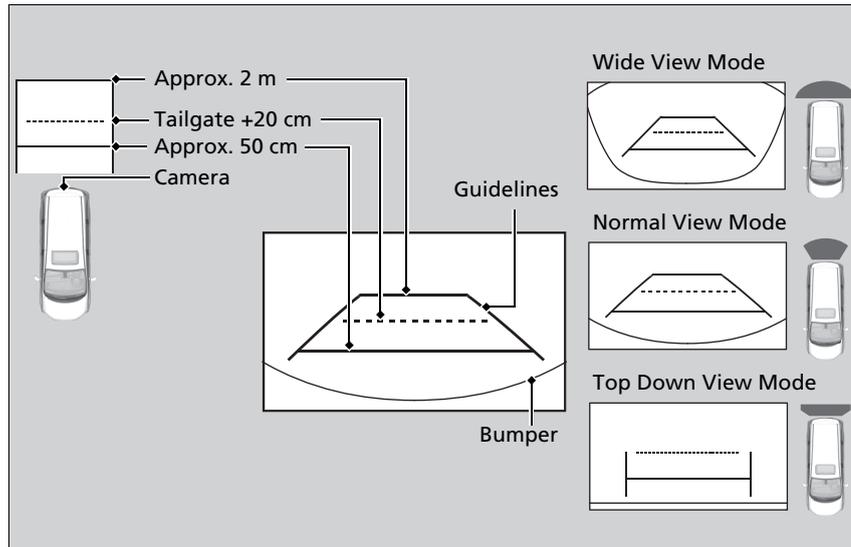


The system can be turned on and off on the audio/information screen by tapping the  icon.

## About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The audio/information screen can display your vehicle's rear view. The display automatically changes to the rear view when the shift position is moved to **R**.

### Multi-View Rear Camera Display Area



### About Your Multi-View Rear Camera

The rear camera view is restricted. You cannot see the corner ends of the bumper or what is underneath the bumper. Its unique lens also makes objects appear closer or farther than they actually are.

Visually confirm that it is safe to drive before backing up. Certain conditions (such as weather, lighting, and high temperatures) may also restrict the rear view. Do not rely on the rearview display which does not give you all information about conditions at the back of your vehicle.

If the camera lens is covered with dirt or moisture, use a soft, moist cloth to keep the lens clean and free of debris.

You can change the **Fixed Guideline** and **Dynamic Guideline** settings.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 315

#### Fixed Guideline

**ON:** Guidelines appear when you shift into **R**.

**OFF:** Guidelines do not appear when the dynamic guideline is off.

#### Dynamic Guideline

**ON:** Guidelines move according to the steering wheel direction.

**OFF:** Guidelines do not move.

You can view three different camera modes on the rearview display.

Touch the appropriate icon to switch the mode.



: Wide view mode



: Normal view mode



: Top down view mode

- If you were last using Wide view mode or Normal view mode, the same view mode will be activated the next time you put the transmission into **R**.
- If you were using Top down view mode before turning off the engine, the next time you set the power mode to ON and put the transmission into **R**, the view mode you were using just before using Top down view mode (Wide view mode or Normal view mode) will be activated.
- If you were using Top down view mode and 10 seconds elapsed after you took the transmission out of **R**, the view mode you were using just before selecting Top down view mode (Wide view mode or Normal view mode) will be activated the next time you put the transmission into **R**.

Is a four camera system that views areas commonly known as “blind spots” from different angles, then displays the images on the audio/information screen. This system can be used to:

- Check for obstacles when you are moving in **R**.
  - **Checking for obstacles at the back of your vehicle** P. 460
- Check the right and left sides of the vehicle while crossing at intersections with poor visibility (obstructed view, etc.).
  - **Checking from the front blind view at intersections** P. 462
- Check for obstacles in front of the vehicle when parking or maneuvering in confined areas.

## Multi-View Camera\*

### **WARNING**

Failure to visually assess the area around the vehicle (directly or by use of the mirrors) may result in a crash causing serious injury or death.

The areas shown in the multi-view camera display are limited. The display may not show all pedestrians or other objects around your vehicle.

Do not solely rely only on the multi-view camera display to assess whether it is safe to move your vehicle.

### **WARNING**

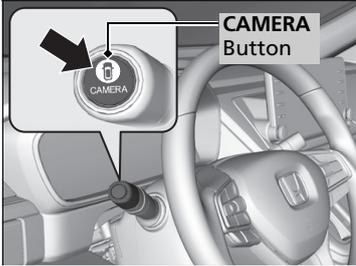
Failure to pay proper attention to your surroundings while driving may result in a crash causing serious injury or death.

To help mitigate the chances of a collision, only look at the multi-view camera display when it is safe to do so.

The multi-view camera does not eliminate all blind spots. The system is for your convenience only.

Always keep the camera lenses clean and free from debris.

## Displaying an Image From the Multi-View Cameras



### ■ For frontal views:

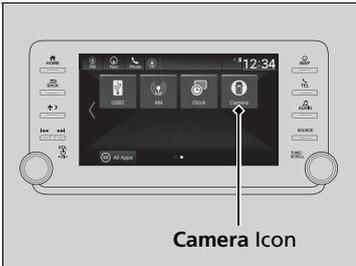
Press the **CAMERA** button or **Camera** icon when the vehicle is stationary or moving at 20 km/h or slower. Press the button again to switch camera views.

### ■ For rear reviews:

Change the shift lever position to **R** when the vehicle is stationary. Press the **CAMERA** button or **Camera** icon again to switch to rear view mode.

You can customize the display setting.

➤ **Customized Features** P. 315



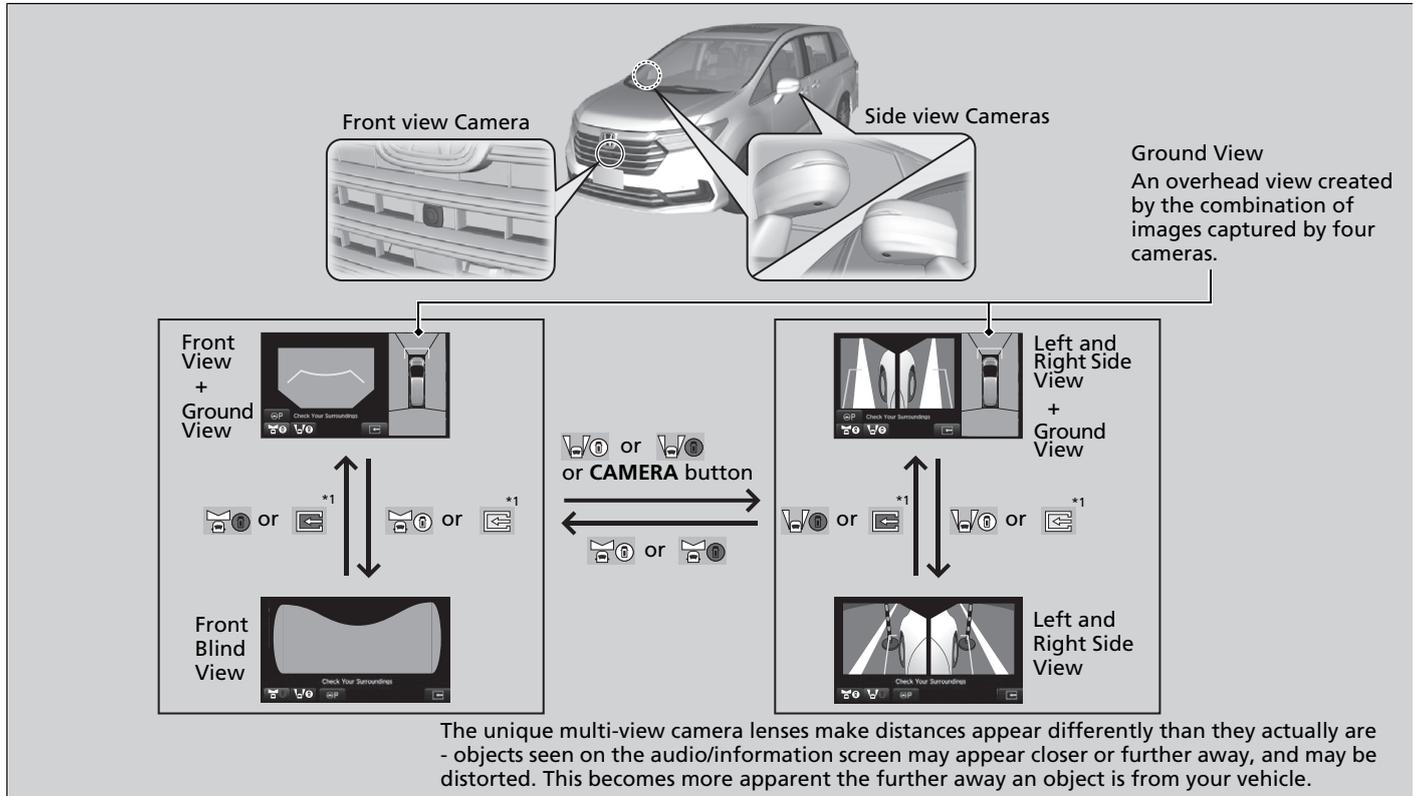
### ⌘ Displaying an Image From the Multi-View Cameras

If you press the **CAMERA** button or **Camera** icon while the vehicle speed is more than 25 km/h, the standby screen appears. When the vehicle speed is reduced below 20 km/h, the screen switches to a multi-view camera image.

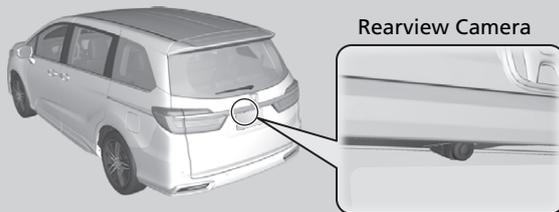
#### Models with navigation system

The navigation system is disabled when the shift lever position is in **R**.

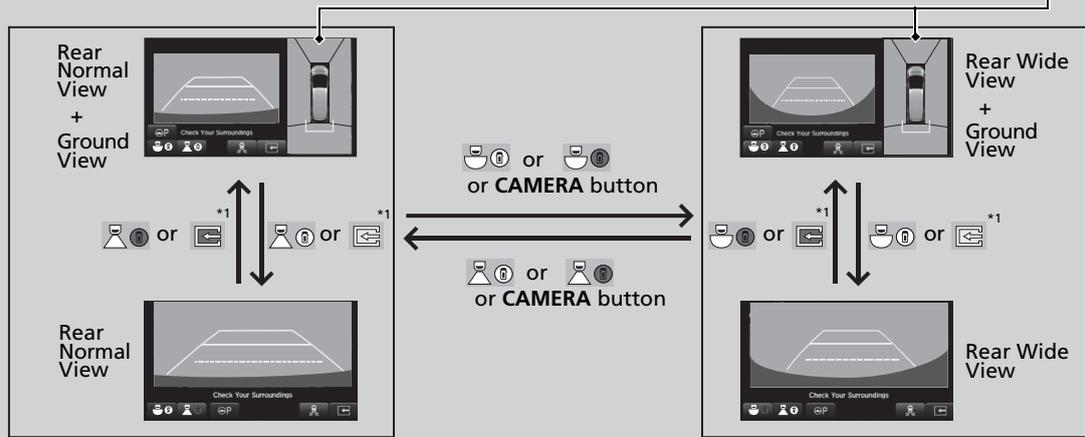
## ■ Camera Locations and Images



\*1: You can also switch the display by touching the view screen.



**Ground View**  
An overhead view created by the combination of images captured by four cameras.



The unique multi-view camera lenses make distances appear differently than they actually are - objects seen on the audio/information screen may appear closer or further away, and may be distorted. This becomes more apparent the further away an object is from your vehicle.

\*1: You can also switch the display by touching the view screen.

## ■ Reference Lines and Guide Lines

Following can be displayed when the multi-view camera is on.

**Fixed Guideline:** Helps you to get a sense of a distance between your vehicle and the rear surroundings. The distance may appear differently than the actual distance.

**Dynamic Guideline:** Indicates vehicle direction while the steering wheel is in the current position.

## ▶▶ Displaying an Image From the Multi-View Cameras

The positions/distances indicated by the guide lines and camera views on the display may differ from the actual positions/distances due to the changes in the vehicle height, road conditions, and other factors. The guide lines should be used as a reference only.

The guide lines can be turned on and off using the audio/information screen.

▶ **Customized Features** P. 315

If you turn the guide lines off, they remain off until you turn them back on.

## ■ Honda Smart Parking Assist System

Selecting  that appears at the bottom of the screen while the multi-view camera images are displayed activates the parking assist system.

The system can be used when you are:

■ **Honda Smart Parking Assist System\*** P. 464

### ☒ Honda Smart Parking Assist System

While the system is in use, buzzers and chimes along with a message on the screen guide you on how to use the system.

When the system activates, the parking sensor automatically turns on, and at operation end, it returns to the last state before using the system.

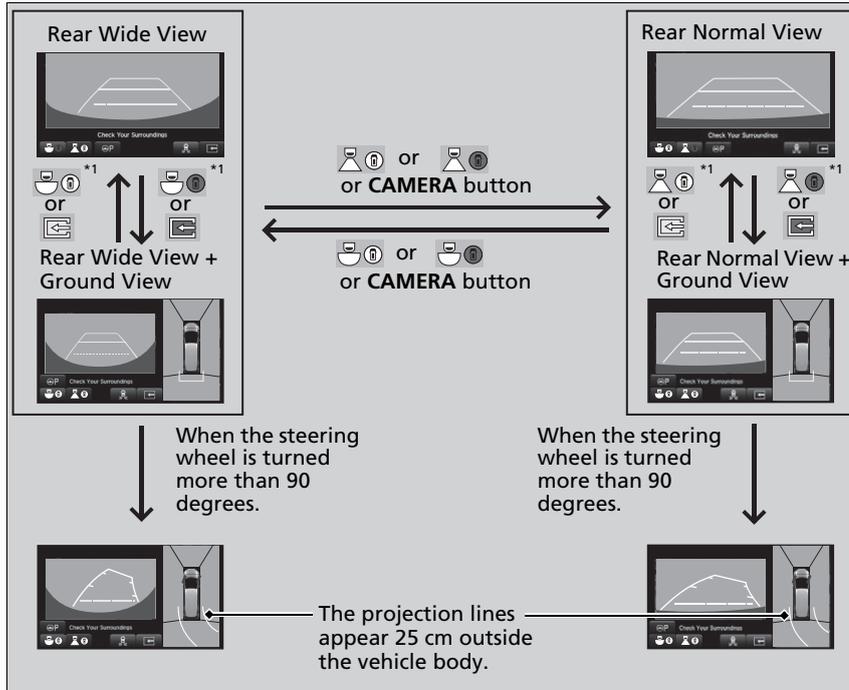
\* Not available on all models

*Continued*

## ■ Using the Multi-View Camera

### ■ Checking for obstacles at the back of your vehicle

The display automatically changes to the rear view when the shift lever position is changed to **R**.

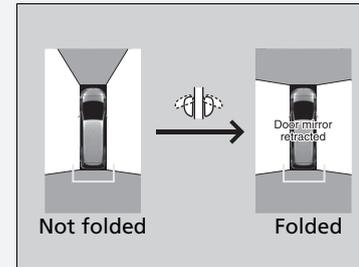


\*1: You can also switch the display by touching the view screen.

### ▶▶ Using the Multi-View Camera

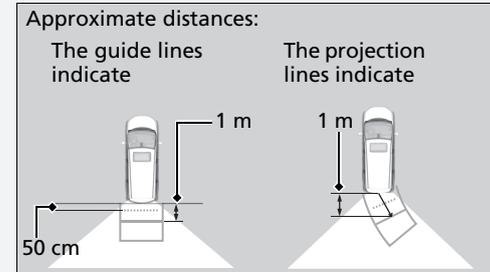
The ground view can be displayed even with the door mirrors folded. However, the viewable angle and blind spot change.

Do not refer to the multi-view camera when the door mirrors are folded.



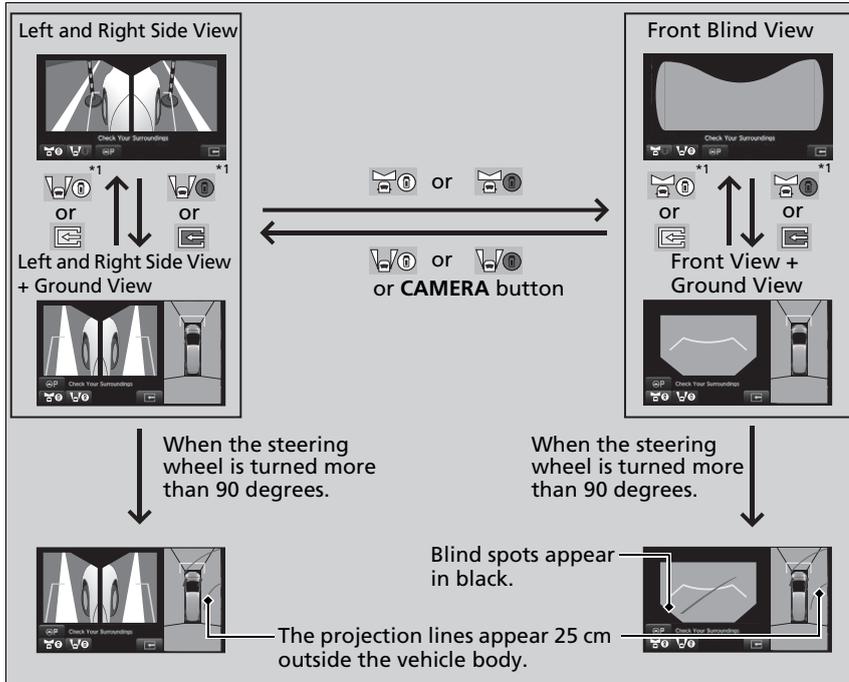
### ▶▶ Checking for obstacles at the back of your vehicle

When changing the shift lever position from/to **R**, you may experience a delay in switching between the audio/information screen and a rear view image.



### ■ Checking for the sides of your vehicle

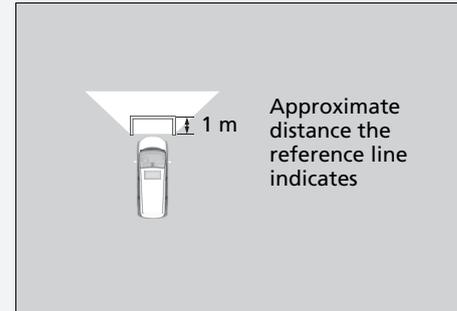
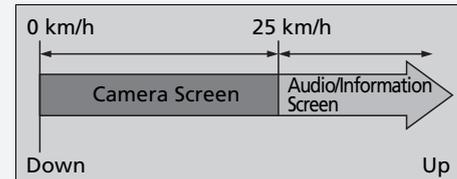
You can display the front ground view screen using all the four cameras for the system. Pressing the **CAMERA** button or **Camera** icon when the vehicle speed is at below 20 km/h changes the image as follows.



\*1: You can also switch the display by touching the view screen.

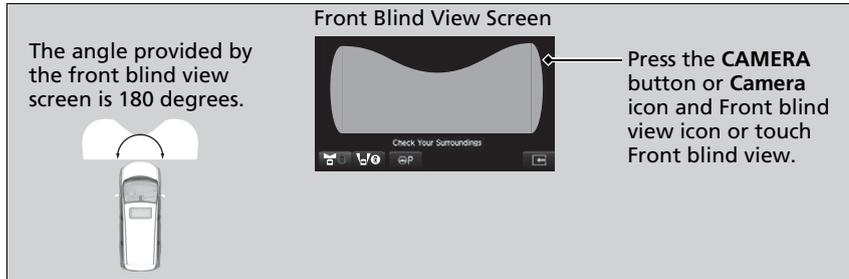
### ☒ Checking for the sides of your vehicle

If the vehicle speed exceeds 25 km/h while the front or side view image from the multi-view camera is displayed, the screen automatically switches to the audio/information screen.



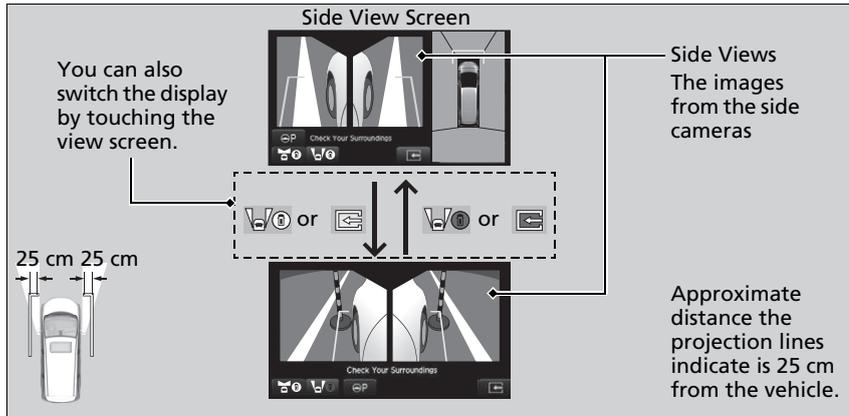
### ■ Checking from the front blind view at intersections

The front blind view screen is useful when you need to check for vehicles crossing from either direction at an intersection with poor visibility.



### ■ Checking the sides of your vehicle

The side view screens are convenient when you pull over at a curb or tollbooth, or slowly pass by oncoming vehicles on a narrow road.



### ▶▶ Checking from the front blind view at intersections

The front blind view is a wide-angled view. The image will be largely distorted, and objects may appear closer or more distant than they actually are.

### ▶▶ Checking for the sides of your vehicle

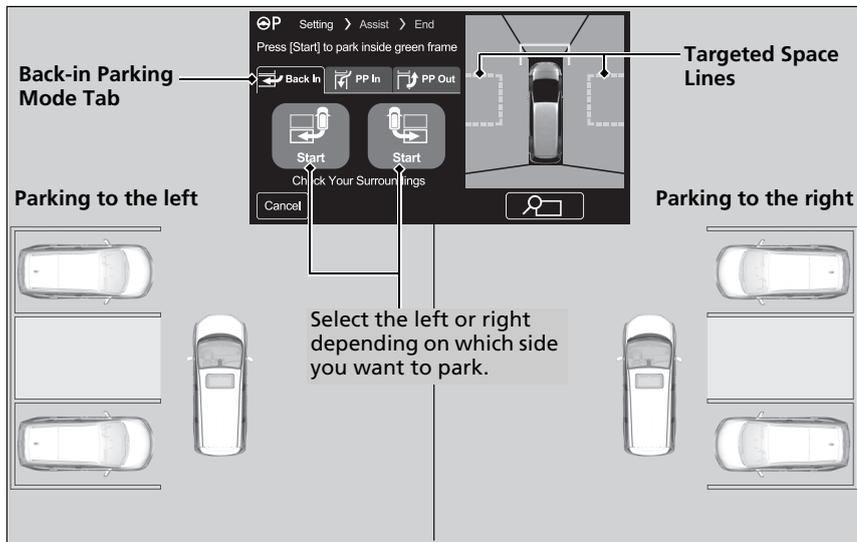
When the door mirrors are folded, the side views cannot be displayed.

## Multi-View Camera/Honda Smart Parking Assist System Limitations

The system may not work properly under the following conditions.

Conditions		Solutions
The projection line is not accurate.		The position is automatically corrected.
The images may not appear clearly when:	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You activate the system in bad weather (heavy rain, snow, fog, etc.) or in the dark.</li> <li>Camera temperatures are high.</li> <li>A sudden change between light and dark such as an entrance or exit of a tunnel.</li> <li>You drive into the sunlight (e.g., at dawn or dusk.)</li> </ul>	Do not use the multi-view camera but rely only on visual confirmation until the conditions allow the system to work properly.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A camera lens is covered with dirt, moisture, or debris.</li> <li>A camera lens is scratched.</li> </ul>	Clean camera lenses with a soft cloth moisturised with water, mild detergent or glass cleaner.
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The audio/information screen is dirty.</li> </ul>	Wipe off the screen using a soft dry cloth.
A camera angle is altered.	A camera or the area around the camera has been severely impacted.	
An error message is displayed while the multi-view camera is in use.		Do not use the multi-view camera or the Honda smart parking assist system and contact a dealer.
The image does not come on the screen when you press the <b>CAMERA</b> button or <b>Camera</b> icon on the audio/information screen and the vehicle is moving at 20 km/h or slower.		
The Honda smart parking assist system may have a problem.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The image does not come on the screen.</li> <li>The mode icon does not blink.</li> <li>The beeper does not sound.</li> </ul>	Do not use the Honda smart parking assist system and contact a dealer.

## ■ Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines



1. Press the **CAMERA** button or **Camera** icon, then select or press and hold the **CAMERA** button. Select the **Back-in parking mode** tab.
2. Move the vehicle forward perpendicular to the parking space until the targeted parking space lines frame the space you are about to park into. Stop your vehicle.
3. Depress the brake pedal fully. While keeping the shift lever in , select Left or Right, depending on the direction your vehicle is reversing to.

## ▶ Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines

### **WARNING**

Do not rely too much on the Honda smart parking assist system.

Neglecting to visually confirm the surroundings and operate your vehicle while parking can lead to a crash, in which you and others can be seriously injured or killed.

Always visually confirm the surroundings, and take appropriate means to avoid a crash while parking.

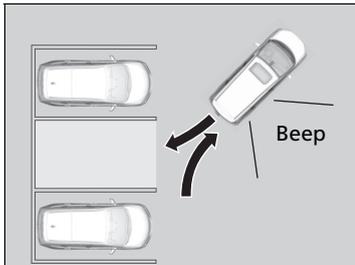
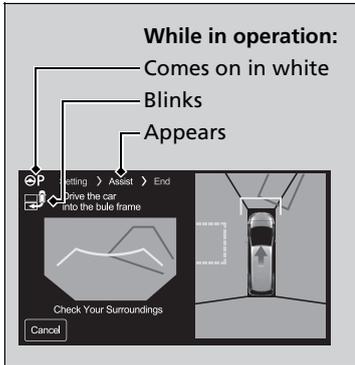
To move the vehicle forward and backward, and to brake, the driver himself/herself must operate the vehicle.

### **WARNING**

Do not use the Honda smart parking assist system when the conditions do not allow the system to work properly.

Improper use of the system can result in a crash.

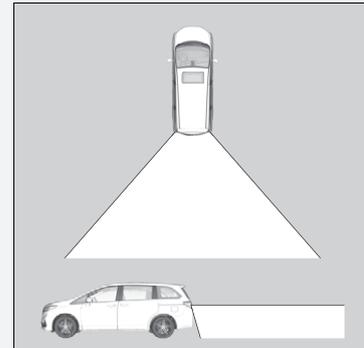
Use only on a flat, non-slippery surface with appropriate parking lines where the cameras can clearly capture the surrounding images.



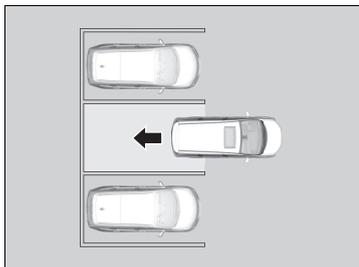
4. The steering wheel automatically turns.
  - ▶ Place your hands on the steering wheel, and follow the messages respectively appear on the screen.
  - ▶ Do not move your vehicle while the steering wheel is in motion.
5. While the beeper sounds intermittently, forward your vehicle slowly. Occasionally depress the brake pedal.
  - ▶ If the length of the intermittent beeps becomes shorter, slow down.
  - ▶ Depressing the brake pedal does not cancel the system.
6. A single long beep sounds along with a message. Stop the vehicle.
  - ▶ The beep stops. Follow the next message by shifting to **[R]**.
  - ▶ Make sure your vehicle stays within the blue frame that appears on the screen. If your vehicle goes out of the blue frame, the system is cancelled. Repeat from the step 1.
7. The steering wheel automatically turns. While the beeper sounds intermittently, reverse your vehicle slowly. Occasionally depress the brake pedal.

☒ Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines

Once the system is activated, messages appear on the screen and a buzzer periodically sounds to assist the driver. In addition, indicators light up on the screen to show the status of the system. The screen will show that the vehicle is completely parallel to the parking lines; however, this may not be the actual case. Never rely on the screen for an accurate depiction of the position of the vehicle: Use it only for a general estimate. The rear view displayed on the screen is limited to the range shown below. When backing up, also use the mirrors to assess the area around the vehicle, and remember to check all blind spots.



This system is not a substitute for your vehicle control but for your convenience only.



8. Follow the next message. You may need to move the vehicle forward and backward several times in accordance with the setting you customized (**Wide area mode** or **Narrow area mode**).

📄 **Customized Features** P. 315

- ▶ When parking is completed, you will hear a continuous beep. Stop the vehicle, move the shift lever to **[P]**, and turn off the engine.
- ▶ If you continue reversing the vehicle after the beep, another beep sounds, notifying that the system is deactivated.

📄 Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines

**⚠ WARNING**

The steering wheel that moves automatically can cause serious injury to your hands or fingers.

Be careful when placing your hands on the steering wheel while the Honda smart parking assist system is in operation.

For proper operation, make sure to stop your vehicle when the targeted parking space lines are framing the parking space.

The system cancels operation five minutes after you have selected the left or right side for parking.

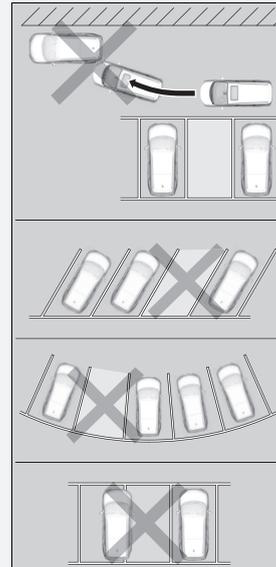
The beeper sounds once and the system cancels when:

- The vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h in **[D]** or 7 km/h in **[R]**.
- You operate the steering wheel.
- You set the parking brake.
- VSA is turned off.
- Your vehicle is overly veered off tracks.

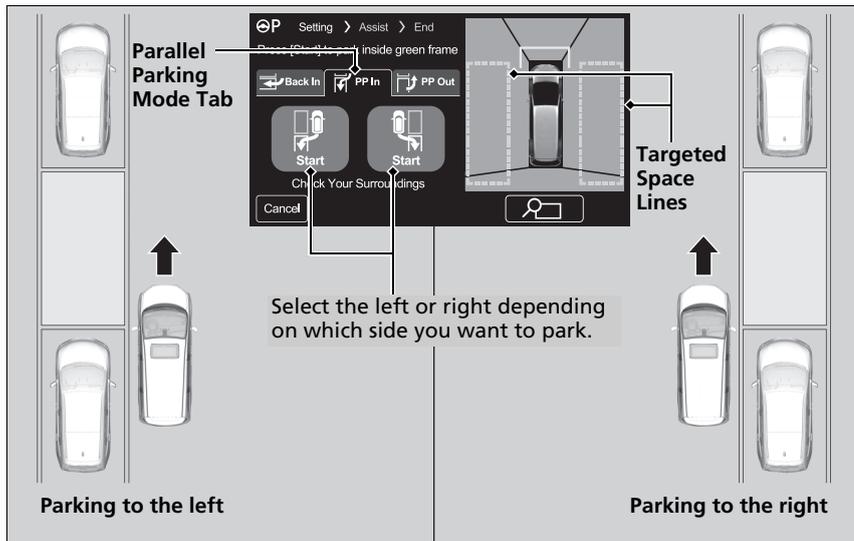
You do not change the shift lever position in accordance with the message on the screen.

## ▶▶ Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines

The Honda smart parking assist system can be useful only when there is no obstacles around the parking space, when the parking space is in a rectangular shape with straight parking marks and when vehicles in the next parking spaces are within the spaces. Use your own judgment to determine whether it is suitable to use the system for your target parking space. Also, never use the system for the following parking spaces.

*Continued*

## ■ Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines



1. Press the **CAMERA** button or **Camera** icon, then select or press and hold the **CAMERA** button. Select the **Parallel parking mode** tab.
2. Move the vehicle forward parallel to the parking space until the targeted parking space lines frame the space you are about to park into. Stop your vehicle.
3. Depress the brake pedal fully. While keeping the shift lever in **[D]**, select Left or Right, depending on which side you are parking to.

## ▣ Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines

### ⚠ WARNING

The steering wheel that moves automatically can cause serious injury to your hands or fingers.

Be careful when placing your hands on the steering wheel while the Honda smart parking assist system is in operation.

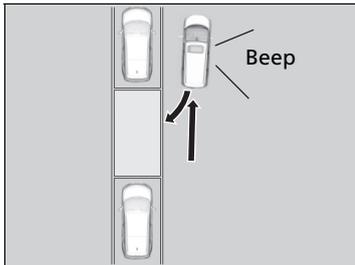
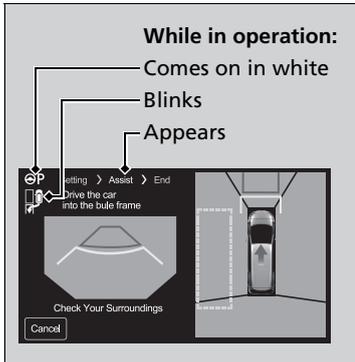
For proper operation, make sure to stop your vehicle when the targeted parking space lines are framing the parking space.

The system cancels operation five minutes after you have selected the left or right side for parking.

The beeper sounds once and the system cancels when:

- The vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h in **[D]** or 7 km/h in **[R]**.
- You operate the steering wheel.
- You set the parking brake.
- VSA is turned off.
- Your vehicle is overly veered off track.

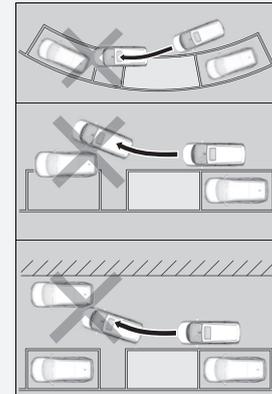
You do not change the shift lever position in accordance with the message on the screen.

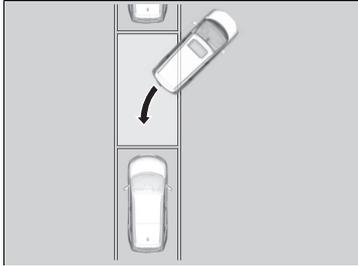


4. The steering wheel automatically turns.
  - ▶ Place your hands on the steering wheel, and follow the messages respectively appear on the screen.
  - ▶ Do not move your vehicle while the steering wheel is in motion.
5. While the beeper sounds intermittently, forward your vehicle slowly. Occasionally depress the brake pedal.
  - ▶ If the length of the intermittent beeps becomes shorter, slow down.
  - ▶ Depressing the brake pedal does not cancel the system.
6. A single long beep sounds along with a message. Stop the vehicle.
  - ▶ The beep stops. Follow the next message by shifting to **R**.
  - ▶ Make sure your vehicle stays within the blue frame that appears on the screen. If your vehicle goes out of the blue frame, the system is cancelled. Repeat from the step 1.
7. The steering wheel automatically turns. While the beeper sounds intermittently, reverse your vehicle slowly. Occasionally depress the brake pedal.

▶ Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines

The Honda smart parking assist system can be useful only when there is no obstacles around the parking space, when the parking space is in a rectangular shape with straight parking marks and when vehicles in the next parking spaces are within the spaces. Use your own judgment to determine whether it is suitable to use the system for your target parking space. Also, never use the system for the following parking spaces.





8. Follow the next message. You may need to move the vehicle forward and backward several times.
  - ▶ When parking is completed, you will hear a continuous beep. Stop the vehicle, move the shift lever to **[P]**, and turn off the engine.
  - ▶ If you continue reversing the vehicle after the beep, another beep sounds, notifying that the system is deactivated.

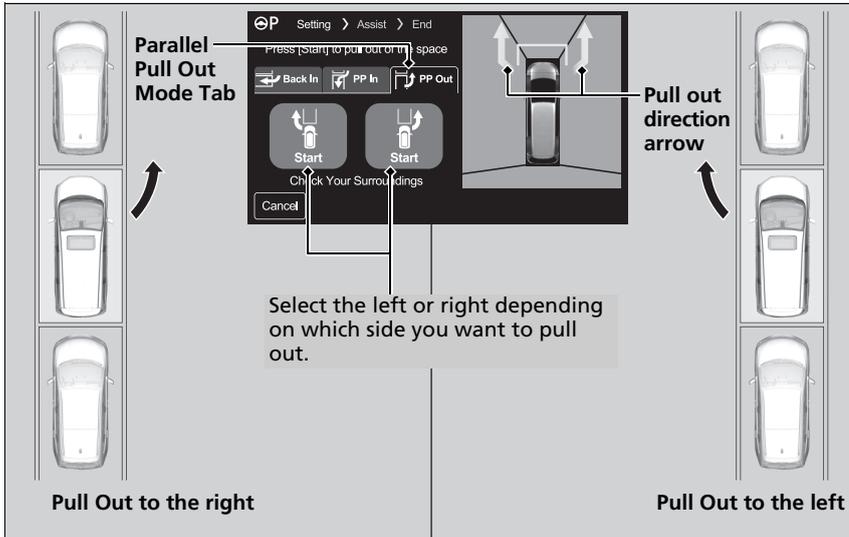
### ■ For the Honda Smart Parking Assist System to Work Properly

The following conditions are not suitable for the system's proper operation.

Determine if the system can be used when:

- The vehicle is on an incline.
- The vehicle is too far or too close to the parking space.
- The surface is bumpy or slippery or is covered with snow.
- The parking lines are worn-out or difficult to see.
- The parking space has no parking lines but is marked with objects, such as ropes, blocks and tiles.
- The parking lines are too wide or narrow.
- Varied lines other than the parking lines are visible on a surface.
- Reflected lights/images on the surface are hitting the cameras.
- The direct sunlight is hitting the cameras.
- The parking space is too dark, partially dark or in the shades of the parked vehicles.
- The weather is bad.

## Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space



## Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space

### WARNING

The steering wheel that moves automatically can cause serious injury to your hands or fingers.

Be careful when placing your hands on the steering wheel while the Honda smart parking assist system is in operation.

The system cancels operation five minutes after you have selected the left or right side for parking.

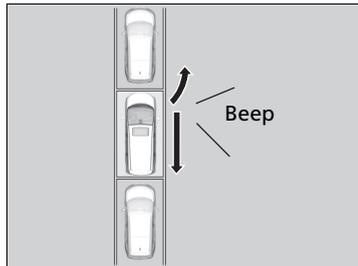
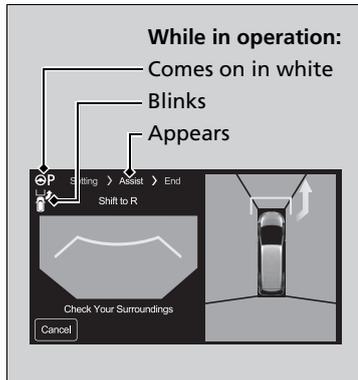
The beeper sounds once and the system cancels when:

- The vehicle speed exceeds 10 km/h in [D] or 7 km/h in [R].
- You operate the steering wheel.
- You set the parking brake.
- VSA is turned off.
- Your vehicle is overly veered off track.
- Parking sensor is turned off.
- You operate the shift lever position changing many times.

You do not change the shift lever position in accordance with the message on the screen.

1. Press the **CAMERA** button or **Camera** icon, then select or press and hold the **CAMERA** button. Select the **Parallel Pull Out mode** tab.
2. Select the Left or Right, depending on which side you are pulling out to.
3. Assist starts with going forward or backward, depending on the detection distance.

Continued



4. Move the vehicle backward with centre steering wheel position until the **Stop the car** message appears. If the assist start with going forward, skip this step and go to step 5.
5. Move the shift lever to **[D]**.
6. The steering wheel automatically turns.
  - ▶ Place your hands on the steering wheel, and follow the messages respectively appear on the screen.
  - ▶ Do not move your vehicle while the steering wheel is in motion.
7. While the beeper sounds, forward your vehicle slowly. Occasionally depress the brake pedal.
  - ▶ If the length of the intermittent beeps becomes shorter, slow down.
  - ▶ Depressing the brake pedal does not cancel the system.
8. A single long beep sounds along with a message. Stop the vehicle.
  - ▶ The beep stops. Follow the next message by moving the shift lever to **[R]**.
9. The steering wheel automatically turns. While the beeper sounds intermittently, reverse your vehicle slowly. Occasionally depress the brake pedal.

#### ▶▶ Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space

The Honda smart parking assist system can be useful only when there is no obstacles around the parking space, when the parking space is in a rectangular shape with straight parking marks and when vehicles in the next parking spaces are within the spaces.

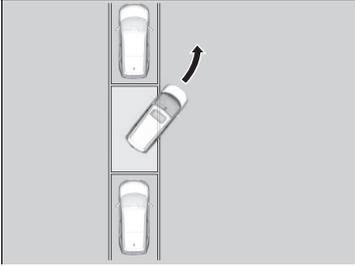
The pull-out feature will work providing that, at commencement, the road side of the vehicle directly in front of your vehicle is not extending into the road approximately one meter beyond the same side of your vehicle.

If two cars are double parked in front of yours, the pull-out feature does not work.

If the combined distance between your vehicle and the vehicle in front and behind is very short or a person or object is between your vehicle or the other vehicle(s), the pull-out start icon will appear grayed out and the feature will not activate.

Once the pull-out feature is activated, it will continue to operate even if the parking sensors detect a person or any object in their path.

If a vehicle on the road is approaching from behind, depress the brake pedal and stop the vehicle.



10. Follow the next message. You may need to move the vehicle forward and backward several times.
  - ▶ When leaving is complete, you will hear a beeper sounds once.

## ■ For the Honda Smart Parking Assist System to Work Properly

The following conditions are not suitable for the system's proper operation.

Determine if the system can be used when:

- The surface is bumpy or slippery or is covered with snow.
- Reflected lights/images on the surface are hitting the cameras.
- The direct sunlight is hitting the cameras.
- The parking space is too dark, partially dark or in the shades of the parked vehicles.
- The weather is bad.

## ■ Unsuitable parking spaces for Honda Smart Parking Assist System

The following parking spaces are not suitable when using the Honda smart parking assist system.

### ■ Common spaces that are unsuitable

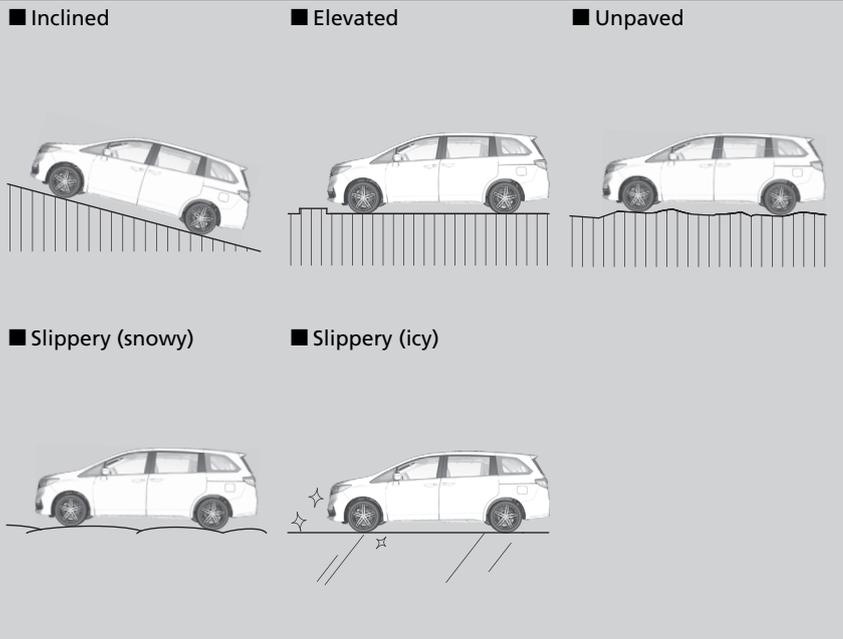
It is not advisable to use the system to park in an inclined space or one the surface of which is uneven or slippery. Depending on the degree of the incline, the driver may not be able to move the vehicle forward or back with light application of the accelerator pedal. On an uneven or slippery surface, the driver may not be able to apply steady easy acceleration.

Carefully consider the condition of the parking space and use your own judgment to determine whether the space is appropriate or not for parking.

### ⊠ Unsuitable parking spaces for Honda Smart Parking Assist System

When moving the vehicle backward or forward on a steep downward slope, be careful not to apply too much pressure to the accelerator pedal.

*Continued*



## ■ Error Messages

If  comes on in orange, the Honda smart parking assist system has a problem. Do not use the system and have your vehicle checked by a dealer. If you do not see  in orange, you may find a solution from a message on the screen.

## ■ When the System Does Not Activate

A message may appear. Follow the corresponding solution, then start the system again.

Messages	Causes	Solutions
<b>Check parking sensors</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• There is a problem with the parking sensors.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.</li> </ul>
<b>Unable to assist not enough space</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Parking sensors couldn't find enough space to assist.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Do not use the system. Park manually.</li> </ul>
<b>Rear parking sensors are turned off</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Rear parking sensors are turned off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Turn on the rear parking sensors.   <b>Turning off All Rear Sensors</b> P. 447</li> </ul>
<b>Turn on parking sensor system</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• All parking sensors are turned off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Turn on the parking sensors.   <b>Parking sensor system on and off</b> P. 444</li> </ul>
<b>Align green frame to parking space</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Your vehicle is overly veered off track.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Framing your parking space with the targeted lines.</li> </ul>
<b>Close doors</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• A door is open.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Make sure to close all doors.</li> </ul>

Messages	Causes	Solutions
<b>Extend door mirrors</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Door mirrors are folded.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Press the door mirror folding button to unfold the door mirrors.</li> </ul>
<b>Switch VSA ON</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• VSA is deactivated.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Turn the VSA system on.</li> </ul>
<b>Shift to D before use</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The shift lever is in a position other than <b>D</b>.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move the shift lever to <b>D</b>.</li> </ul>
<b>Shift from R to use assist</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The shift lever is in <b>R</b>.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Move the shift lever in a position other than <b>R</b>.</li> </ul>
<b>Stop car to use assist</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Your vehicle is moving.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Depress the brake pedal.</li> </ul>
<b>Loosen grip of steering wheel</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Excessive force is applied to the steering wheel, preventing it from automatic operation.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Try not to hold onto the steering wheel, but place your hands lightly on it. Make sure the steering wheel is in the centre position.</li> </ul>
<b>Centre steering wheel</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The steering wheel is not in the centre position.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Return the steering wheel to the centre position.</li> </ul>
<b>Release parking brake</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The parking brake is set.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Release the parking brake.</li> </ul>
<b>Press [Start] to pull out of the space</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You stay on the Start switch screen of the Parallel Pull Out Mode.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select the Start switch, depending on which side you are pulling out to.</li> </ul>
<b>Decelerate before use</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When forwarding: The vehicle speed has exceeded 10 km/h. When reversing: The vehicle speed has exceeded 7 km/h.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Framing your parking space with the targeted lines. Use the brake pedal to adjust the vehicle speed. Or, park your vehicle manually.</li> </ul>
<b>Press [Start] to park inside green frame</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• You stay on the Start switch screen of the Back-in Parking and Parallel Parking Mode.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Select the Start switch, depending on which side you are parking to.</li> </ul>
<b>Turn off ACC</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The ACC is on.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Turn off the ACC, then press the switch again.</li> </ul>

## ■ When the System is Cancelled during Operation

A beep and a message notify you. Follow the corresponding solution.

Messages	Causes	Solutions
<b>Park assist cancelled Cancel switch pressed</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The <b>CAMERA</b> button is pressed or <b>Cancel</b> is selected.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Start from step 2, framing your parking space with the targeted lines. Or, park your vehicle manually.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines</b> P. 464</li> <li>➤ <b>Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines</b> P. 468</li> <li>➤ <b>Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space</b> P. 471</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Park assist cancelled Steering wheel operated</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>You try to operate the steering wheel during its automatic operations.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Start from step 2, framing your parking space with the targeted lines. Do not hold onto the steering wheel. Gently grip the steering wheel and follow its movement. Or, park your vehicle manually.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines</b> P. 464</li> <li>➤ <b>Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines</b> P. 468</li> <li>➤ <b>Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space</b> P. 471</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Park assist cancelled Gear lever operated</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When forwarding: The shift lever is moved out of <b>[D]</b>. When reversing: The shift lever is moved out of <b>[R]</b>.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Start from step 2, framing your parking space with the targeted lines. Or, park your vehicle manually.               <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines</b> P. 464</li> <li>➤ <b>Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines</b> P. 468</li> <li>➤ <b>Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space</b> P. 471</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Messages	Causes	Solutions
<b>Park assist cancelled Parking sensor system is turned OFF</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Parking sensors are turned off.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Restart the parking assist. The parking sensors automatically turns on.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines</b> P. 464</li> <li>➤ <b>Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines</b> P. 468</li> <li>➤ <b>Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space</b> P. 471</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Park assist cancelled VSA switched OFF</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• VSA is deactivated.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Turn the VSA system on. Start from step 2, framing your parking space with the targeted lines. Or, park your vehicle manually.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines</b> P. 464</li> <li>➤ <b>Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines</b> P. 468</li> <li>➤ <b>Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space</b> P. 471</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Park assist cancelled Speed too high</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• When forwarding: The vehicle speed has exceeded 10 km/h. When reversing: The vehicle speed has exceeded 7 km/h.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Start from step 2, framing your parking space with the targeted lines. Use the brake pedal to adjust the vehicle speed. Or, park you vehicle manually.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines</b> P. 464</li> <li>➤ <b>Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines</b> P. 468</li> <li>➤ <b>Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space</b> P. 471</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
<b>Park assist cancelled Passed over stop point</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Your vehicle has passed by the system's designated stopping point.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Start from step 2, framing your parking space with the targeted lines. Or, park your vehicle manually.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines</b> P. 464</li> <li>➤ <b>Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines</b> P. 468</li> </ul> </li> </ul>

Messages	Causes	Solutions
<p><b>Park assist cancelled</b> <b>Park assist cannot be completed</b></p>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The vehicle is on a surface tyres are likely to spin, making it difficult for the system to control the steering wheel.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Do not use the system. Park manually.</li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When forwarding: The shift lever is moved out of <b>D</b>.</li> <li>When reversing: The shift lever is moved out of <b>R</b>.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Start from step 2, framing your parking space with the targeted lines. Or, park your vehicle manually.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines</b> P. 464</li> <li>➤ <b>Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines</b> P. 468</li> <li>➤ <b>Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space</b> P. 471</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>VSA is activated.</li> </ul>	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The system time-out. Five minutes has elapsed since the system is in operation.</li> </ul>	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Your vehicle is overly veered off track.</li> </ul>	
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The EPS temperature is high.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Wait for a while until the system cools down. Start from step 2, framing your parking space with the targeted lines. Or, park your vehicle manually.                             <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>➤ <b>Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines</b> P. 464</li> <li>➤ <b>Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines</b> P. 468</li> <li>➤ <b>Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space</b> P. 471</li> </ul> </li> </ul>
	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The battery needs servicing.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The battery may need to be recharged or replaced. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.</li> </ul>

Messages	Causes	Solutions
<b>Park assist cancelled Unable to pull out from parallel space</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The engine has stopped.</li> <li>• You operate the shift position changing many times.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Restart the engine. Start from step 2, framing your parking space with the targeted lines. ➤ <b>Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space</b> P. 471</li> </ul>
<b>Park assist cancelled Parking assist unavailable</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The engine has stopped.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Restart the engine. Start from step 2, framing your parking space with the targeted lines. ➤ <b>Reversing into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines</b> P. 464 ➤ <b>Parallel Parking into a Parking Space Marked with Parking Lines</b> P. 468 ➤ <b>Parallel Pull Out from a Parking Space</b> P. 471</li> </ul>
<b>Parking assist failed</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The system failure.</li> </ul>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Park your vehicle manually. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer as soon as possible.</li> </ul>

Driving

If any of the following problems occur while you are using the Honda smart parking assist system, press **CAMERA** button to cancel the operation and have your vehicle checked by a Honda dealer:

- The image captured by camera disappears.
- The parking mode icon stops illuminating.
- The system buzzer stops working.

Furthermore, if you are travelling under 20km/h and the image captured by the camera disappears, there may be a problem with the camera. Have your vehicle checked by a Honda dealer.

## Fuel Information

### Fuel recommendation

#### Taiwanese models

**Unleaded petrol, research octane number 92 or higher**

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

#### Hong Kong and Macau models

**Unleaded petrol, research octane number 92 or higher**

Use of lower octane petrol can cause occasional metallic knocking noise in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance.

Use of petrol with a research octane less than 89 can lead to engine damage.

#### Indonesian models

**Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher**

Your vehicle is designed to operate on unleaded petrol with a research octane of 91 or higher.

If this octane grade is unavailable, regular unleaded petrol with a research octane of 90 or higher may be used temporarily.

The use of regular unleaded petrol can cause metallic knocking noises in the engine and will result in decreased engine performance. The long-term use of regular-grade petrol can lead to engine damage.

### Fuel Information

#### NOTICE

Use of petrol that contains lead presents the following risks:

- Damage to the exhaust system including the catalytic converter
- Damage to the engine and fuel system
- Detrimental effects on the engine and other systems

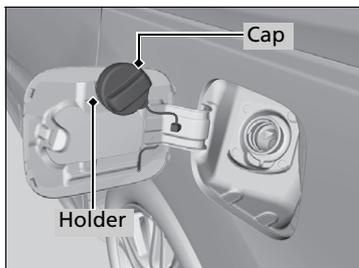
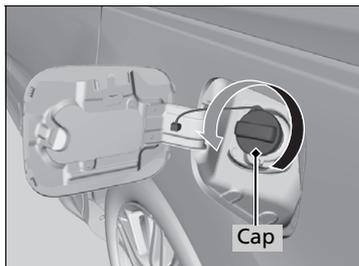
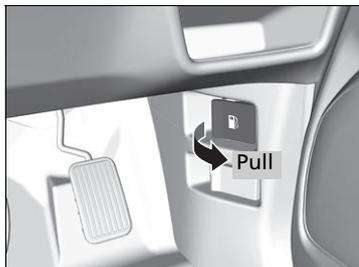
Models for other countries

**Unleaded petrol, research octane number 91 or higher**

Use of lower octane petrol can cause a persistent, heavy metallic knocking noise that can lead to engine damage.

■ **Fuel tank capacity: 55 L**

## How to Refuel



1. Stop your vehicle with the service station pump on the left side of the vehicle in the rear.
2. Turn off the engine.
3. Pull on the fuel fill door release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
  - ▶ The fuel fill door opens.
4. Remove the fuel fill cap slowly. If you hear a release of air, wait until this stops, then turn the knob slowly to open the fuel fill cap.
5. Place the fuel fill cap in the holder.
6. Insert the fuel filler nozzle fully.
  - ▶ When the tank is full, the filler nozzle will click off automatically. This leaves space in the fuel tank in case the fuel expands with a change in the temperature.
7. After filling, replace the fuel fill cap, tightening it until you hear it click at least once.
  - ▶ Shut the fuel fill door by hand.

### How to Refuel

## ⚠ WARNING

**Petrol is highly flammable and explosive. You can be burned or seriously injured when handling fuel.**

- Stop the engine, and keep heat, sparks, and flame away.
- Handle fuel only outdoors.
- Wipe up spills immediately.

The filler nozzle automatically stops to leave space in the fuel tank so that fuel does not overflow as a result of changes in air temperature.

Do not continue to add fuel after the filler nozzle has automatically stopped. Additional fuel can exceed the full tank capacity.

## Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions

Achieving fuel economy and reducing CO<sub>2</sub> emissions is dependent on several factors, including driving conditions, load weight, idling time, driving habits, and vehicle condition. Depending on these and other factors, you may not achieve the rated fuel economy of this vehicle.

### Maintenance and Fuel Economy

You can optimize your fuel economy with proper maintenance of your vehicle. Follow the maintenance schedule and, if necessary, consult your warranty booklet.

#### 📖 Maintenance Schedule P. 491

- Use engine oil with the viscosity recommended.

#### 📖 Recommended Engine Oil P. 497

- Maintain the specified tyre pressure.
- Do not load the vehicle with excess luggage.
- Keep your vehicle clean. A buildup of snow or mud on your vehicle's underside adds weight and increases wind resistance.

### 📖 Improving Fuel Economy and Reducing CO<sub>2</sub> Emissions

Direct calculation is the recommended method to determine actual fuel consumed while driving.

100	×	Litres of fuel	÷	Kilometres driven	=	L per 100 km
Kilometres driven	÷	Litres of fuel	=	Kilometres per Litre		

### GCC country models

You can improve the mileage and reduce the CO<sub>2</sub> emissions of your vehicle by following these tips:

- Operate your vehicle correctly.
- Regularly maintain your vehicle.
- Maintain proper tyre pressure.
- Avoid carrying excessive loads.
- Adopt efficient driving techniques, such as driving at lower speeds, reducing idling time, and avoiding aggressive driving.

# Maintenance

This chapter discusses basic maintenance.



## **Before Performing Maintenance**

Inspection and Maintenance .....	488
Safety When Performing Maintenance ...	489
Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service .....	490

## **Maintenance Schedule**

Maintenance Record (On Vehicles without Service Book).....	494
--	-----

## **Maintenance Under the Bonnet**

Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet...	495
Opening the Bonnet .....	496
Recommended Engine Oil .....	497
Oil Check .....	498

Adding Engine Oil.....	499
Engine Coolant.....	500
Transmission Fluid.....	502
Brake Fluid.....	503
Refilling Window Washer Fluid.....	504
Fuel Filter .....	504
<b>Replacing Light Bulbs</b> .....	505
<b>Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades</b> .....	509
<b>Checking and Maintaining Tyres</b>	
Checking Tyres .....	513
Wear Indicators.....	514
Tyre Service Life .....	514

Tyre and Wheel Replacement.....	515
Tyre Rotation .....	516
Snow Traction Devices .....	517
<b>Battery</b> .....	519

## **Remote Transmitter Care**

Replacing the Button Battery .....	522
------------------------------------	-----

## **Climate Control System Maintenance** ..523

### **Cleaning**

Interior Care .....	525
Exterior Care.....	527

## **Accessories and Modifications** ..... 530 |

## Inspection and Maintenance

For your safety, perform all listed inspections and maintenance to keep your vehicle in good condition. If you become aware of any abnormality (noise, smell, insufficient brake fluid, oil residue on the ground, etc.), have your vehicle inspected by a dealer. Refer to the Service Book that came with your vehicle/maintenance schedule in this owner's manual for detailed maintenance and inspection information.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 491

### Types of Inspection and Maintenance

#### ■ Daily inspections

Perform inspections before long distance trips, when washing the vehicle, or when refueling.

#### ■ Periodic inspections

- Check the brake fluid level monthly.
  - **Brake Fluid** P. 503
- Check the tyre pressure monthly. Examine the tread for wear and foreign objects.
  - **Checking and Maintaining Tyres** P. 513
- Check the operation of the exterior lights monthly.
  - **Replacing Light Bulbs** P. 505
- Check the condition of the wiper blades at least every six months.
  - **Checking and Maintaining Wiper Blades** P. 509

## Safety When Performing Maintenance

Some of the most important safety precautions are given here. However, we cannot warn you of every conceivable hazard that can arise in performing maintenance. Only you can decide whether you should perform a given task.

### Maintenance Safety

- To reduce the possibility of fire or explosion, keep cigarettes, sparks, and flames away from the battery and all fuel related parts.
- Never leave rags, towels, or other flammable objects under the bonnet.
  - ▶ Heat from the engine and exhaust can ignite them, causing a fire.
- To clean parts, use a commercially available degreaser or parts cleaner, not petrol.
- Wear eye protection and protective clothing when working with the battery or compressed air.
- Engine exhaust contains carbon monoxide, which is poisonous and can kill you.
  - ▶ Only operate the engine if there is sufficient ventilation.

### Vehicle Safety

- The vehicle must be in a stationary condition.
  - ▶ Make sure your vehicle is parked on level ground, the parking brake is set, and the engine is off.
- Be aware that hot parts can burn you.
  - ▶ Make sure to let the engine and exhaust system cool thoroughly before touching vehicle parts.
- Be aware that moving parts can injure you.
  - ▶ Do not start the engine unless instructed, and keep your hands and limbs away from moving parts.

#### Models with Auto Idle Stop

- ▶ Do not open the bonnet while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated.

#### ⚠ Safety When Performing Maintenance

### ⚠ WARNING

Improperly maintaining this vehicle or failing to correct a problem before driving can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the inspection and maintenance recommendations and schedules in this owner's manual/Service Book.

### ⚠ WARNING

Failure to properly follow maintenance instructions and precautions can cause you to be seriously hurt or killed.

Always follow the procedures and precautions in this owner's manual.

## Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

---

The use of Honda genuine parts and fluids is recommended when maintaining and servicing your vehicle. Honda genuine parts are manufactured according to the same high quality standards used in Honda vehicles.

### ▶ Parts and Fluids Used in Maintenance Service

#### NOTICE

Do not press the engine cover forcibly. This may damage the engine cover and component parts.

# Maintenance Schedule

If your vehicle comes with the Service Book, the maintenance schedule for your vehicle is available in the book. For vehicles without the Service Book, refer to the following maintenance schedules.

The maintenance schedule outlines the minimum required maintenance that you should perform to ensure the troublefree operation of your vehicle. Due to regional and climatic differences, some additional servicing may be required. Please consult your warranty booklet for a more detailed description.

Maintenance work should be performed by properly trained and equipped technicians. Your authorised dealer meets all of these requirements.

## Except Australian and New Zealand models

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace engine oil* <sup>1</sup>	Normal	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
	Severe	Every 5,000 km or 6 months									
Replace engine oil filter* <sup>1</sup>	Normal	Every 20,000 km or 2 years									
	Severe	Every 10,000 km or 1 year									
Replace air cleaner element	Every 30,000 km										
Inspect valve clearance* <sup>2</sup>	Every 120,000 km										
Replace fuel filter* <sup>3</sup>					•				•		
Replace spark plugs	Every 100,000 km										
Inspect drive belts		•		•		•		•			•
Replace engine coolant	At 200,000 km or 10 years, thereafter every 100,000 km or 5 years										

\*1: Only severe schedule is required in some countries: refer to local warranty booklet.

\*2: Sensory Method. Adjust the valves during service 120,000 km if they are noisy.

\*3: Refer to page 504 for replacement information under driving condition.

Service at the indicated distance or time - whichever comes first.	km X 1,000	20	40	60	80	100	120	140	160	180	200
	months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
Replace transmission fluid			•		•		•		•		•
Inspect front and rear brakes	Every 10,000 km or 6 months										
Replace brake fluid	Every 3 years										
Check parking brake adjustment		•	•		•		•		•		•
Replace dust and pollen filter		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Rotate tyres (Check tyre inflation and condition at least once per month)	Every 10,000 km										
<b>Visually inspect the following items:</b>											
Tie rod ends, steering gearbox, and boots	Every 10,000 km or 6 months										
Suspension components											
Driveshaft boots											
Battery electrolyte level* <sup>5</sup>											
Brake hoses and lines (including ABS)		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
All fluid levels and condition of fluid		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Exhaust system		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•
Fuel lines and connections		•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•	•

\*4: Bahraini, Kuwaiti, Omani, Qatari, Saudi Arabian and UAE models

If you drive your vehicle under severe conditions, you must have the following items served to the maintenance schedule indicated as Severe.

Items	Condition
Engine oil and oil filter	A, B, C, D and E

⌘ Maintenance Schedule

The condition is considered as severe when you drive:

- A. Less than 8 km, or less than 16 km in freezing temperatures per trip.
- B. In extremely hot temperature above 35°C.
- C. With extensive idling or long periods of stop-and-go.
- D. With a loaded roof rack, or in mountains.
- E. On muddy, dusty or de-iced roads.

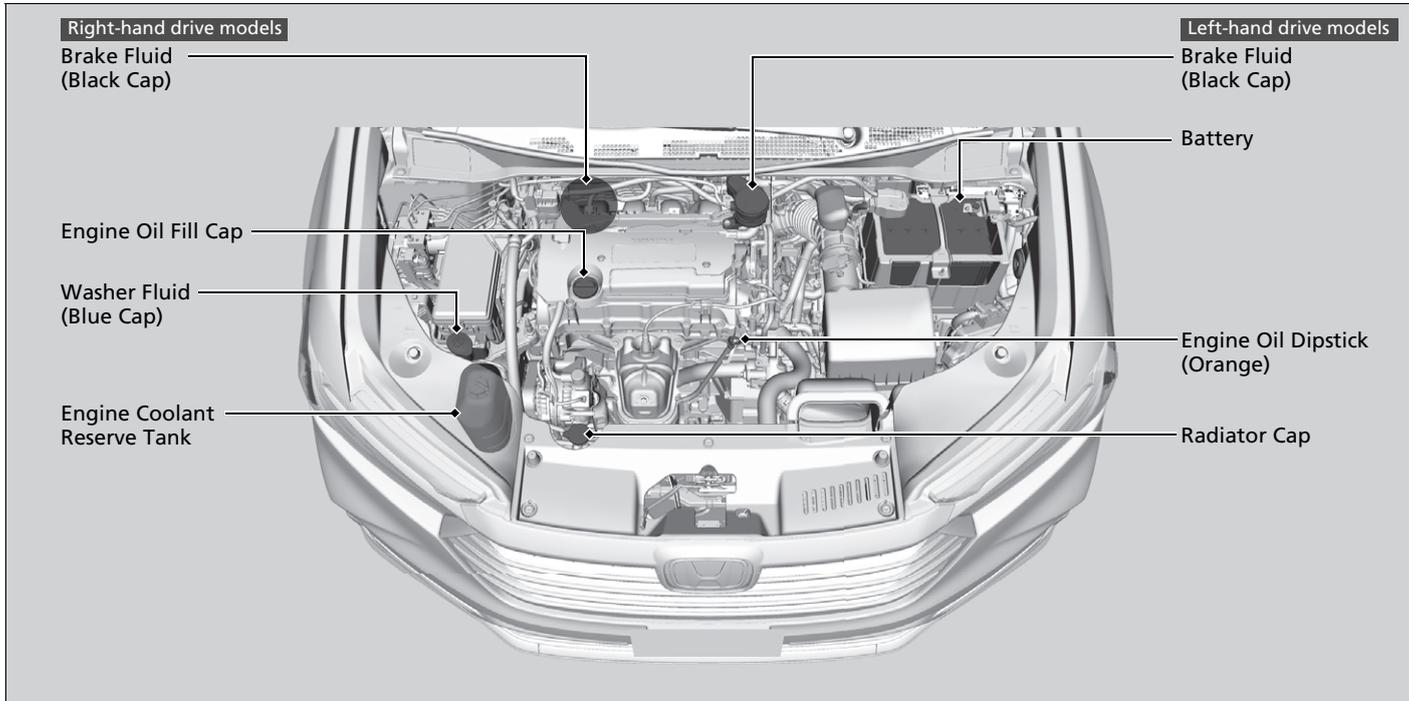
## Maintenance Record (On Vehicles without Service Book)

Except Australian and New Zealand models

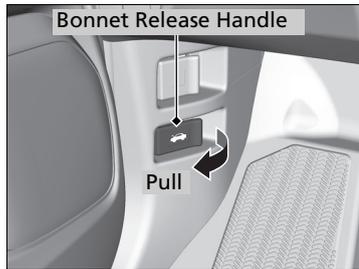
Have your servicing dealer record all required maintenance below. Keep receipts for all work done on your vehicle.

	Km or Month	Date	Sign or Stamp
<b>20,000 km</b> (or 12 Mo.)			
<b>40,000 km</b> (or 24 Mo.)			
<b>60,000 km</b> (or 36 Mo.)			
<b>80,000 km</b> (or 48 Mo.)			
<b>100,000 km</b> (or 60 Mo.)			
<b>120,000 km</b> (or 72 Mo.)			
<b>140,000 km</b> (or 84 Mo.)			
<b>160,000 km</b> (or 96 Mo.)			
<b>180,000 km</b> (or 108 Mo.)			
<b>200,000 km</b> (or 120 Mo.)			

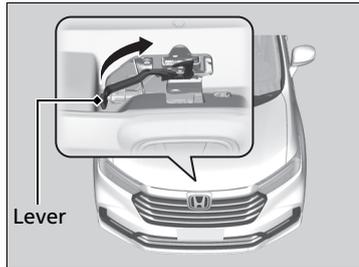
## Maintenance Items Under the Bonnet



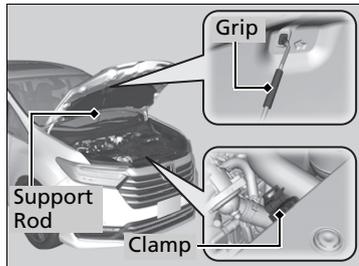
## Opening the Bonnet



1. Park the vehicle on a level surface, and set the parking brake.
2. Pull the bonnet release handle under the driver's side lower outside corner of the dashboard.
  - The bonnet will pop up slightly.



3. Pull up the bonnet latch lever (located under the front edge of the bonnet to the centre) and raise the bonnet. Once you have raised the bonnet slightly, you can release the lever.



4. Remove the support rod from the clamp using the grip. Mount the support rod in the bonnet.

When closing, remove the support rod, and stow it in the clamp, then gently lower the bonnet. Remove your hand at a height of approximately 30 cm and let the bonnet close.

### Opening the Bonnet

#### NOTICE

Do not open the bonnet when the wiper arms are raised. The bonnet will strike the wipers, resulting in possible damage to the bonnet and/or the wipers.

#### NOTICE

Do not press the engine cover forcibly. This may damage the engine cover and component parts.

When closing the bonnet, check that the bonnet is securely latched.

If the bonnet latch lever moves stiffly, or if you can open the bonnet without lifting the lever, the latch mechanism should be cleaned and lubricated.

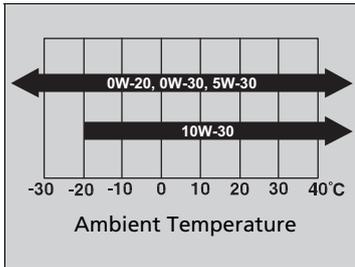
#### Models with Auto Idle Stop

Do not open the bonnet while the Auto Idle Stop function is activated.

## Recommended Engine Oil

Oil is a major contributor to your engine's performance and longevity. If you drive the vehicle with insufficient or deteriorated oil, the engine may fail or be damaged.

- **Honda Genuine Motor Oil**
- **API service SM or higher grade fuel-efficient oil**
- **ACEA A5/B5**



Use Honda Genuine Motor oil or another commercial engine oil of suitable viscosity for the ambient temperature as shown.

0W-20 oil is formulated to improve fuel economy.

### Recommended Engine Oil

#### Engine Oil Additives

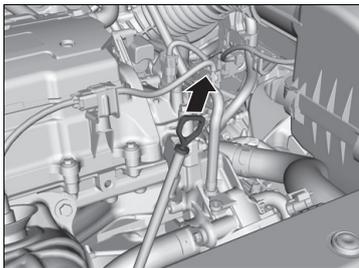
Your vehicle does not require oil additives. In fact, they may adversely affect the engine performance and durability.

## Oil Check

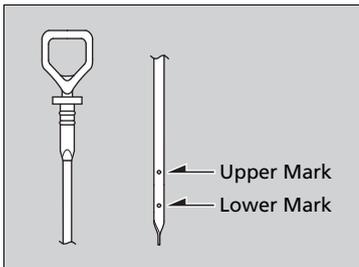
We recommend that you check the engine oil level every time you refuel.

Park the vehicle on level ground.

Wait approximately three minutes after turning the engine off before you check the oil.



1. Remove the dipstick (orange).
2. Wipe the dipstick with a clean cloth or paper towel.
3. Insert the dipstick back all the way into its hole.

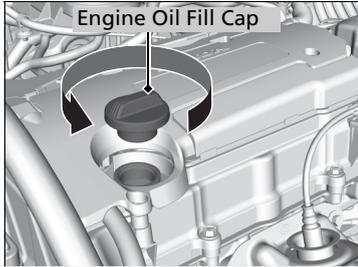


4. Remove the dipstick again, and check the level. It should be between the upper and lower marks. Add oil if necessary.

### Oil Check

If the oil level is near or below the lower mark, slowly add oil, being careful not to overfill.

## Adding Engine Oil



1. Unscrew and remove the engine oil fill cap.
2. Add oil slowly.
3. Reinstall the engine oil fill cap, and tighten it securely.
4. Wait for three minutes and recheck the engine oil dipstick.

### Adding Engine Oil

#### NOTICE

Do not fill the engine oil above the upper mark. Overfilling the engine oil may result in leaks and engine damage.

If any oil spills, wipe it away immediately. Spilled oil may damage the engine compartment components.

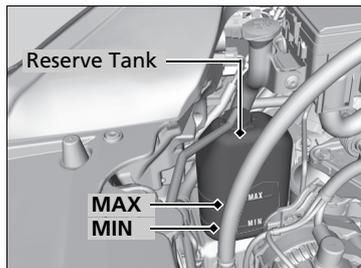
## Engine Coolant

### Specified coolant: Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2

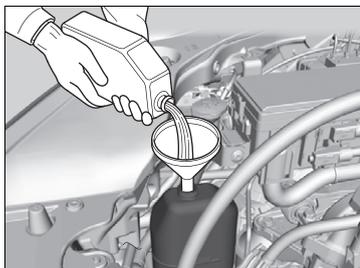
This coolant is premixed with 50% antifreeze and 50% water. Do not add any straight antifreeze or water.

We recommend you check the engine coolant level every time you refuel. Check the reserve tank first. If it is completely empty, also check the coolant level in the radiator. Add the engine coolant accordingly.

### Reserve Tank



1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.
2. Check the amount of coolant in the reserve tank.
  - If the coolant level is below the **MIN** mark, add the specified coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
3. Inspect the cooling system for leaks.



### Engine Coolant

## ⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

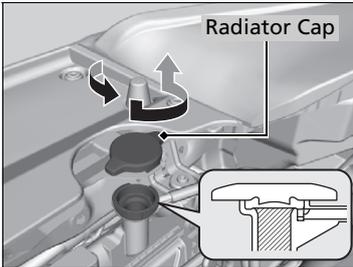
### NOTICE

If temperatures consistently below  $-30^{\circ}\text{C}$  are expected, the coolant mixture should be changed to a higher concentration. Consult your Honda dealer for details about a suitable coolant mixture.

If Honda antifreeze/coolant is not available, you may use another major brand of non-silicate coolant as a temporary replacement. Check that it is a high quality coolant recommended for aluminium engines. Continued use of any non-Honda coolant can result in corrosion, causing the cooling system to malfunction or fail. Have the cooling system flushed and refilled with Honda antifreeze/coolant as soon as possible.

Do not add rust inhibitors or other additives to your vehicle's cooling system. They may not be compatible with the coolant or with the engine components.

## Radiator



- 1. Make sure the engine and radiator are cool.**
- 2.** Turn the radiator cap 1/8 turn anticlockwise and relieve any pressure in the cooling system.
- 3.** Push down and turn the radiator cap anticlockwise to remove it.
- 4.** The coolant level should be up to the base of the filler neck. Add coolant if it is low.
- 5.** Put the radiator cap back on, and tighten it fully.

## Radiator

### NOTICE

Pour the fluid slowly and carefully so you do not spill any. Clean up any spills immediately; they can damage components in the engine compartment.

## Transmission Fluid

### ■ Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

**Specified fluid: Honda HCF-2**

Have a dealer check the fluid level and replace if necessary. Follow your vehicle's maintenance service timing of when to change continuously variable transmission fluid.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 491

Do not attempt to check or change the continuously variable transmission fluid yourself.

### ⌘ Continuously Variable Transmission (CVT) Fluid

#### NOTICE

**Do not mix Honda HCF-2 with other transmission fluids.**

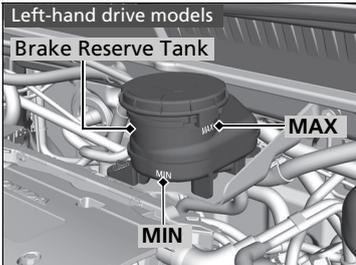
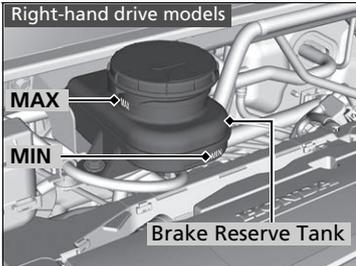
Using a transmission fluid other than Honda HCF-2 may adversely affect the operation and durability of your vehicle's transmission, and damage the transmission.

Any damage caused by using a transmission fluid that is not equivalent to Honda HCF-2 is not covered by Honda's new vehicle limited warranty.

## Brake Fluid

Specified fluid: Brake Fluid with DOT 3 or DOT 4

### Checking the Brake Fluid



The fluid level should be between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the side of the reserve tank.

### Brake Fluid

#### NOTICE

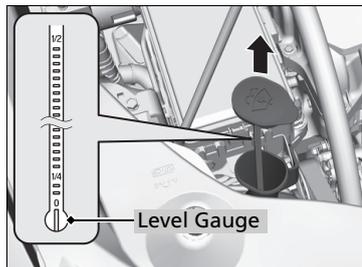
Brake fluid marked DOT 5 is not compatible with your vehicle's braking system and can cause extensive damage.

We recommend using a genuine product.

If the brake fluid level is at or below the **MIN** mark, have a dealer inspect the vehicle for leaks or worn brake pads as soon as possible.

## Refilling Window Washer Fluid

Check the amount of window washer fluid using the washer fluid level gauge on the cap.



If the level is low, fill the washer reservoir.

Pour the washer fluid carefully. Do not overflow the reservoir.

### ►► Refilling Window Washer Fluid

#### NOTICE

Do not use engine antifreeze or a vinegar/water solution in the windscreen washer reservoir. Antifreeze can damage your vehicle's paint. A vinegar/water solution can damage the windscreen washer pump. Use only commercially available windscreen washer fluid. Avoid prolonged use of hard water to prevent lime scale build up.

## Fuel Filter

Replace fuel filter according to the time and distance recommendations in the maintenance schedule.

#### Except Australian and New Zealand models

It is recommended to replace the fuel filter every 40,000 km, or 2 years, if you suspect the fuel you are using is contaminated. In a dusty environment, the filter may become clogged sooner.

#### Australian and New Zealand models

It is recommended to replace the fuel filter every 45,000 km, or 3 years, if you suspect the fuel you are using is contaminated. In a dusty environment, the filter may become clogged sooner.

#### All models

Have a qualified technician change the fuel filter. Fuel in the system can spray out and create a hazard if all fuel line connections are not handled correctly.

## Headlights

---

Headlights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Position Lights\*

---

Position lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Position/Daytime Running Lights\*

---

Position/daytime running lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Active Cornering Lights\*

---

Active cornering lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Front Turn Signal Lights

---

Front turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Side Turn Signal/Emergency Indicator Lights

---

Door mirror side turn lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

\* Not available on all models

### Headlights

---

The headlight aim is set by the factory, and does not need to be adjusted. However, if you regularly carry heavy items in the luggage area or tow a trailer\*, have the aiming readjusted at a dealer or by a qualified technician.

## Front Fog Lights

---

Front fog lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Brake, Taillights/Side Marker and Rear Turn Signal Lights

---

Brake, taillights/side marker and rear turn signal lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Back-Up Lights

---

Back-up lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Rear Fog Light\*

---

Rear fog light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Rear Licence Plate Light

---

Rear licence plate light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## High-Mount Brake Light

---

High-mount brake light is LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Sliding Door Courtesy Lights\*

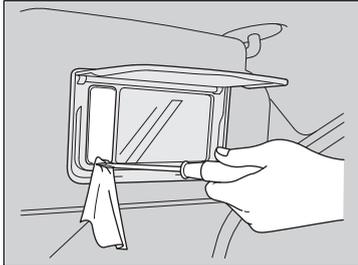
Sliding door courtesy lights are LED type. Have an authorised Honda dealer inspect and replace the light assembly.

## Other Light Bulbs

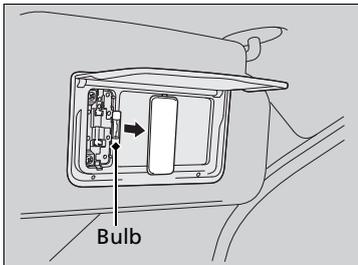
### ■ Vanity Mirror Light Bulbs\*

When replacing, use the following bulbs.

**Vanity Mirror Light: 2 W**



1. Pry on the edge of the cover using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the cover.  
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

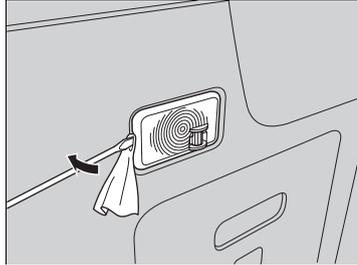


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

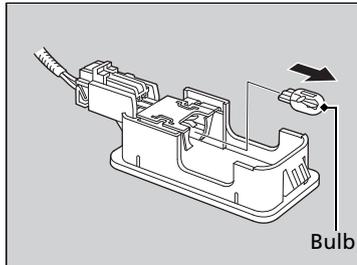
### ■ Luggage Area Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

**Luggage Area Light: 5 W**



1. Pry on the edge of the light using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the light assembly.  
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

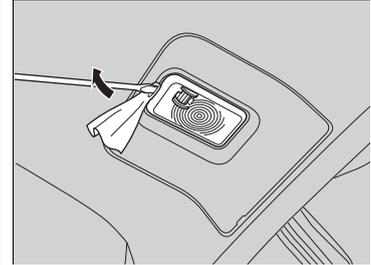


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

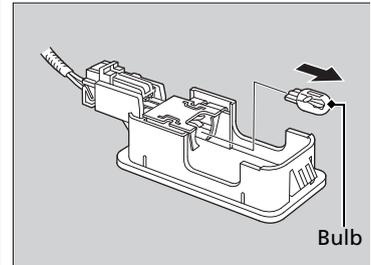
### ■ Tailgate Light Bulb

When replacing, use the following bulb.

**Tailgate Light: 5 W**



1. Pry on the edge of the light using a flat-tip screwdriver to remove the light assembly.  
► Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.

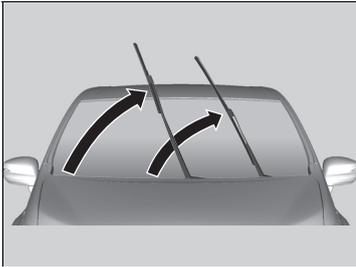


2. Remove the old bulb and insert a new bulb.

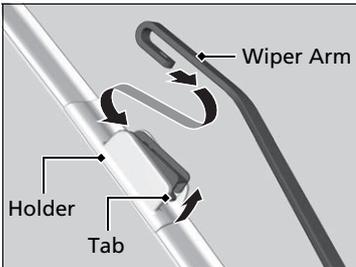
## Checking Wiper Blades

If the wiper blade rubber has deteriorated, it will leave streaks, become noisy, and the hard surfaces of the blade may scratch the window glass.

## Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Lift the driver side wiper arm first, then the passenger side.

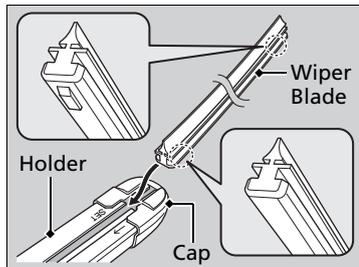
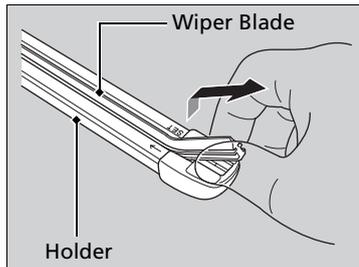
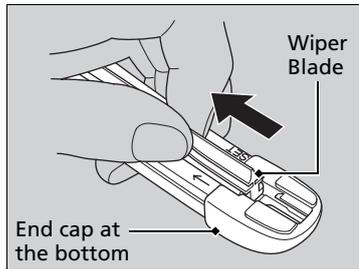


2. Press up on and hold the tab, then slide the holder off the wiper arm.

### ☒ Changing the Front Wiper Blade Rubber

#### NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm onto the windscreen, it may damage the wiper arm and/or the windscreen.



3. Pull the end of the wiper blade in the direction of the arrow in the image until it is out of the holder's end cap.

4. Pull the wiper blade in the opposite direction to slide it out of the holder.

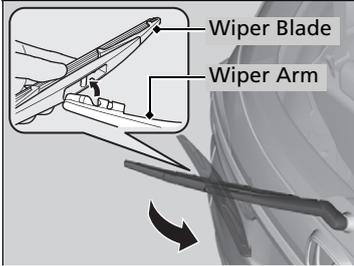
5. Insert the flat side of the new wiper blade onto the bottom part of the holder. Insert the blade all the way.

6. Install the end of the wiper blade into the cap.

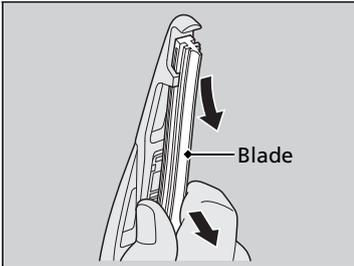
7. Slide the holder onto the wiper arm until it locks.

8. Lower the passenger side wiper arm first, then the driver side.

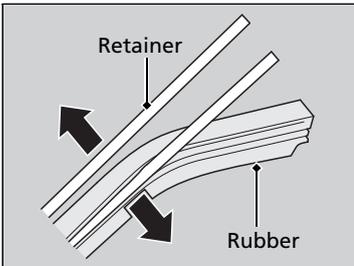
## Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber



1. Raise the wiper arm off.
2. Pivot the bottom end of the wiper blade up until it comes off from the wiper arm.



3. Slide the blade out of the wiper.



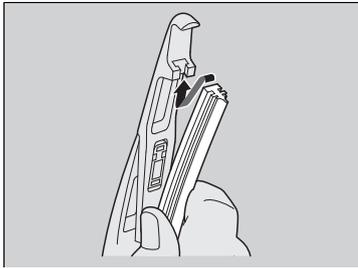
4. Remove the retainers from wiper blade and mount to a new rubber blade.

### Changing the Rear Wiper Blade Rubber

#### NOTICE

Avoid dropping the wiper arm; it may damage the rear window.

Continued



5. Slide the new wiper blade onto the holder.
  - ▶ Make sure it is engaged correctly, then install the wiper blade assembly onto the wiper arm.

## Checking Tyres

To safely operate your vehicle, your tyres must be of the proper type and size, in good condition with adequate tread, and properly inflated.

### ■ Inflation guidelines

Properly inflated tyres provide the best combination of handling, tread life, and comfort. Refer to the driver's doorjamb label for the specified pressure.

Underinflated tyres wear unevenly, adversely affect handling and fuel economy, and are more likely to fail from overheating.

Overinflated tyres make your vehicle ride harshly, are more prone to road hazards, and wear unevenly.

Every day before you drive, look at each of the tyres. If one looks lower than the others, check the pressure with a tyre gauge.

At least once a month or before long trips, use a gauge to measure the pressure in all tyres, including the spare. Even tyres in good condition can lose 10-20 kPa (0.1-0.2 bar, 1-2 psi) per month.

### ■ Inspection guidelines

Every time you check inflation, also examine the tyres and valve stems.

Look for:

- Bumps or bulges on the side or in the tread. Replace the tyre if you find any cuts, splits, or cracks in the side of the tyre. Replace it if you see fabric or cord.
- Remove any foreign objects and inspect for air leaks.
- Uneven tread wear. Have a dealer check the wheel alignment.
- Excessive tread wear.

➤ **Wear Indicators** P. 514

- Cracks or other damage around valve stem.

### ☒ Checking Tyres

## ⚠ WARNING

Using tyres that are excessively worn or improperly inflated can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding tyre inflation and maintenance.

Measure the air pressure when tyres are cold. This means the vehicle has been parked for at least three hours, or driven less than 1.6 km. If necessary, add or release air until the specified pressure is reached.

If checked when hot, tyre pressure can be as much as 30-40 kPa (0.3-0.4 bar, 4-6 psi) higher than if checked when cold.

#### Oceanian and Middle Eastern models

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must initialise the deflation warning system.

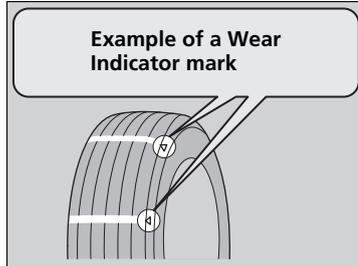
➤ **Deflation Warning System Initialisation**  
P. 384, 388

#### Taiwanese models

Whenever tyre pressure is adjusted, you must initialise the TPMS.

➤ **TPMS Initialisation** P. 391

## Wear Indicators



The groove where the wear indicator is located is about 1.6 mm shallower than elsewhere on the tyre. If the tread has worn so that the indicator is exposed, replace the tyre.

**Worn out tyres have poor traction on wet roads.**

## Tyre Service Life

The life of your tyres is dependent on many factors, including driving habits, road conditions, vehicle loading, inflation pressure, maintenance history, speed, and environmental conditions (even when the tyres are not in use).

In addition to regular inspections and inflation pressure maintenance, it is recommended that you have annual inspections performed once the tyres reach five years old. All tyres, including the spare, should be removed from service after 10 years from the date of manufacture, regardless of their condition or state of wear.

### ☒ Checking Tyres

Have a dealer check the tyres if you feel a consistent vibration while driving. New tyres and any that have been removed and reinstalled should be properly balanced.

## Tyre and Wheel Replacement

Replace your tyres with radials of the same size, load range, speed rating, and maximum cold tyre pressure rating (as shown on the tyre's sidewall). Using tyres of a different size or construction can cause certain vehicle systems such as the ABS and Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA) system to work incorrectly.

It is best to replace all four tyres at the same time. If that isn't possible, replace the front or rear tyres in pairs.

Make sure that the wheel's specifications match those of the original wheels.

### ⓘ Tyre and Wheel Replacement

#### **WARNING**

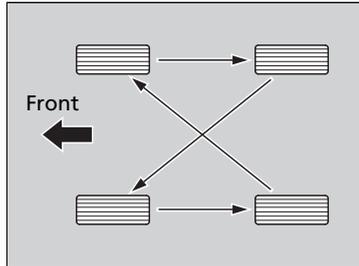
Installing improper tyres on your vehicle can affect handling and stability. This can cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.

Always use the size and type of tyres recommended in the tyre information label on your vehicle.

## Tyre Rotation

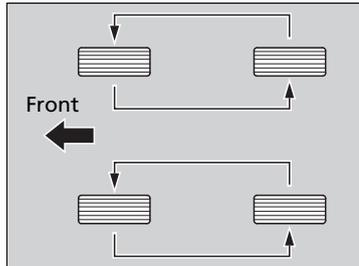
Rotating tyres according to the maintenance schedule helps to distribute wear more evenly and increase tyre life.

### ■ Tyres without rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

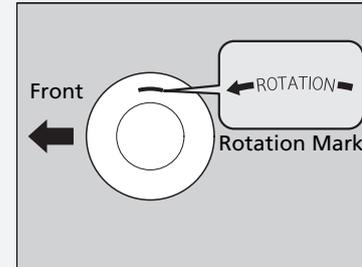
### ■ Tyres with rotation marks



Rotate the tyres as shown here.

### ► Tyre Rotation

Tyres with directional tread patterns should only be rotated front to back (not from one side to the other). Directional tyres should be mounted with the rotation indication mark facing forward, as shown below.



When the tyres are rotated, make sure the air pressures are checked.

#### Oceanian and Middle Eastern models

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must initialise the deflation warning system.

#### ► Deflation Warning System Initialisation

P. 384, 388

#### Taiwanese models

Whenever tyres are rotated, you must initialise the TPMS.

#### ► TPMS Initialisation P. 391

## Snow Traction Devices

If driving on snowy or frozen roads, mount winter tyres, or tyre chains; reduce speed; and maintain sufficient distance between vehicles when driving.

Be particularly careful when operating the steering wheel or brakes to prevent skidding.

Use tyre chains, winter tyres, or all season tyres when necessary or according to the law.

When mounting, refer to the following points.

For winter tyres:

- Select the size and load ranges that are the same as the original tyres.
- Mount the tyres to all four wheels.

For tyre chains:

- Consult a dealer before purchasing any type of chains for your vehicle.
- Install them on the front tyres only.
- Because your vehicle has limited tyre clearance, we strongly recommend using the chains listed below:

Except Taiwanese and Philippines models

Original Tyre Size*1	Chain Type
215/60R17 96H	SCC Radial Chain SC1038
225/50R18 95V	SCC Radial Chain SC1036

\*1: Original tyre size is mentioned on the tyre information label on the driver's doorjamb.

### ❗ Snow Traction Devices

## ⚠ WARNING

Using the wrong chains, or not properly installing chains, can damage the brake lines and cause a crash in which you can be seriously injured or killed.

Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding the selection and use of tyre chains.

### NOTICE

Traction devices that are the wrong size or improperly installed can damage your vehicle's brake lines, suspension, body, and wheels. Stop driving if they are hitting any part of the vehicle.

When tyre chains are mounted, follow the chain manufacturer's instructions regarding vehicle operational limits.

Use tyre chains only in an emergency or when they are legally required for driving through a certain area.

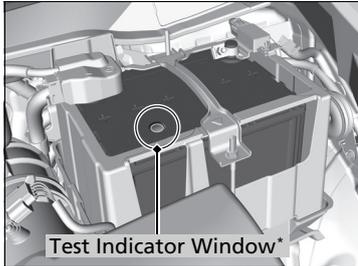
- Follow the chain manufacturer's instruction when installing. Mount them as tightly as you can.
- Check that the chains do not touch the brake lines or suspension.
- Drive slowly.

#### ☒ Snow Traction Devices

Use greater caution when driving with tyre chains on snow or ice. They may have less-predictable handling than good winter tyres without chains.

If your vehicle is equipped with summer tyres, be aware that these tyres are not designed for winter driving conditions. For more information, contact a dealer.

## Checking the Battery



### Models with test indicator window on the battery

Check the battery condition monthly. Look at the test indicator window and check the terminals for corrosion.

The battery condition is monitored by the sensor on the negative terminal. If there is a problem with the sensor, the warning message on driver information interface will let you know. Have your vehicle checked by a dealer.

### Models without test indicator window on the battery

The condition of the battery is monitored by a sensor located on the negative terminal of the battery. If there is a problem with this sensor, the driver information interface will display a warning message. If this happens, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

Check the battery terminals for corrosion monthly.

If your vehicle's battery is disconnected or goes dead:

- The clock resets.
  - **Clock** P. 146

\* Not available on all models

### ⌘ Battery

## ⚠ WARNING

The battery gives off explosive hydrogen gas during normal operation.

A spark or open flame can cause the battery to explode with enough force to kill or seriously hurt you.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

Wear protective clothing and a face shield, or have a skilled technician do any battery maintenance.

## ⚠ WARNING

The battery contains sulfuric acid (electrolyte) which is highly corrosive and poisonous.

Getting electrolyte in your eyes or on your skin can cause serious burns. Wear protective clothing and eye protection when working on or near the battery.

Swallowing electrolyte can cause fatal poisoning if immediate action is not taken.

**KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN**

## Charging the Battery

Disconnect both battery cables to prevent damaging your vehicle's electrical system. Always disconnect the negative ( - ) cable first, and reconnect it last.

### » Battery

#### Models with test indicator window on the battery

The test indicator's colour information is on the battery.

#### Emergency Procedures

**Eyes:** Flush with water from a cup or other container for at least 15 minutes. (Water under pressure can damage the eye.) Call a physician immediately.

**Skin:** Remove contaminated clothing. Flush the skin with large quantities of water. Call a physician immediately.

**Swallowing:** Drink water or milk. Call a physician immediately.

When you find corrosion, clean the battery terminals by applying a baking powder and water solution. Clean the terminals with a damp towel. Cloth/towel dry the battery. Coat the terminals with grease to help prevent future corrosion.

When replacing the battery, the replacement must be of the same specifications. Consult a dealer for more information.

#### Models with Auto Idle Stop

The battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop. Using a battery other than this specified type may shorten the battery life, and prevent Auto Idle Stop from activating. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type and size. Ask a dealer for more details.

➤ **Specifications** P. 572

## Battery Label



### ▶▶ Battery Label

#### **DANGER**

- Keep flames and sparks away from the battery. The battery produces explosive gas that can cause an explosion.
- Wear eye protection and rubber gloves when handling the battery to avoid risk of burns or loss of eyesight if exposed to battery electrolyte.
- Do not allow children to handle the battery, under any circumstance. Ensure that anyone handling the battery has a proper understanding of the hazards and correct handling procedures involved.
- Handle battery electrolyte with extreme care, as it contains dilute sulfuric acid. Exposure to eyes or skin can cause burns or loss of eyesight.
- Read this manual carefully, and understand it before handling the battery. Failure to do so can cause personal injury and damage to the vehicle.
- Do not use the battery if the level of electrolyte is at or below the recommended level. Using the battery with low electrolyte can cause it to explode, causing serious injury.

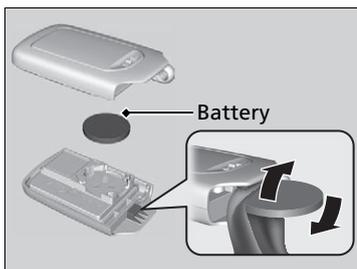
## Replacing the Button Battery

If the indicator does not come on when the button is pressed, replace the battery.



**Battery type: CR2032**

1. Remove the built-in key.
2. Remove the upper half by carefully prying on the edge with a coin.
  - ▶ Wrap a coin with a cloth to prevent scratching the keyless remote.
  - ▶ Remove carefully to avoid losing the buttons.
3. Make sure to replace the battery with the correct polarity.



### Replacing the Button Battery

## **WARNING**

### **CHEMICAL BURN HAZARD**

The battery that powers the remote transmitter can cause severe internal burns and can even lead to death if swallowed. Keep new and used batteries away from children.

If you suspect that a child has swallowed the battery, seek medical attention immediately.

### **NOTICE**

An improperly disposed of battery can damage the environment. Always confirm local regulations for battery disposal.

Replacement batteries are commercially available or at a dealer.

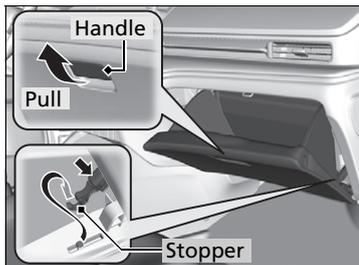
## Dust and Pollen Filter

### ■ When to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter

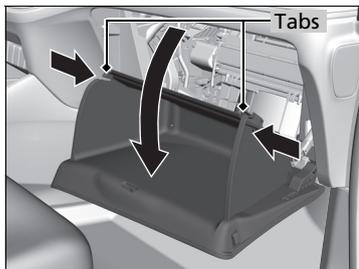
Replace the dust and pollen filter according to your vehicle's recommended maintenance schedule. It is recommended to replace the filter even sooner if the vehicle has been driven in a dusty environment.

➤ **Maintenance Schedule** P. 491

### ■ How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter



1. Open the glove box.
2. Push the stopper on the passenger's side of the glove box to detach it from the glove box.



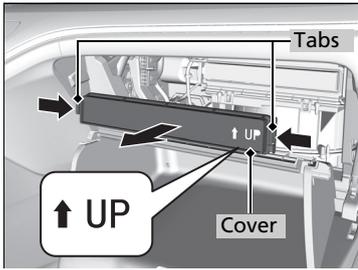
3. Push on the both side panels to disengage the two tabs.
4. Pivot the glove box out of the way.

### ☒ Dust and Pollen Filter

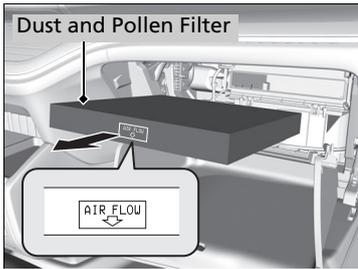
If the airflow from the climate control system deteriorates noticeably, and the windows fog up easily, the filter may need to be replaced.

The dust and pollen filter collects pollen, dust, and other debris in the air.

If you are not sure how to replace the dust and pollen filter, have it replaced by a dealer.



5. Push in the tabs on the corners of the filter case cover, and remove it.



6. Remove the filter from the case.

7. Install a new filter in the case.

► Put the **AIR FLOW** arrow directed side down.

## Interior Care

Use a vacuum cleaner to remove dust before using a cloth.

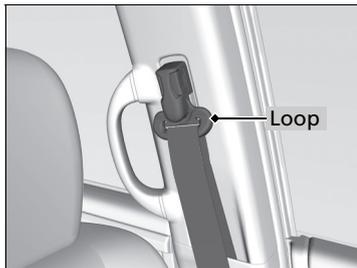
Use a damp cloth with a mixture of mild detergent and warm water to remove dirt.

Use a clean cloth to remove detergent residue.

### ■ Cleaning Seat Belts

Use a soft brush with a mixture of mild soap and warm water to clean the seat belts.

Let the belts air dry. Wipe the loops of the seat belt anchorages using a clean cloth.



### ▣ Interior Care

Do not spill liquids inside the vehicle. Electrical devices and systems may malfunction if liquids are splashed on them.

Do not use silicone based sprays on electrical devices such as audio devices and switches. Doing so may cause the items to malfunction or cause a fire inside the vehicle.

If a silicone based spray is inadvertently used on electrical devices, consult a dealer.

Depending on their composition, chemicals and liquid aromatics may cause discolouration, wrinkles, and cracking to resin-based parts and textiles. Do not use alkali solvents or organic solvents such as benzene or petrol.

After using chemicals, make sure to gently wipe them away using a dry cloth.

Do not place used cloths on top of resin based parts or textiles for long periods of time without washing.

Be careful not to spill a liquid type air freshener.

## ■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

Except Taiwanese models

## ■ Floor Mats (Optional)

The driver's floor mat hooks over the floor anchors, which keep the mat from sliding forward. When reinstalling the mat after cleaning, position it properly.

**Do not put additional floor mats on top of the anchored mats.**

## ■ Maintaining Genuine Leather

To properly clean leather:

1. Use a vacuum or soft dry cloth first to remove any dirt or dust.
2. Clean the leather with a soft cloth dampened with a solution comprised of 90% water and 10% neutral soap.
3. Wipe away any soap residue with a clean damp cloth.
4. Wipe away residual water and allow leather to air dry in the shade.

## ✎ Cleaning the Window

Wires and antenna line are mounted to the inside of the rear window and rear quarter window. Wipe along the same direction as the wires and antenna line with a soft cloth so as not to damage them.

### Models with front sensor camera

Be careful not to spill fluids, such as water or glass cleaner, on or around the cover of the front sensor camera.

➤ **Front Sensor Camera** P. 433

## ✎ Floor Mats (Optional)

If you use any floor mats that were not originally provided with your vehicle, make sure they are designed for your specific vehicle, fit correctly, and are securely anchored by the floor anchors. Position the rear seat floor mats properly. If not properly positioned, the floor mats can interfere with the front seat functions.

## ✎ Maintaining Genuine Leather

It is important to clean or wipe away dirt or dust as soon as possible. Spills can soak into leather resulting in stains. Dirt or dust can cause abrasions in the leather. In addition, please note that some dark coloured clothing can rub onto the leather seats resulting in discolouration or stains.

## Exterior Care

Dust off the vehicle body after you drive. Regularly inspect your vehicle for scratches on painted surfaces. A scratch on a painted surface can result in body rust. If you find a scratch, promptly repair it.

### ■ Washing the Vehicle

Wash the vehicle regularly. Wash more frequently when driving in the following conditions:

- If driving on roads with road salt.
- If driving in coastal areas.
- If tar, soot, bird droppings, insects, or tree sap are stuck to painted surfaces.

### ■ Using an Automated Car Wash

- Make sure to follow the instructions indicated on the automated car wash.
- Fold in the door mirrors.

### ■ Using High Pressure Cleaners

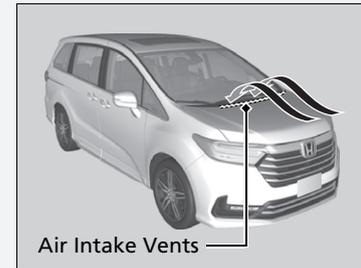
- Keep sufficient distance between the cleaning nozzle and the vehicle body.
- Take particular care around the windows. Standing too close may cause water to enter the vehicle interior.
- Do not spray high pressure water directly into the engine compartment. Instead, use low pressure water and a mild detergent.

### ■ Applying Wax

A good coat of automotive body wax helps to protect your vehicle's paint from the elements. Wax will wear off over time and expose your vehicle's paint to the elements, so reapply as necessary.

#### ▶▶ Washing the Vehicle

Do not spray water into the air intake vents. It can cause a malfunction.



#### ▶▶ Applying Wax

##### NOTICE

Chemical solvents and strong cleaners can damage the paint, metal, and plastic on your vehicle. Wipe away spills immediately.

## ■ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

If you get petrol, oil, engine coolant, or battery fluid on resin coated parts, they may be stained or the coating may peel. Promptly wipe it away using a soft cloth and clean water.

## ■ Cleaning the Window

Wipe using a glass cleaner.

### ■ Water repellent glass\*

The front side windows are fitted with water repellent agent glasses that disperse water into droplets. To clean the front side windows, wash off with water, or wipe with a soft damp cloth.

Using a glass cleaner may temporarily prevent the water repellent glasses from dispersing water. Rinsing the glasses with water can make them water repellent again. If you find that the glass has stopped dispersing water, consult a dealer.

## ■ Maintaining Aluminium Wheels

Aluminium is susceptible to deterioration caused by salt and other road contaminants. When necessary, as early as possible use a sponge and mild detergent to wipe away these contaminants. Do not use a stiff brush or harsh chemicals (including some commercial wheel cleaners). These can damage the protective finish on aluminium alloy wheels, resulting in corrosion. Depending on the type of finish, the wheels also may lose their lustre or appear burnished. To avoid water stains, wipe the wheels dry with a cloth while they are still wet.

## ✎ Maintaining the Bumpers and Other Resin Coated Parts

Ask a dealer about the correct coating material when you want to repair the painted surface of the parts made of resin.

## ✎ Cleaning the Window

### Models with water repellent glass

To make the water-repellent effect last longer, do the following:

- Avoid opening and closing the front side windows when the windows are covered with dirt.
- Avoid using a glass cleaner with polishing compounds, wax, or detergent.
- Avoid scraping off frosts on the windows using a metallic tool.
- Dirt off the windows before using an automated car wash.

## ■ Fogged Exterior Light Lenses

The inside lenses of exterior lights (headlights, brake lights, etc.) may fog temporarily if you have driven in the rain, or after the vehicle has been run through a car wash. Dew condensation also may build up inside the lenses when there is a significant enough difference between the ambient and inside lens temperatures (similar to vehicle windows fogging up in rainy conditions). These conditions are natural processes, not structural design problems in the exterior lights.

Lens design characteristics may result in moisture developing on the light lens frame surfaces. This also is not a malfunction.

However, if you see large amounts of water accumulation, or large water drops building up inside the lenses, have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

## ■ Hydrophilic Mirror\*

Your vehicle's door mirror surface is coated with hydrophilic film. Follow the next steps when the mirrors become less hydrophilic.

1. Rinse the door mirrors with water and remove dirt.
2. Wipe the mirrors with a clean damp cloth.
  - ▶ If you cannot remove dirt, use the genuine window cleaner, or neutral household detergent, and rinse with enough water.
3. Expose the mirrors to the sun for five to nine hours.

### ⌘ Hydrophilic Mirror\*

#### NOTICE

To keep the hydrophilicity of the mirrors,

- Do not apply wax or water repellent agent on the mirror surface.
- Do not wipe the mirrors with a gritty cloth or abrasive cleanser.

\* Not available on all models

## Accessories

When installing accessories, check the following:

- Do not install accessories on the windshield. They can obstruct your view and delay your reaction to driving conditions.
- Do not install any accessories over areas marked SRS Airbag, on the sides or backs of the front seats, on front or side pillars, or near the side windows. Accessories installed in these areas may interfere with proper operation of the vehicle's airbags or may be propelled into you or another occupant if the airbags deploy.
- Be sure electronic accessories do not overload electrical circuits or interfere with proper operation of your vehicle.
  - **Fuses** P. 559
- Before installing any electronic accessory, have the installer contact a dealer for assistance. If possible, have a dealer inspect the final installation.

### Accessories and Modifications

## **WARNING**

**Improper accessories or modifications can affect your vehicle's handling, stability, and performance, and cause a crash in which you can be seriously hurt or killed.**

**Follow all instructions in this owner's manual regarding accessories and modifications.**

When properly installed, mobile phones, alarms, two-way radios, radio antennas, and low-powered audio systems should not interfere with your vehicle's computer controlled systems, such as your airbags and anti-lock brakes.

Honda Genuine accessories are recommended to ensure proper operation on your vehicle.

## Modifications

---

Do not modify your vehicle in a manner that may affect its handling, stability, or reliability, or install non-genuine Honda parts or accessories that may have a similar effect.

Even minor modifications to vehicle systems can affect overall vehicle performance. Always make sure all equipment is properly installed and maintained, and do not make any modification to your vehicle or its systems that might cause your vehicle to no longer meet your country's and local regulations.

The on-board diagnostic port (OBD-II/SAE J1962 connector) installed on this vehicle is intended to be used with automobile system diagnostic devices or with other devices that Honda has approved. Use of any other type of device may adversely affect the vehicle's electronic systems or allow them to be compromised, possibly resulting in a system malfunction, drained battery, or other unexpected problems.

Do not modify or attempt to repair any of the electrical components.



# Handling the Unexpected

This chapter explains how to handle unexpected troubles.



## Tools

Types of Tools..... 534

## If a Tyre Goes Flat

Changing a Flat Tyre ..... 535

## Engine Does Not Start

Checking the Engine ..... 544

If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak ... 546

Emergency Engine Stop ..... 547

## If the Battery Is Dead

Jump Starting Procedure ..... 548

## Shift Lever Does Not Move

..... 550

## Overheating

How to Handle Overheating..... 551

## Indicator, Coming On/Blinking

If the Charging System Indicator Comes

On ..... 554

If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes

On or Blinks ..... 554

If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes

On ..... 555

If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System

Indicator Comes On..... 555

### Oceanian models

If the Deflation Warning System Indicator

Comes On or Blinks ..... 556

### Taiwanese models

If the Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator

Comes On or Blinks ..... 557

### Middle Eastern models

If the Deflation Warning System Indicator

Comes On or Blinks ..... 558

## Fuses

Fuse Locations ..... 559

Inspecting and Changing Fuses..... 566

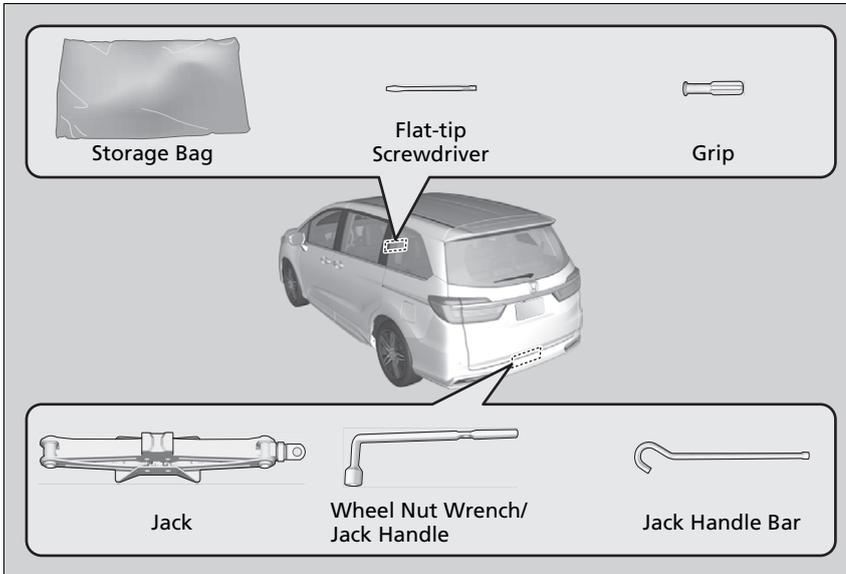
## Emergency Towing..... 567

## If You Cannot Open the Tailgate .... 569

## Types of Tools

### Types of Tools

The tools are stored in the luggage area and the glove box.



## Changing a Flat Tyre

If a tyre goes flat while driving, grasp the steering wheel firmly, and brake gradually to reduce speed. Then, stop in a safe place. Replace the flat tyre with a compact spare tyre. Go to a dealer as soon as possible to have the full-size tyre repaired or replaced.

1. Park the vehicle on a firm, level, non-slippery surface and apply the parking brake.
2. Put the transmission into **P**.
3. Turn on the hazard warning lights and set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK).

### ✘ Changing a Flat Tyre

Follow compact spare precautions:  
Periodically check the tyre pressure of the compact spare. It should be set to the specified pressure.  
Specified Pressure: 420 kPa (4.2 bar, 60 psi)

When driving with the compact spare tyre, keep the vehicle speed under 80 km/h. Replace with a full-size tyre as soon as possible.

The compact spare tyre and wheel in your vehicle are specifically for this model. Do not use them with another vehicle. Do not use another type of compact spare tyre or wheel with your vehicle.

Do not mount tyre chains on a compact spare tyre. If a chain-mounted front tyre goes flat, remove one of the full-size rear tyres and replace it with the compact spare tyre. Remove the flat front tyre and replace it with the full-size tyre that was removed from the rear. Mount the tyre chains on the front tyre.

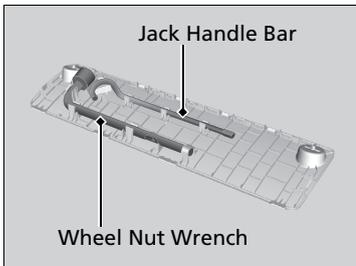
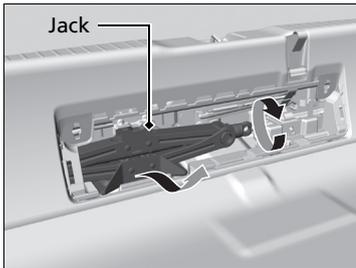
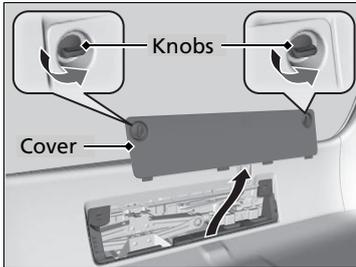
A compact spare tyre gives a harsher ride and less traction on some road surfaces. Use greater caution while driving.

Do not use more than one compact spare tyre at the same time.

Do not use the compact spare tyre if you are towing a trailer\*.

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Getting Ready to Replace the Flat Tyre



1. Open the tailgate.
2. Remove the cover by rotating the knob anti-clockwise.
3. Turn the jack's end bracket anti-clockwise to loosen it, then remove the jack.
4. Remove the wheel nut wrench and jack handle bar from the cover.

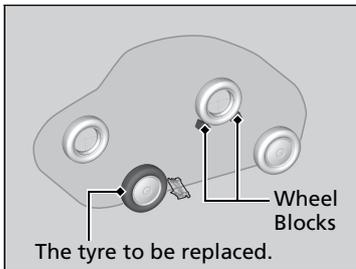
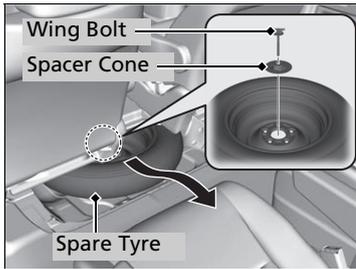
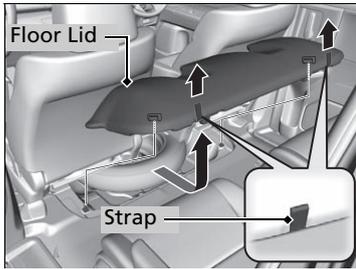
## ✎ Changing a Flat Tyre

The compact spare tyre is smaller than the regular tyre. Your vehicle's ground clearance reduces when the compact spare tyre is installed. Driving over road debris or bumps could possibly damage the underside of your vehicle.

**WARNING:** The jack can only be used for helping an emergency vehicle breakdown, not for changing the regular seasonal tyre or any other normal maintenance or repair operation.

### NOTICE

Do not use the jack if it doesn't work properly. Call your dealer or a professional towing service.



5. Move the front seats forward.

► **Adjusting the front power seat(s)\***

P. 211

► **Adjusting the front manual seat(s)\***

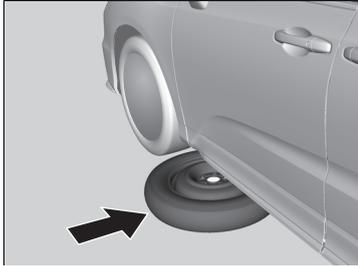
P. 212

6. Remove the floor lid by pulling up the straps.

7. Unscrew the wing bolt and spacer cone, then remove the spare tyre.

8. Place a wheel block or rock in front and rear of the wheel diagonal to the flat tyre.

\* Not available on all models

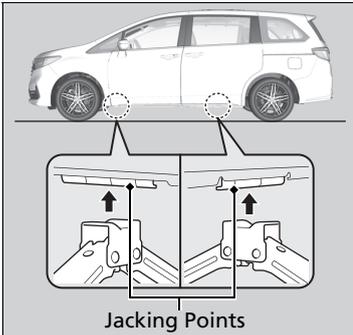


**9.** Place the compact spare tyre (wheel side up) under the vehicle body, near the tyre that needs to be replaced.



**10.** Loosen each wheel nut about one turn using the wheel nut wrench.

## How to Set Up the Jack



1. Place the jack under the jacking point closest to the tyre to be changed.

2. Turn the end bracket clockwise as shown in the image clockwise until the top of the jack contacts the jacking point.

▶ Make sure that the jacking point tab is resting in the jack notch.



### How to Set Up the Jack

## ⚠ WARNING

The vehicle can easily roll off the jack, seriously injuring anyone underneath.

Follow the directions for changing a tyre exactly, and no person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.

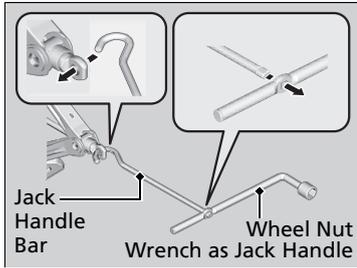
**WARNING:** The jack shall be placed on a flat and stable surface on the same level as the vehicle is parked.

### Australian and New Zealand models

The jack that came with your vehicle has the following label.

1.	2.	3.

1. See Owner's Manual.
2. Never get under vehicle when supported by jack.
3. Place jack underneath reinforced area.



3. Raise the vehicle, using the jack handle bar and the jack handle, until the tyre is off the ground.

#### How to Set Up the Jack

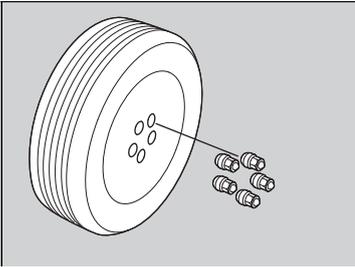
Do not use the jack with people or luggage in the vehicle.

Use the jack provided in your vehicle. Other jacks may not support the weight ("load") or may not fit the jacking point.

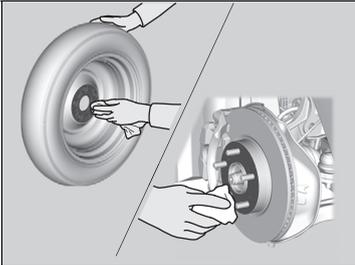
The following instructions must be followed to use the jack safely:

- Do not use while the engine is running.
- Use only where the ground is firm and level.
- Use only at the jacking points.
- Do not get in the vehicle while using the jack.
- Do not put anything on top of or underneath the jack.

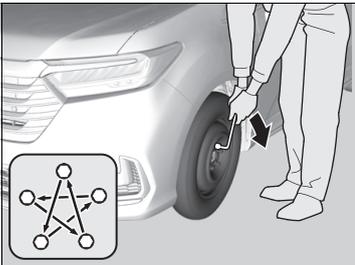
## ■ Replacing the Flat Tyre



1. Remove the wheel nuts and flat tyre.



2. Wipe the mounting surfaces of the wheel with a clean cloth.
3. Mount the compact spare tyre.
4. Screw the wheel nuts until they touch the lips around the mounting holes, then stop rotating.



5. Lower the vehicle and remove the jack. Tighten the wheel nuts in the order indicated in the image. Go around, tightening the nuts, two to three times in this order.

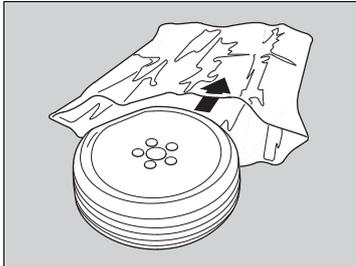
### Wheel nut torque:

108 N·m (11 kgf·m, 80 lbf·ft)

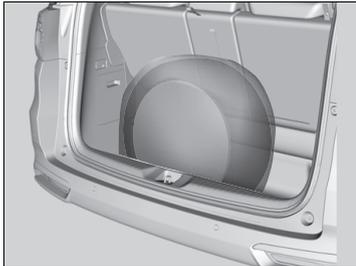
## ▣ Replacing the Flat Tyre

Do not over tighten the wheel nuts by applying extra torque using your foot or a pipe.

## ■ Storing the Flat Tyre



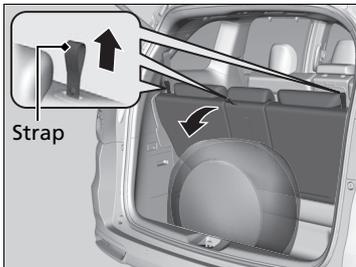
1. Take the storage bag out of the glove box.
2. Put the flat tyre into the storage bag.



3. If the third row seats are tucked away, return them to the upright position.

### ► Tucking Away the Third Row Seats P. 221

4. Securely store the jack, wheel nut wrench, and jack handle bar back in the luggage area.
5. Place the flat tyre behind the third row seat-back.



6. Pull up the third row seat-back's reclining strap and let the seat-back recline until its back touches the top of the flat tyre.
  - Make sure that the seat-back is latched in a locked position. The tyre is secured.

## ►► Storing the Flat Tyre

### ⚠ WARNING

Loose items can fly around the interior in a crash and can seriously injure the occupants.  
Store the wheel, jack, and tools securely before driving.

**Oceanian and Middle Eastern models****■ Deflation Warning System and the Compact Spare Tyre**

If you replace a flat tyre with the spare tyre, the  indicator comes on while you are driving. After driving for a few kilometres, the indicator will start blinking for a short time and then stay on; however, this is normal and is no cause for concern.

Initialize the deflation warning system when you replace the tyre with a specified regular tyre.

**Oceanian models**

➤ **Deflation Warning System Initialisation** P. 384

**Middle Eastern models**

➤ **Deflation Warning System Initialisation** P. 388

**Taiwanese models****■ TPMS and the Compact Spare Tyre**

If you replace a flat tyre with the spare tyre, the  indicator comes on while you are driving. After driving for a few kilometres, the indicator will start blinking for a short time and then stay on; however, this is normal and is no cause for concern.

Initialise the TPMS when you replace the tyre with a specified regular tyre.

➤ **TPMS Initialisation** P. 391

## Checking the Engine

If the engine does not start, check the starter.

### ☞ Checking the Engine

If you must start the vehicle immediately, use an assisting vehicle or booster battery to jump start it.

☞ **If the Battery Is Dead** P. 548

Do not hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for more than 15 seconds.

### Starter condition

### Checklist

#### **Starter doesn't turn or turns over slowly.**

The battery may be dead. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.

#### **Check for a message on the driver information interface.**

- If the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears
  - ☞ **If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak** P. 546
- ▶ Make sure the keyless remote is in its operating range.
  - ☞ **ENGINE START/STOP Button Operating Range** P. 189

#### **Check the brightness of the interior lights.**

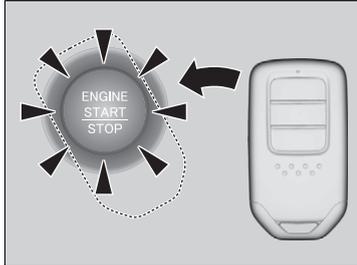
Turn on the interior lights and check the brightness.

- If the interior lights are dim or do not come on at all
  - ☞ **Battery** P. 519
- If the interior lights come on normally ☞ **Fuses** P. 559

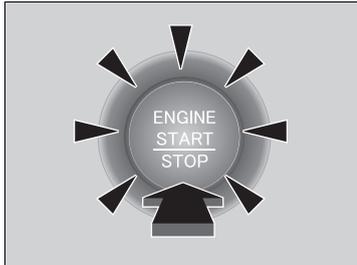
Starter condition	Checklist
<p><b>The starter turns over normally but the engine doesn't start.</b> There may be a problem with a fuse. Check each of the items on the right and respond accordingly.</p>	<p><b>Review the engine start procedure.</b> Follow its instructions, and try to start the engine again. ➤ <b>Starting the Engine</b> P. 361</p> <p><b>Check the immobilizer system indicator.</b> When the immobilizer system indicator is blinking, the engine cannot be started. ➤ <b>Immobilizer System</b> P. 182</p> <p><b>Check the fuel level.</b> There should be enough fuel in the tank. ➤ <b>Fuel Gauge</b> P. 133</p> <p><b>Check the fuses.</b> Check all fuses, or have the vehicle checked by a dealer. ➤ <b>Inspecting and Changing Fuses</b> P. 566</p>
	<p><b>If the problem continues:</b> ➤ <b>Emergency Towing</b> P. 567</p>

## If the Keyless Remote Battery is Weak

If the beeper sounds, the **To Start, Hold Remote Near Start Button** message appears on the driver information interface, the indicator on the **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes, and the engine won't start, start the engine as follows:



1. Touch the centre of the **ENGINE START/STOP** button with the H logo on the keyless remote while the **ENGINE START/STOP** button is flashing. The buttons on the keyless remote should be facing you.
  - ▶ The **ENGINE START/STOP** button flashes for about 30 seconds.



2. Depress the brake pedal and press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button within 10 seconds after the beeper sounds and the **ENGINE START/STOP** button changes from flashing to on.
  - ▶ If you don't depress the pedal, the mode will change to **ACCESSORY**.

## Emergency Engine Stop

The **ENGINE START/STOP** button may be used to stop the engine due to an emergency situation even while driving. If you must stop the engine, do either of the following operations:

- Press and hold the **ENGINE START/STOP** button for about two seconds.
- Firmly press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button three times.

The steering wheel will not lock.

The power mode is in ACCESSORY when the engine is stopped.

To change the mode to VEHICLE OFF, move the shift lever to **[P]** after the vehicle comes to a complete stop. Then press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button twice without depressing the brake pedal.

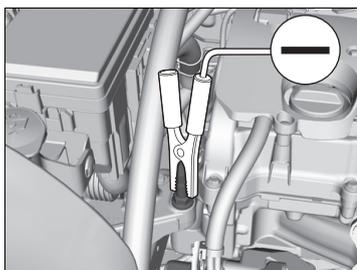
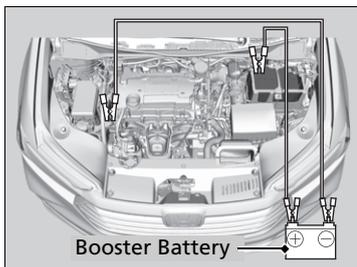
### ⚠ Emergency Engine Stop

Do not press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving unless it is absolutely necessary for the engine to be turned off.

If you press the **ENGINE START/STOP** button while driving, the beeper sounds.

## Jump Starting Procedure

Turn off the power to electric devices, such as audio and lights. Turn off the engine, then open the bonnet.



1. Connect the first jumper cable to your vehicle's battery ⊕ terminal.
2. Connect the other end of the first jumper cable to the booster battery ⊕ terminal.
  - ▶ Use a 12-volt booster battery only.
  - ▶ When using an automotive battery charger to boost your 12-volt battery, select a lower charging voltage than 15-volt. Check the charger manual for the proper setting.
3. Connect the second jumper cable to the booster battery ⊖ terminal.
4. Connect the other end of the second jumper cable to the engine mounting bolt as shown. Do not connect this jumper cable to any other part.
5. If your vehicle is connected to another vehicle, start the booster battery engine and increase its rpm slightly.
6. Attempt to start your vehicle's engine. If it turns over slowly, check that the jumper cables have good metal-to-metal contact.

### ⓘ If the Battery Is Dead

## ⚠ WARNING

A battery can explode if you do not follow the correct procedure, seriously injuring anyone nearby.

Keep all sparks, open flames, and smoking materials away from the battery.

### NOTICE

If a battery sits in extreme cold, the electrolyte inside can freeze. Attempting to jump start with a frozen battery can cause it to rupture.

Securely attach the jumper cables clips so that they do not come off when the engine vibrates. Also be careful not to tangle the jumper cables or allow the cable ends to touch each other while attaching or detaching the jumper cables.

Battery performance degrades in cold conditions and may prevent the engine from starting.

## ■ What to Do After the Engine Starts

Once your vehicle's engine has started, remove the jumper cables in the following order.

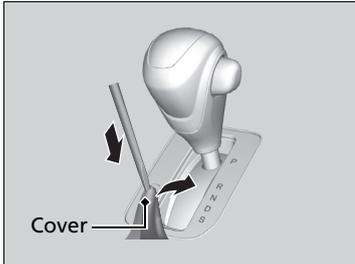
1. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's ground.
2. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery  $\ominus$  terminal.
3. Disconnect the jumper cable from your vehicle's battery  $\oplus$  terminal.
4. Disconnect the other end of the jumper cable from the booster battery  $\oplus$  terminal.

Have your vehicle inspected by a nearby service station or a dealer.

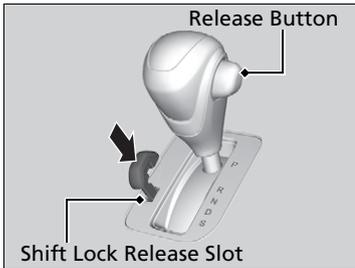
# Shift Lever Does Not Move

Follow the procedure below if you cannot move the shift lever out of the **P** position.

## Releasing the Lock



1. Set the parking brake.
2. Remove the built-in key from the keyless remote.
3. Wrap a cloth around the tip of a small flat-tip screwdriver. Put it into the shift lock release slot as shown in the image, and remove the cover.



4. Insert the key into the shift lock release slot.
5. While pushing the key down, press the shift lever release button, and place the shift lever into **N**.
  - ▶ The lock is now released. Have the shift lever checked by a dealer as soon as possible.

## How to Handle Overheating

Overheating symptoms are as follows:

- The temperature gauge pointer is at the **H** mark or the engine suddenly loses power.
- **Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot** message on the driver information interface.
- Steam or spray comes out of the engine compartment.

### ■ First thing to do

1. Immediately park the vehicle in a safe place.
2. Turn off all accessories and turn on the hazard warning lights.
  - ▶ **No steam or spray present:** Keep the engine running and open the bonnet.
  - ▶ **Steam or spray is present:** Turn off the engine and wait until it subsides. Then open the bonnet.

### How to Handle Overheating

## ⚠ WARNING

Steam and spray from an overheated engine can seriously scald you.

Do not open the bonnet if steam is coming out.

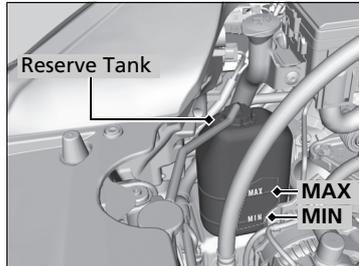
### NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the temperature gauge pointer coming up may damage the engine.

### NOTICE

Continuing to drive with the **Stop Driving When Safe. Engine Temperature Too Hot** message on the driver information interface may damage the engine.

### ■ Next thing to do



1. Check that the cooling fan is operating and stop the engine once the temperature gauge pointer goes down.
  - If the cooling fan is not operating, immediately stop the engine.
2. Once the engine has cooled down, inspect the coolant level and check the cooling system components for leaks.
  - If the coolant level in the reserve tank is low, add coolant until it reaches the **MAX** mark.
  - If there is no coolant in the reserve tank, check that the radiator is cool. Cover the radiator cap with a heavy cloth and open the cap. If necessary, add coolant up to the base of the filler neck, and put the cap back on.

### ■ Last thing to do

Once the engine has cooled sufficiently, restart it and check the temperature gauge. If the temperature gauge pointer has gone down, resume driving. If it has not gone down, contact a dealer for repairs.

#### ► How to Handle Overheating

## ⚠ WARNING

Removing the radiator cap while the engine is hot can cause the coolant to spray out, seriously scalding you.

Always let the engine and radiator cool down before removing the radiator cap.

If the coolant is leaking, contact a dealer for repairs.

Use water as an emergency/temporary measure only. Have a dealer flush the system with proper antifreeze as soon as possible.

## If the Low Oil Pressure Warning Appears



Oil Pressure Low

### ■ Reasons for the warning to appear

Appears when the engine oil pressure is low.

### ■ What to do as soon as the warning appears

1. Immediately park the vehicle on level ground in a safe place.
2. If necessary, turn the hazard warning lights on.

### ■ What to do after parking the vehicle

1. Stop the engine and let it sit for approximately three minutes.
2. Open the bonnet and check the oil level.
  - **Oil Check** P. 498
3. Start the engine and check the low oil pressure warning.
  - ▶ The warning disappears: Start driving again.
  - ▶ The warning does not disappear within 10 seconds: Immediately stop the engine and contact a dealer for repairs.

### ☒ If the Low Oil Pressure Warning Appears

#### NOTICE

Running the engine with low oil pressure can cause serious mechanical damage almost immediately.

## If the Charging System Indicator Comes On



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

Comes on when the battery is not being charged.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Stop in a safe place and have your vehicle checked by a dealer immediately.

## If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks



### ■ Reasons for the indicator lamp to come on or blink

- Comes on when there is a problem with the engine emissions control system.
- Blinks when engine misfiring is detected.

### ■ What to do when the indicator lamp comes on

Avoid high speeds and immediately get your vehicle inspected at a dealer.

### ■ What to do when the indicator lamp blinks

Park the vehicle in a safe place with no flammable items and wait at least 10 minutes or more with the engine stopped until it cools.

### ⓘ If the Charging System Indicator Comes On

If you need to stop temporarily, do not turn off the engine. Restarting the engine may rapidly discharge the battery.

### ⓘ If the Malfunction Indicator Lamp Comes On or Blinks

#### NOTICE

If you drive with the malfunction indicator lamp on, the emissions control system and the engine could be damaged.

If the malfunction indicator lamp blinks again when restarting the engine, drive to the nearest dealer at 50 km/h or less. Have your vehicle inspected.

## If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On



(Red)

### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- The brake fluid is low.
- There is a malfunction in the brake system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on while driving

Depress the brake pedal lightly to check pedal pressure.

- If normal, check the brake fluid level the next time you stop.
- If abnormal, take immediate action. If necessary, downshift the transmission to slow the vehicle using engine braking.

## If the Electric Power Steering (EPS) System Indicator Comes On



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on

- Comes on when there is a problem with the EPS system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Stop the vehicle in a safe place and restart the engine.

If the indicator comes on and stays on, immediately have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.

### ▶▶ If the Brake System Indicator (Red) Comes On

Have your vehicle repaired immediately.

It is dangerous to drive with low brake fluid. If there is no resistance from the brake pedal, stop immediately in a safe place. If necessary downshift the gears.

If the brake system indicator (red) and **ABS** indicator come on simultaneously, the electronic brake distribution system is not working. This can result in vehicle instability under sudden braking. Have your vehicle inspected by a dealer immediately.

Oceanian models

## If the Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink

A tyre pressure may be low. If there is a problem with the deflation warning system, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stays on.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Check which tyre has lost the pressure. If you find a flat tyre, replace with the compact spare.

#### 🔧 If a Tyre Goes Flat P. 535

If the compact spare tyre causes the indicator to come on, change the tyre to a full-size tyre. The indicator goes off after Initialising the deflation warning system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on

Have the system inspected by a dealer as soon as possible.

## ▶▶ If the Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks

### NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

## Taiwanese models

## If the Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the TPMS has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the TPMS or the compact spare tyre is installed, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stay on. If the compact spare tyre is installed, the indicator will either come on or it will first blink for about one minute, then stay on.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking. Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

▶ Initialise the TPMS after the tyre pressure is adjusted.

➤ **TPMS Initialisation** P. 391

If the compact spare tyre causes the indicator to come on, change the tyre to a full-size tyre. The indicator goes off after Initialising the TPMS.

### ■ What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on

Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible. If the compact spare tyre causes the indicator to blink, and then stay on, change the tyre to a full-size tyre.

The indicator goes off after calibrating the TPMS.

➤ **TPMS Initialisation** P. 391

## ▶▶ If the Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS Indicator Comes On or Blinks

### NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

Middle Eastern models

## If the Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks



### ■ Reasons for the indicator to come on or blink

A tyre pressure is significantly low, or the deflation warning system has not been calibrated. If there is a problem with the deflation warning system or the compact spare tyre is installed, the indicator blinks for about one minute, and then stay on.

If the compact spare tyre is installed, the indicator will either come on or it will first blink for about one minute, then stay on.

### ■ What to do when the indicator comes on

Drive carefully and avoid abrupt cornering and hard braking.

Stop your vehicle in a safe place. Check the tyre pressure and adjust the pressure to the specified level. The specified tyre pressure is on a label on the driver side doorjamb.

- ▶ Initialise the deflation warning system after the tyre pressure is adjusted.

#### 🔧 Deflation Warning System Initialisation P. 388

If the compact spare tyre causes the indicator to come on, change the tyre to a full-size tyre. The indicator goes off after Initialising the deflation warning system.

### ■ What to do when the indicator blinks, then remains on

Have the tyre inspected by a dealer as soon as possible. If the compact spare tyre causes the indicator to blink, and then stay on, change the tyre to a full-size tyre.

The indicator goes off after calibrating the deflation warning system.

- 🔧 Deflation Warning System Initialisation P. 388

## ▶▶ If the Deflation Warning System Indicator Comes On or Blinks

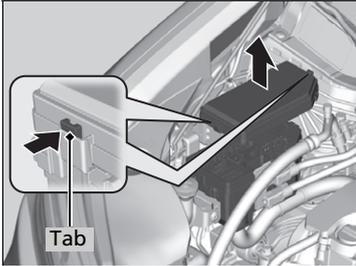
### NOTICE

Driving on an extremely underinflated tyre can cause it to overheat. An overheated tyre can fail. Always inflate your tyres to the prescribed level.

## Fuse Locations

If any electrical devices are not working, set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK) and check to see if any applicable fuse is blown.

### ■ Engine Compartment Fuse Box



Located near the windshield washer reservoir.  
Push the tabs to open the box.

Fuse locations are shown on the fuse box cover.  
Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and box cover number.

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

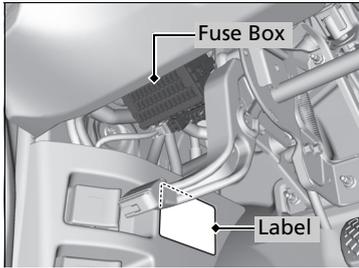
	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	 EPS	70 A
	 Rear Fuse Box*	(70 A)
	 ABS/VSA MOTOR	30 A
	 ABS/VSA FSR	40 A
	 ST Magnetic Switch	30 A
	 Main Fuse	120 A
	 Ignition Main	30 A
	 Fuse Box Main 1	60 A
	 Fuse Box Main 2	60 A
	 Rear Blower	40 A
2	 Ignition Main 2	30 A
	 Rear Demister	40 A
	 Driver/Passenger* Side Power Sliding Door Motor	(40 A)
	 Heater Motor	40 A
	 Front Wiper	30 A
	 Fuse Box Main 3	30 A
	 Main Fan Motor	30 A

	Circuit Protected	Amps
3	 DC/DC 2	30 A
	 DC/DC 1	30 A
	–	(30 A)
	 Sub Fan Motor	30 A
4	 IGPS	7.5 A
5	 ST RLY1	7.5 A
6	–	–
7	–	–
8	–	–
9	–	–
10	–	–
11	 Backup 2	30 A
12	 Driver/Passenger* Side Power Sliding Door Closer	(20 A)
13	 R LCM	10 A
14	 Hazard	10 A
15	 VBU (FI-ECU)	10 A
16	 Ignition Coil	15 A
17	 Stop	10 A
18	 L LCM	10 A
19	 TCU	(15 A)

	Circuit Protected	Amps
20	 Right Headlight Low Beam	10 A
21	 IGP	15 A
22	 DBW	15 A
23	 Left Headlight Low Beam	10 A
24	 Horn	10 A
25	 MG Clutch	7.5 A
26	 Front Fog Lights	(10 A)
27	 Small	20 A
28	 Interior Lights	7.5 A
29	 Backup	10 A

Handling the Unexpected

## ■ Interior Fuse Box (Driver Side)



Located under the dashboard.

Fuse locations are shown on the label on the side panel.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

	Circuit Protected	Amps
1	A/C	7.5 A
2	Daytime Running Lights*	(7.5 A)
3	–	–
4	Rear Wiper	10 A
5	Option 1/Meter	7.5 A
6	Starter Motor	7.5 A
7	Option	7.5 A
8	VB SOL	10 A
9	Fuel Pump	15 A
10	ABS/VSA RLY/ABS/VSA	7.5 A
11	–	–
12	Front Wiper	7.5 A
13	ACG	10 A
14	Accessory Power Socket (Console)	20 A
15	Driver's Power Seat (Reclining)*	(20 A)
16	Sunroof*	(20 A)
17	<sup>–*1</sup> Seat Heaters*	<sup>–*1</sup> (20 A)* <sup>2</sup>

	Circuit Protected	Amps
18	<sup>*1</sup> Rear Fog Lights* <sub>–*2</sub>	(7.5 A)* <sup>1</sup> <sub>–*2</sub>
19	Right Side Door Unlock	10 A
20	Left Side Door Unlock	10 A
21	–	–
22	Right Side Door Lock	10 A
23	–	–
24	SRS	10 A
25	Illumination	10 A
26	ACC Key Lock	7.5 A
27	SMALL	10 A* <sup>1</sup> 7.5 A* <sup>2</sup>
28	Active Cornering Lights	10 A
29	Right Headlight High Beam	10 A
30	Washer	15 A
31	SMART	10 A
32	Driver's Power Window	20 A
33	Passenger's Power Window	20 A
34	Rear Left Side Power Window	20 A

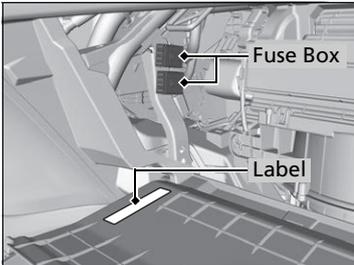
	Circuit Protected	Amps
35	Rear Right Side Power Window	20 A
36	Driver's Power Seat (Sliding)*	(20 A)
37	ACCESSORY	7.5 A
38	–	–
39	Left Headlight High Beam	10 A
40	Front Accessory Power Socket	20 A
41	Left Side Door Lock	10 A
42	Door Lock	20 A
1	Fuel Pump	7.5 A
2	–	–
1	L LCM VBU	7.5 A
2	R LCM VBU	7.5 A
3	Audio Sub	7.5 A
4	IGPS (RAD Fan Motor)	7.5 A

\*1:Left-hand drive type

\*2:Right-hand drive type

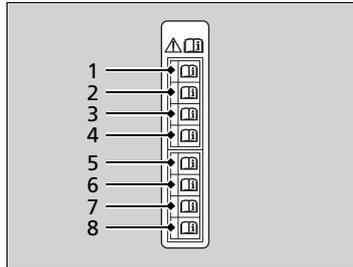
## ■ Interior Fuse Box (Passenger Side)

Located near the dust and pollen filter.



Detach the glove box lid.

### ■ How to Replace the Dust and Pollen Filter P. 523



Fuse locations are shown on the label on the back of the glove box. Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

## ■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Headlight Main	15 A
2		Electrical Oil Pump*	(10 A)
3		Ignition	7.5 A
4		Backup 2 Main	10 A
5		ACC	7.5 A
6		Audio	15 A
7		MICU	7.5 A
8		ABS/SA	7.5 A

\* Not available on all models

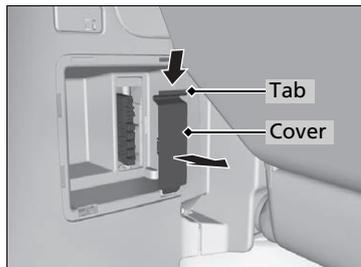
## ■ Rear Fuse Box \*

Located on the left side of luggage area.

1. Remove the lid.

### ▣ Luggage Area Storage Compartment

P. 236

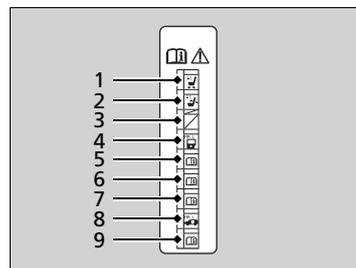


2. Remove the cover by pushing on the tab.

Fuse locations are shown on the label on the cover.

Locate the fuse in question by the fuse number and label number.

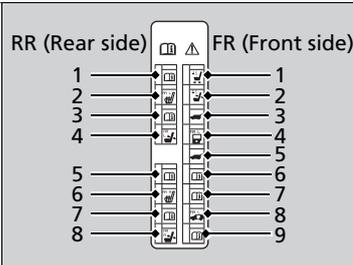
### Models without power tailgate with kicksensor



### ■ Circuit protected and fuse rating

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1	AS	Passenger's Power Seat (Sliding)*	(20 A)
2	AS	Passenger's Power Seat (Reclining)*	(20 A)
3	—	—	—
4	RRL	Left Side Power Sliding Door Closer*	(20 A)
5	i	—	(40 A)
6	i	—	(30 A)
7	i	—	(30 A)
8	RRL	Left Side Power Sliding Door*	(40 A)
9	i	—	(30 A)

Models with power tailgate with kicksensor



RR (Rear side)  
Not in use.

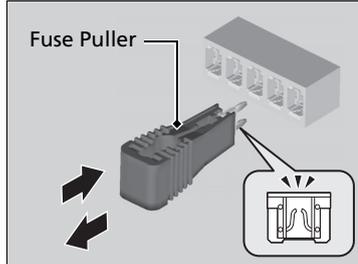
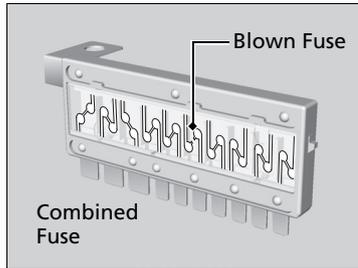
■ **Circuit protected and fuse rating**

FR (Front side)

		Circuit Protected	Amps
1		Passenger's Power Seat (Sliding)*	(20 A)
2		Passenger's Power Seat (Reclining)*	(20 A)
3		Power Tailgate Closer	(20 A)
4		Left Side Power Sliding Door Closer*	(20 A)
5		Power Tailgate	(40 A)
6		–	(30 A)
7		–	(30 A)
8		Left Side Power Sliding Door*	(40 A)
9		–	(30 A)

\* Not available on all models

## Inspecting and Changing Fuses



1. Set the power mode to VEHICLE OFF (LOCK). Turn headlights and all accessories off.
2. Remove the fuse box cover.
3. Check the large fuse in the engine compartment.
  - If the fuse is blown, use a Phillips-head screwdriver to remove the screw and replace it with a new one.
4. Inspect the small fuses in the engine compartment and the vehicle interior.
  - If there is a blown fuse, remove it with the fuse puller and replace it with a new one.

### ► Inspecting and Changing Fuses

#### NOTICE

Replacing a fuse with one that has a higher rating greatly increases the chances of damaging the electrical system.

Use the charts to locate the fuse in question and confirm the specified amperage on the fuse label.

► **Fuse Locations P. 559**

Replace fuse with a spare fuse of the same specified amperage.

There is a fuse puller on the back of the engine compartment fuse box cover.

Call a professional towing service if you need to tow your vehicle.

## ■ Flat bed equipment

The operator loads your vehicle on the back of a truck.

**This is the best way to transport your vehicle.**

## ■ Wheel lift equipment

The tow truck uses two pivoting arms that go under the front tyres and lift them off the ground. The rear tyres remain on the ground. **This is an acceptable way to tow your vehicle.**

### » Emergency Towing

#### NOTICE

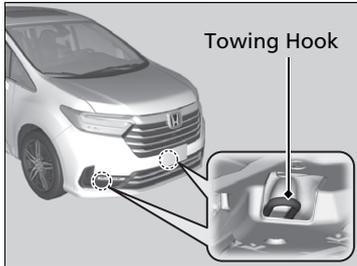
Trying to lift or tow your vehicle by the bumpers will cause serious damage. The bumpers are not designed to support the vehicle's weight.

#### NOTICE

Improper towing such as towing behind a motorhome or other motor vehicle can damage the transmission.

Never tow your vehicle with just a rope or chain. It is very dangerous since ropes or chains may shift from side to side or break.

■ If your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground:



1. Check the ground underneath the vehicle around where the transmission housing is for a fluid leak.
  - ▶ If you find a leak, call a professional towing service and have your vehicle inspected by a dealer.
2. Hook the towing device to the towing hook.
3. Start the engine.
4. Depress the brake pedal.
5. Shift to **[D]** and hold for five seconds, then to **[N]**.
6. Release the parking brake.

☒ If your vehicle must be towed with the front wheels on the ground:

**NOTICE**

If you cannot shift the transmission or turn on the engine, will damage the transmission. Your vehicle must be transported with the front wheels off the ground.

Towing a vehicle is prohibited by law in some countries.

Check and follow the legal requirements of the country you are driving before towing your vehicle.

If you cannot follow the exact procedure, do not tow your vehicle with the front wheels on the ground.

If you cannot turn on the engine, you may experience the following while your vehicle is being towed.

- Check that the steering wheel is not locked.
- Braking may become difficult since the brake system's power assist is disabled.
- Steering wheel becomes heavy as the power steering system is disabled.

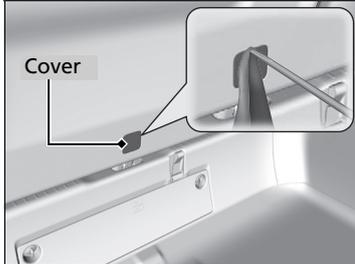
Going down a long slope heats up the brakes. This may prevent the brakes from working properly. If your vehicle needs to be towed on an incline, call a professional towing service.

With the front wheels on the ground, it is best to tow the vehicle no farther than 80 km, and keep the speed below 55 km/h.

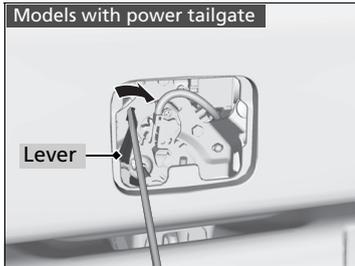
# If You Cannot Open the Tailgate

## What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate

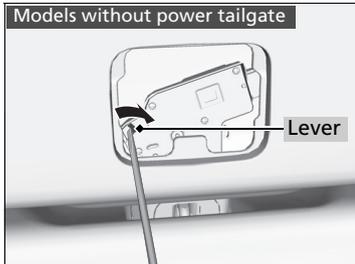
If you cannot open the tailgate, use the following procedure.



1. Use a flat-tip screwdriver and remove the cover on the inside of the tailgate.
  - ▶ Wrap the flat-tip screwdriver with a cloth to prevent scratches.



2. To open the tailgate, push the tailgate while sliding the lever to the side using a flat-tip screwdriver.



## What to Do If Unable to Open the Tailgate

When you open the tailgate from inside, make sure there is enough space around the tailgate, and it does not hit anyone or any object.

### Following up:

After taking these steps, contact a dealer to have the vehicle checked.



# Information

This chapter includes your vehicle's specifications, locations of identification numbers, and other information required by regulation.

<b>Specifications</b> .....	572
<b>Identification Numbers</b>	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number .....	575
<b>Utility Compliance*</b> .....	576
<b>Devices that Emit Radio Waves*</b> .....	577

\* Not available on all models

## ■ Vehicle Specifications

Model	ODYSSEY	
Curb Weight	1,788-1,886 kg <sup>*1</sup>	
	1,791-1,854 kg <sup>*2</sup>	
	1,791-1,889 kg <sup>*3</sup>	
	1,829-1,888 kg <sup>*4</sup>	
Maximum Permissible Weight	2,450 kg	
	Front	1,140 kg
Maximum Permissible Axle Weight	Front	1,330 kg <sup>*6</sup>
	Rear	1,380 kg <sup>*2</sup>

\*1: Middle Eastern models

\*2: Oceanian models

\*3: Hong Kong, Macau, Malaysian, Indonesian, Singaporean and Brunei models

\*4: Taiwanese models

\*5: Philippine models

\*6: Except Oceanian models

## ■ Engine Specifications

Type	Water-cooled in-line 4-cylinder DOHC	
Bore x Stroke	87 x 99.1 mm	
Displacement	2,356 cm <sup>3</sup>	
Compression Ratio	10.1: 1	
Spark Plugs	NGK	ILKAR7K11S
	DENSO	SXE22HQR11S
Max. Power <sup>*1</sup>	129 kW (173 HP)/6,200 rpm	
Max. Torque <sup>*1</sup>	225 N·m (23.0 kgf·m)/4,000 rpm	
Max. Speed <sup>*1</sup>	198 km/h	

\*1: Middle Eastern models

## ■ Fuel

Type	Unleaded petrol, research octane number of 91 or higher <sup>*1, *2, *3</sup>
	Unleaded petrol, research octane number of 92 or higher <sup>*4, *5, *6</sup>
Fuel Tank Capacity	55 L

\*1: Oceanian models

\*2: Southeast Asian models

\*3: Middle Eastern models

\*4: Hong Kong models

\*5: Macau models

\*6: Taiwanese models

## ■ Battery

Capacity	52AH(5)65AH(20)
----------	-----------------

Idle Stop:

The battery installed in this vehicle is specifically designed for a model with Auto Idle Stop. If you need to replace the battery, make sure to select the specified type (Q-85). Ask a dealer for more details.

## ■ Washer Fluid

Tank Capacity	2.5 L
---------------	-------

### ■ Light Bulbs

Headlights (Low Beam)	LED
Headlights (High Beam)	LED
Front Fog Lights	LED
Front Turn Signal Lights	LED
Position Lights*	LED
Position/Daytime Running Lights*	LED
Active Cornering Lights*	LED
Side Turn Signal Lights (on Door Mirrors)	LED
Brake Lights	LED
Taillights/Side Marker Lights	LED
Rear Turn Signal Lights	LED
Back-Up Lights	LED
Taillights	LED
Rear Fog Light*	LED
High-Mount Brake Light	LED
Rear Licence Plate Light	LED
Sliding Door Courtesy Lights*	LED
Front, Second Row and Third Row Map Lights	LED
Vanity Mirror Lights* 2 W	
Interior Lights	
Passenger's Side Upper Box Light	LED
Foot Lights*	LED
Door Courtesy Lights	LED
Luggage Area Light	5 W
Tailgate Light	5 W

### ■ Air Conditioning

Refrigerant Type	HFC-134a (R-134a)
Charge Quantity	725 - 775 g

### ■ Brake Fluid

Specified	Brake Fluid with DOT3 or DOT4
-----------	-------------------------------

### ■ Continuously Variable Transmission Fluid

Specified	Honda HCF-2
Capacity	Change 3.7 L

### ■ Engine Oil

Recommended	-Honda Genuine Motor Oil -ACEA A5/B5, API service SM or higher grade 0W-20, 0W-30, 5W-30, 10W-30
	Change 4.0 L
Capacity	Change including filter 4.2 L

### ■ Engine Coolant

Specified	Honda All Season Antifreeze/Coolant Type 2
Ratio	50/50 with distilled water
Capacity	6.76 L (change including the remaining 0.83 L in the reserve tank)

### ■ Tyre

Regular	Size	215/60R17 96H 225/50R18 95V
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Compact Spare	Size	T145/90D16 106M
	Pressure	See the label on driver's doorjamb
Wheel Size	Regular	17 x 7J <sup>1</sup> 18 x 7J <sup>2</sup>
	Compact Spare	16 x 4T

For the tyre size information, see the label on driver's doorjamb.

\*1: Models with 215/60R17 tyres

\*2: Models with 225/50R18 tyres

### ■ Brake

Type	Power assisted
Front	Ventilated disc
Rear	Drum in disc
Parking	Foot operated parking brake

\* Not available on all models

■ Vehicle Dimensions

Length	4,845 mm <sup>*1</sup>
	4,845.4 mm <sup>*2</sup>
	4,855 mm <sup>*3</sup>
	4,855.6 mm <sup>*4</sup>
Width	4,857 mm <sup>*5</sup>
	1,818.9 mm <sup>*6</sup>
	1,819 mm <sup>*7</sup>
Height	1,820 mm <sup>*8</sup>
	1,696.7 mm <sup>*2, *4</sup>
	1,710 mm <sup>*8</sup>
Wheelbase	1,712 mm <sup>*7</sup>
	2,900 mm
Track	1,559 mm <sup>*7</sup>
	Front 1,559.1 mm <sup>*2, *4</sup>
	1,560 mm <sup>*8</sup>
	Rear 1,560 mm

\*1: Malaysian, Taiwanese, Singaporean, Indonesian, Macau and Hong Kong models

\*2: Philippine and Brunei models

\*3: Australian models

\*4: New Zealand models

\*5: Middle Eastern models

\*6: Philippine, New Zealand and Brunei models

\*7: Saudi Arabian, Bahraini, Kuwaiti, Lebanese, Omani, Qatari, U.A.E. and Singaporean models

\*8: Malaysian, Australian, Taiwanese, Indonesian, Macau and Hong Kong models

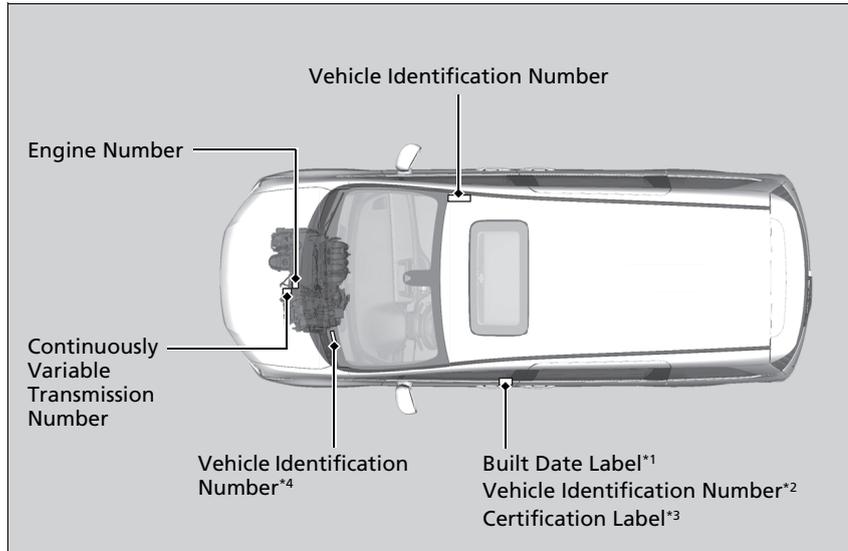
■ Max. Towing Weight<sup>\*1</sup>

Trailer with brakes	1,000 kg
Trailer without brakes	450 kg
The maximum permissible vertical load on the coupling device	50 kg

\*1: 7-seater models for Australia and New Zealand

## Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

Your vehicle has a 17-digit vehicle identification number (VIN) used to register your vehicle for warranty purposes, and for licensing and insuring your vehicle. The locations of your vehicle's VIN, engine number and transmission number are shown as follows.



\*1: Australian and New Zealand models

\*2: Hong Kong, Macau, Malaysian, Indonesian, Singaporean and Brunei models

\*3: Except Philippine and Taiwanese models

\*4: Middle Eastern models

### Vehicle Identification Number (VIN), Engine Number and Transmission Number

The interior vehicle identification number (VIN) is located under the cover.



#### Australian and New Zealand models

The built date is the calendar month and the year in which the body shell and power train sub-assemblies are conjoined and the vehicle is driven or moved from the production line.

## Environmental Protection Regulation

---

Taiwanese models

### NOTICE

Used batteries to be disposed of shall be collected in conformity with the regulations of Environmental Protection Administration.



# Devices that Emit Radio Waves\*

The following products and systems on your vehicle emit radio waves when in operation.

	Keyless Access System			Hands-Free Telephone System
	<b>FOB</b>	<b>PCU</b>	<b>SSSW</b>	
U.A.E. models	<b>TRA</b> REGISTERED No: ER49244/16 DEALER No: DA36975/14	<b>TRA</b> REGISTERED No: ER43576/15 DEALER No: DA0039841/10	<b>TRA</b> REGISTERED No: ER35377/14 DEALER No: 0034163/10	<b>TRA</b> REGISTERED No: ER56669/17 DEALER No: DA55570/16
	<b>FOB/PCU</b>	<b>SSSW</b>		
Singaporean models	Complies with IMDA Standards DB106440	Complies with IMDA Standards DA01740A		Complies with IMDA Standards DA107248

\* Not available on all models

	Blind spot information System*/Cross Traffic Monitor*	ACC*/CMBS*
U.A.E. models	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><b>TRA</b>                      REGISTERED No:                      ER34277/14                      DEALER No:                      0020858/10</p> </div>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 5px;"> <p><b>TRA</b>                      REGISTERED No:                      ER0091512/12                      DEALER No:                      DA0042126/10</p> </div>
Singaporean models	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; text-align: center;"> <p>Complies with                      IMDA Standards                      DA01740A</p> </div>	<div style="border: 1px solid black; padding: 10px; text-align: center;"> <p>Complies with                      IMDA Standards                      DA01740A</p> </div>

▶▶ Devices that Emit Radio Waves\*

**Taiwanese models**

The Regulations by Ministry of Transport for the Control of Low Power Equipment:

The regulation of Article 12:  
 Without permission granted by the DGT, any company, enterprise, or user is not allowed to change frequency, enhance transmitting power or alter original characteristic as well as performance to a approved low power radio- frequency devices.

The regulation of Article 14:  
 The low power radio-frequency devices shall not influence aircraft security and interfere legal communications; If found, the user shall cease operating immediately until no interference is achieved. The said legal communications means radio communications is operated in compliance with the Telecommunications Act. The low power radio-frequency devices must be susceptible with the interference from legal communications or ISM radio wave radiated devices.

## Numbers

7-Speed Manual Shift Mode ..... 367

## A

ABS (Anti-lock Brake System) ..... 438

ACC (Adaptive Cruise Control) ..... 407

Accessories and Modifications ..... 530

Accessory Power Sockets ..... 242

Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) ..... 407

Indicator ..... 113, 114

### Adding

Coolant ..... 500

Engine Oil ..... 499

Washer ..... 504

Additives, Engine Oil ..... 497

### Adjusting

Armrest ..... 229

Clock ..... 146

Front Seats ..... 211

Head Restraints ..... 224

Headlights ..... 505

Mirrors ..... 208

Steering Wheel ..... 207

Third Row Seats ..... 220

### Air Conditioning System (Climate Control System)..... 245

Changing the Mode ..... 245

Defrosting the Windscreen and

Windows ..... 247

Dust and Pollen Filter ..... 523

Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode ..... 245

Sensors ..... 258

Turning On and Off the Touch Panel

Beep ..... 249

Using Automatic Climate Control ..... 245

**Air Pressure** ..... 573

**Airbags** ..... 49

After a Collision ..... 51

Airbag Care ..... 58

Front Airbags (SRS) ..... 51

Indicator ..... 57, 103

Sensors ..... 49

Side Airbags ..... 54

Side Curtain Airbags ..... 56

**AM/FM Radio** ..... 283

**Anchorage Points** ..... 47

**Android Auto** ..... 305

**Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)** ..... 438

Indicator ..... 103

**Apple CarPlay** ..... 300

**Armrest** ..... 229

**Audio Remote Controls** ..... 263

**Audio System** ..... 260

Adjusting the Sound ..... 280

Audio/Information Screen ..... 268

Display Setup ..... 281

Error Messages ..... 309

FLAC/WAV/MP4/AVI ..... 289

General Information ..... 311

Home Screen ..... 273

How to use Siri Eyes Free ..... 299

iPod ..... 286

MP3/WMA/AAC ..... 289

Remote Controls ..... 263

Selecting an Audio Source ..... 282

Status Area ..... 278

USB Flash Drives ..... 289, 311

USB Ports ..... 261

Wallpaper Setup ..... 271

**Audio/Information Screen** ..... 268

**Auto Door Locking/Unlocking** ..... 160

Customize ..... 330

**Auto Idle Stop** ..... 370

OFF Button ..... 371

**Automatic Folding Door Mirror** ..... 210

**Average Fuel Economy** ..... 139

**Average Speed** ..... 141

## B

**Battery** ..... 519

Charging System Indicator ..... 101, 554

If the Battery Is Dead ..... 548

Maintenance (Checking the Battery) ..... 519

Maintenance (Replacing) ..... 522

**Belts (Seat)** ..... 38

**Beverage Holders** ..... 237

**Blind spot information System** ..... 381

**Bluetooth® Audio** ..... 292

**Booster Seats (For Children)** ..... 92

<b>Brake System</b> .....	436
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS).....	438
Brake Assist System .....	439
Fluid .....	503
Foot Brake .....	437
Indicator .....	100
Indicator (Red) .....	555
Parking Brake .....	436
<b>Brake System Indicator (Amber)</b> .....	100
<b>Brightness Control (Instrument Panel)</b> .....	203
<b>Built-in Key</b> .....	148
<b>Bulb Replacement</b> .....	505
Active Cornering Lights.....	505
Back-Up Lights.....	506
Brake and Taillight/Side Marker Lights.....	506
Front Fog Lights.....	506
Front Turn Signal Lights .....	505
Headlights .....	505
High-Mount Brake Light .....	506
Interior Lights .....	508
Luggage Area Light .....	508
Position/Daytime Running Lights.....	505
Rear Fog Light .....	506
Rear Licence Plate Lights.....	506
Sliding Door Courtesy Lights .....	507
Tailgate Light.....	508
Taillights.....	506
Vanity Mirror Lights .....	508
<b>Bulb Specifications</b> .....	573

## C

<b>Carbon Monoxide Gas</b> .....	94
<b>Carrying Luggage</b> .....	353, 355
<b>Certification Label</b> .....	575
<b>Changing Bulbs</b> .....	505
<b>Charging System Indicator</b> .....	101, 554
<b>Child Restraint System</b> .....	59
Booster Seats .....	92
Child Restraint System for Infants.....	63
Child Restraint System for Small Children ..	65
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt.....	83
Larger Children .....	91
Rear-facing Child Restraint System .....	63
Selecting a Child Restraint System .....	66
Using Tether.....	86, 90
<b>Child Safety</b> .....	59
Childproof Door Locks.....	159
<b>Cleaning the Exterior</b> .....	527
<b>Cleaning the Interior</b> .....	525
<b>Climate Control System</b> .....	245
Changing the Mode .....	245
Defrosting the Windscreen and Windows.....	247
Dust and Pollen Filter.....	523
Recirculation/Fresh Air Mode.....	245
Sensors .....	258
Turning On and Off the Touch Panel Beep.....	249
Using Automatic Climate Control .....	245
<b>Clock</b> .....	146

<b>Coat Hook</b> .....	240
<b>Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)</b> .....	396
<b>Compact Spare Tyre</b> .....	535
<b>Console Compartment</b> .....	236
<b>Continuously Variable Transmission</b>	
Creeping.....	364
Fluid .....	502
Kickdown .....	364
Operating the Shift Lever .....	23, 366
Shift Lever Does Not Move.....	550
Shifting.....	365
<b>Controls</b> .....	145
<b>Coolant (Engine)</b> .....	500
Adding to the Radiator .....	501
Adding to the Reserve Tank .....	500
Overheating.....	551
<b>Creeping</b> .....	364
<b>Cross Traffic Monitor</b> .....	448
<b>Cruise Control</b> .....	376
Indicator .....	110
<b>Cup Holders</b> .....	237
<b>Customized Features</b> .....	315

## D

<b>Daytime Running Lights</b> .....	200
<b>Dead Battery</b> .....	548
<b>Defaulting All the Settings</b> .....	334

Deflation Warning System .....	384	Driving Support Information .....	143	Environmental Protection Regulation ....	576
Deflation Warning System		Dust and Pollen Filter .....	523	EPS (Electric Power Steering) System .....	104
Indicator .....	556, 558			Exhaust Hazard (Carbon Monoxide) .....	94
Indicator .....	107	<b>E</b>		Exterior Care (Cleaning) .....	527
Defrosting the Windscreen and		Eco Assist System .....	11	Exterior Mirrors .....	209
Windows .....	247	ECON Mode .....	369		
Devices that Emit Radio Waves .....	576	Indicator .....	110	<b>F</b>	
Dimming		Elapsed Time .....	141	Features .....	259
Headlights .....	193	Electric Power Steering (EPS) System		Filter	
Dipstick (Engine Oil) .....	498	Indicator .....	104, 555	Dust and Pollen .....	523
Directional Signals (Turn Signals) .....	192	Emergency .....	567	Fuel .....	504
Door Mirrors .....	209	Emergency Engine Stop .....	547	Flat Tyre .....	535
Doors .....	147	Emergency Stop Signal .....	440	Fluids	
Auto Door Locking .....	160	Engine .....	575	Brake .....	503
Auto Door Unlocking .....	160	Coolant .....	500	Continuously Variable Transmission	
Keys .....	147	If the Battery Is Dead .....	548	(CVT) .....	502
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the		Oil .....	497	Engine Coolant .....	500
Inside .....	158	Starting .....	361	Windscreen Washer .....	504
Locking/Unlocking the Doors from the		Switch Buzzer .....	189	<b>FM/AM Radio</b> .....	283
Outside .....	150	Engine Coolant .....	500	Foot Brake .....	437
Lockout Prevention System .....	157	Adding to the Radiator .....	501	Foot Light Brightness Adjustment Icon ..	233
Driver Information Interface .....	134	Adding to the Reserve Tank .....	500	Front Airbags (SRS) .....	51
Switching the Display .....	134	Overheating .....	551	Front Fog Lights .....	196
Warning and Information Messages .....	117	Temperature Gauge .....	133	Indicator .....	108
Driving .....	351	Engine Oil .....	497	Front Seats .....	211
Braking .....	436	Adding .....	499	Front Sensor Camera .....	433
Continuously Variable Transmission .....	364	Checking .....	498		
Cruise Control .....	376	Low Oil Pressure Warning .....	119, 553		
Shifting .....	365	Recommended Engine Oil .....	497		
Starting the Engine .....	361	<b>ENGINE START/STOP Button</b> .....	189		
Driving Position Memory System .....	205				

Fuel	483
Economy and CO <sub>2</sub> Emissions	486
Gauge	133
Instant Fuel Economy	139
Low Fuel Indicator	102
Range	139
Recommendation	483
Refueling	483
Fuel Economy	486
Fuel Fill Cap	25, 485
Fuel Fill Door	25, 485
Fuses	559
Inspecting and Changing	566
Locations	559

## G

Gauges	133
Gesture Controlled Power Sliding Door	179
Glass (care)	528
Glove Box	234

## H

Halogen Bulbs	505, 506
Hands-Free Telephone (HFT) System	335
Automatic Import of Mobile Phonebook and Call History	344
Automatic Transferring	343
Favorite Contacts	345
HFT Buttons	335

HFT Menus	338
HFT Status Display	337
Making a Call	347
Options During a Call	350
Phone Setup	340
Receiving a Call	350
Ring Tone	343
Hazard Warning Button	4
Head Restraints	224
Headlights	193
Aiming	505
Automatic Operation	194
Dimming	193
Operating	193
Heated Door Mirror	204
Heaters (Seat)	243
HFT (Hands-Free Telephone)	335
High Beam Indicator	108
Hill Start Assist System	362
Honda Sensing	393
Honda Smart Parking Assist System	464

## I

Identification Numbers	
Engine and Transmission	575
Vehicle Identification	575
Illumination Control	
Knob	203
Immobilizer System	182
Indicator	109

Indicators	98
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) (Amber)	113
Adaptive Cruise Control (ACC) (Green)	114
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)	103
Auto Idle Stop (Green)	111
Auto Idle Stop System (Amber)	111
Blind spot information System	105
Brake System (Amber)	100
Charging System	101
Collision Mitigation Braking System (CMBS)	115
CRUISE CONTROL	110, 377
CRUISE MAIN	110, 376, 377
Deflation Warning System	106
ECON Mode	110
Electric Power Steering (EPS) System	104
Front Fog Light	108
High Beam	108
Immobilizer System	109
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS)	422
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (Amber)	114
Lane Keeping Assist System (LKAS) (Green)	114
Lights On	108
Low Fuel	102
Low Tyre Pressure/Deflation Warning System	107
Low Tyre Pressure/TPMS	107
M (7-speed manual shift mode)/Shift	101
Malfunction Indicator Lamp	101



Malfunction Indicator Lamp .....	101, 554
Map Lights .....	232
Maximum Load Limit.....	355
Meters, Gauges.....	133
Mirrors.....	208
Adjusting.....	208
Door.....	209
Exterior.....	209
Interior Rearview.....	208
Modifications (and Accessories).....	530
MP3.....	289
MP4.....	289
Multi-View Camera.....	454
Multi-View Rear Camera.....	452

## N

Navigation.....	141
Numbers (Identification) .....	575

## O

Odometer.....	137
Oil (Engine) .....	497
Adding.....	499
Checking.....	498
Low Oil Pressure Warning.....	553
Recommended Engine Oil.....	497
Viscosity .....	497
Open Source Licences.....	314

Opening/Closing .....	
Bonnet.....	496
Power Windows.....	184
Sliding Door.....	171
Sunroof.....	187
Tailgate.....	161
Outside Temperature Display.....	137
Overheating.....	551

## P

Parking Brake .....	436
Parking Brake and Brake System .....	
Indicator (Red).....	100, 555
Parking Sensor System .....	443
Passing Indicators.....	193
Petrol.....	25, 483
Economy.....	486
Gauge.....	133
Information .....	483
Instant Fuel Economy .....	139
Low Fuel Indicator.....	102
Refueling.....	483
Phone.....	142
Playing <i>Bluetooth</i> ® Audio.....	292
Power Sliding Door .....	173
Power Tailgate .....	162
Power Windows .....	184
Precautions While Driving .....	
In Rain.....	363
Pregnant Women .....	45

Puncture (Tyre).....	535
----------------------	-----

## R

Radar Sensor .....	435
Radiator.....	501
Radio (AM/FM) .....	283
Radio Data System (RDS).....	285
Range.....	139
RDS (Radio Data System).....	285
Rear Demister/Heated Door Mirror .....	
Button.....	204
Rear Fog Lights .....	196
Indicator .....	108
Rear View Mirror .....	208
Refueling .....	483
Fuel Gauge.....	133
Low Fuel Indicator.....	102
Petrol.....	483, 572
Remote Transmitter.....	150
Replacement .....	
Bulbs .....	505
Button Battery .....	522
Fuses .....	559
Tyres.....	535
Wiper Blade Rubber.....	509, 511
Resetting a Trip Meter.....	137, 139
Road Departure Mitigation.....	428
On and Off .....	430

## S

Safe Driving .....	33
Safety Checklist .....	37
Safety Labels .....	95
Safety Message .....	0
Seat Belt with Detachable Anchor .....	44
Seat Belts .....	38
Adjusting the Shoulder Anchor .....	43
Checking .....	46
Detachable Anchor .....	44
Fastening .....	42
Installing a Child Restraint System with a Lap/Shoulder Seat Belt .....	83
Pregnant Women .....	45
Reminder .....	40
Warning Indicator .....	40, 102
Seat Heaters .....	243
Seats .....	211
Adjusting .....	211
Front Seats .....	211
Seat Heaters .....	243
Second Row Seats .....	214
Third Row Seats .....	220
Second Row Seats .....	214
Installing the slide stoppers .....	217
Security System .....	182
Immobilizer System Indicator .....	109
Security System Alarm Indicator .....	109
Selecting a Child Restraint System .....	66
Selector Knob (Audio) .....	266

Shift Lever .....	365
Operation .....	366
Releasing .....	550
Won't Move .....	550
Shift Position Indicator .....	101, 366
Shifting .....	365
Shoulder Anchor .....	43
Side Airbags .....	54
Side Curtain Airbags .....	56
Siri Eyes Free .....	299
Sliding Door .....	171
Gesture Controlled Power Sliding Door .....	179
Power Sliding Door .....	173
Spark Plugs .....	572
Specifications .....	572
Specified Fuel .....	483
Speedometer .....	133
SRS Airbags (Airbags) .....	51
Starting the Engine .....	361
Does Not Start .....	544
Engine Switch Buzzer .....	189
If the Battery Is Dead .....	548
Steering Wheel .....	
Adjusting .....	207
Stopping .....	441
Sunglasses Holder .....	241
Sunroof .....	187
Supplemental Restraint System (SRS) .....	51
Switches (Around the Steering Wheel) .....	4, 189
System Message Indicator .....	109

## T

Tachometer .....	142
Tailgate .....	161
Light Bulb .....	508
Temperature .....	
Gauge .....	133
Outside Temperature Display .....	137
Temperature Sensor .....	137, 258
Third Row Seats .....	220
Tucking Away .....	221
Time (Setting) .....	146
Tools .....	534
Towing a Trailer .....	356
Equipment and Accessories .....	358
Load Limits .....	356
Towing Your Vehicle .....	
Emergency .....	567
Transmission .....	365
Continuously Variable Transmission .....	364
Fluid .....	502
Number .....	575
Shift Indicator .....	366
Shift Position Indicator .....	101, 366
Transmission System .....	
Indicator .....	101
TRIP Button .....	136
Trip Computer .....	138, 140
Trip Meter .....	137, 139, 141

<b>Troubleshooting</b> .....	533	<b>Unlocking the Driver's Door from the Inside</b> .....	158	<b>Wi-Fi Connection</b> .....	297
Blown Fuse .....	559	<b>Upper Box</b> .....	234	<b>Window Washers</b>	
Brake Pedal Vibrates .....	29	<b>USB Flash Drives</b> .....	289, 311	Adding/Refilling Fluid .....	504
Buzzer Sounds When Opening Door .....	30	<b>USB Ports</b> .....	261	Switch .....	201
Emergency Towing .....	567	<b>Using the Honda Smart Parking Assist System</b> .....	464	<b>Windows (Opening and Closing)</b> .....	184
Engine Won't Start .....	544	<b>Using the Multi-View Camera</b> .....	460	<b>Windscreen</b>	
Noise When Braking .....	31			Cleaning .....	528
Overheating.....	551			Defrosting/Defogging .....	247
Puncture/Flat Tyre .....	535			Washer Fluid.....	504
Rear Door Won't Open .....	30			Wiper Blades.....	509
Shift Lever Won't Move .....	550			Wipers and Washers .....	201
Warning Indicators .....	98			<b>Winter Tyres</b>	
<b>Turn Signals</b> .....	192	<b>V</b>		Tyre Chains.....	517
Indicators (Instrument Panel).....	108	<b>Vanity Mirrors</b> .....	9	<b>Wipers and Washers</b> .....	201
<b>Tyre Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)</b> .....	390	<b>Vehicle Identification Numbers</b> .....	575	Checking and Replacing Wiper Blades.....	509
Indicator.....	557	<b>Vehicle Speed</b> .....	133	<b>WMA</b> .....	289
<b>Tyres</b> .....	513	<b>Vehicle Stability Assist (VSA)</b> .....	379	<b>Worn Tyres</b> .....	513
Air Pressure .....	573	OFF Button.....	380		
Checking and Maintaining.....	513	OFF Indicator.....	104		
Inspection.....	513	System Indicator.....	104		
Puncture (Flat Tyre).....	535	<b>Ventilation</b> .....	245		
Rotation .....	516	<b>Viscosity (Oil)</b> .....	497, 573		
Spare Tyre .....	537				
Tyre Chains.....	517	<b>W</b>			
Wear Indicators .....	514	<b>Wallpaper</b> .....	271		
Winter.....	517	<b>Warning and Information Messages</b> .....	117		
		<b>Warning Indicator On/Blinking</b> .....	553		
<b>U</b>		<b>Warning Labels</b> .....	95		
<b>Unlocking the Doors</b> .....	150	<b>Warnings</b> .....	142		
		<b>Watts</b> .....	573		
		<b>Wear Indicators (Tyre)</b> .....	514		
		<b>Wheel Nut Wrench (Jack Handle)</b> .....	540		



